



The most Excellent and Famous

# HISTORY

Of the Most Renowned KNIGHT,

**Amadis of Greece.**

Surnam'd, The

**Knight of the Burning Sword,**

Son to *Lisvart of Greece*, and the Fair *Onoloria of Trebifond*.

Representing his Education in the Court of King *Magadan*, his Conquering of the *Defended Mountain*, his Combat with his Grandfather the Emperor *Cylandrian*, his killing *Grandalon the Cyclops*, and falling in Love with *Lucella*, Daughter to *Alpatrary King of Sicily*, his Asfrival in the *Isle of Argeneis*, where he put an End to the Enchantments of *Queen Zicfer*, his Assisting his Great-Grandfather King *Amadis* in the Island of the green *Isclaves*, and in respect to him, taking on himself the Name of *Amadis of Greece*: Together with the high and noble Enterprizes of his Cozen *Lucenico*, *Madamart* Son to the King of the Giants Island, *Bitunactes* Son to the King of Spain, and many other Noble Knights and Gallant Ladies: All no less Useful, than Pleasant.

Humbly Address to the Beauties of Great Britain.

By a Person of Quality.

Licensed according to Order.

Printed for J. Deacon at the Angel in *Guild-Street* without *Newgate*, and  
A. Blare at the *Looking-Glass* on *London Bridge*. 1694.

TO THE  
BEAUTIES  
OF  
Great Britain.

**T**O You, Fair Ladies, does our Younger *Amadis*, after his Traversing many Vast and Foreign Regions, Address himself, laden with Triumphant Spoils, and Crown'd with Victorious Laurels; all which he humbly lays at Your Feet, whom he acknowledges to be not only the Fairest, but also, the Kindest and Best Natur'd of Your Sex. In Your Soft Arms and Silken Laps he hopes to find that Repose, he has so long in vain been seeking thro' so many Hard and Perillous Adventures: And these Hopes of his are much Encouraged, by his considering the Favourable Reception You, some time since, gave his Father, *Lisuart*, his Grandfather *Esplandian*, and his Great Grandfather *Amadis of Gaul*, King of *Great Britain*, the greatest Exemplar of Constant and Loyal Love, that is in any History, of this sort, to be found. If therefore You will graciously Condescend to his Request, and receive him into Your Favourable Embraces, he here makes a Solemn Protestation, that all his future Endeavours shall wholly be directed to procure Your Satisfaction and Delight, and his chief Ambition shall be; to let the World see how highly he Values the Honour of being

Your,

Amadis of Greece.

Books Printed for, and Sold by J. Deacon, at the *Angel* in *Guilt-spur-street*, without *Newgate*, where all *English* and *Irish* Chapmen may be furnish'd with all sorts of Books, at Reasonable Rates.

- 1 THE Dutch *Fortune-Teller*, in *Folio*.
- 2 The triumphant Weaver : Or, the Art of Weaving, in *Verse*, in *Quarto*.
- 3 The Pleasant History of Ornatus and Artesia, in *Quarto*.
- 4 The Famous History of Sir Boys of Southampton, at large in *Quarto*.
- 5 The Art of Legerdemaine : Or, Hocus Pocus, being the whole Art of Juggling.
- 6 The 3d. Part of the seven Champions, in *Quarto*.
- 7 Sports and Pastimes for the City and Conntiry, for the Delights and Recreation of Youth, *Quarto*.
- 8 The English *Fortune-teller*, by J. P.
- 9 The Golden Garland of Princely Delight, wherein is contained the History of many of the Kings and Queens, Princes, Lords, Ladies, Knights, and Gentlewomen of this Kingdom.
- 10 The most Excellent, Profitable, and Pleasant book of the Famous Doctor, and Expert *Astrologian* Arcandan, or Alcandrin, to find the Fatal Destiny of every Man, Woman, and Child by their birth, done into English, by William Ward.
- 11 Markham's faithful Farrier, wherein the depth of his depth of his skill is laid open in all those principle and approved secrets of Horsemanship.
- 12 The 3d. Part of the Pilgrims Progress, with the life of John Bunyon, Author of the 1st. and 2d. Part.

At the above mentioned Place is to be Sold (by Wholesale or Retail) all sorts of *History Books* that is used in *Ireland* : And also all sorts of *Divinity Books*, *Physick*, *Astrology*, *Romances*, *Plays*, *Paper Books*, *Bonds*, and *Releases*, &c.

Books Printed for, and Sold by *Jos. Blare*, Bookfeller, at the *Looking-Glass* on *London-Bridge*.

**T**HE Accomplish'd Ladies Rich Closet of Rarities: Or, The Ingenious Gentlewoman, and Servant Attains Delightful Companion. *Arithmetick*, A Treatise fitted for the Use and Benefit of such Trades-Men as are ignorant in that Art, teaching the nature and use of Fractions, both vulgar and decimal, by a new and easie Method, made familiar to an ordinary Capacity: Also, the Mensuration of Solids and Superficies. By *John Ayres*, likewise his Copy Books of several sorts.

The Key of Commerce, shewing the true method of keeping Merchants Books, after the Italian manner of Debit and Creditor, in one hundred and twenty Propositions, containing most Cases relating to Merchandise, with a Practical Wast-Book Journal and Ledger, and directions how to Balance the Ledger, and transfer the balance thereof, as an inventory into a new Ledger. Designed for the help and Assistance of Young Merchants, at their first Entrance on their Apprenticeship to their Masters. By *J. H.* of London Merchant.

The Accomplish'd Seamans Delight.

Pearls of Eloquence: Or, the School of Complements.

The History of Argalus and Parthenia.

The English Fortuneteller, by *J. P.*

Ruffs Sermons, viz. the Accepted time and day of Salvation, the End of Time and beginning of Eternity. Heavens Glory and Hells Terror.

The 3d. Part of the Pilgrims Progress, with the life of John Bunyon, Author of the 1st. and 2d. Part.

The Secretaries Guide, directing to Write letters of Love and Business.

The Famous History of Hero and Leander.

Ruffs little book for little Children.

A Description of Kent and Suffex: Or, a View of all the Cities, Towns and Villages in each County.

At the above mentioned place, is Sold Books of Divinity, History, and Navigation, Wholesale or Retail at Reasonable Rates to English or Irish Chapmen.

The most Excellent and Famous

# HISTORY

Of the Most Renowned KNIGHT,

## Amadis of Greece,

Surnam'd, The

## Knight of the Burning Sword,

Son to *Lisuart* of *Greece*, and the Fair *Onoloria* of *Trebisond*.

### CHAP. I.

How certain Pirates of the Moors presented to *Magadan*, King of *Saba*, the Gentleman of the Burning Sword.

**I**N the Kingdom of *Saba*, there sometime Reign'd a Moor, call'd *Magadan*, who, contrary to the usual Nature of Blacks, was affable, courteous, and debonaire, loving, above all people, such as were White, whom he much more willingly employ'd, than any others. This *Magadan* took to Wife a noble Lady, nam'd *Burica*, black like himself: And of these two, was born the valiant *Fulartin*, of whom our History will sometimes make mention. This *Fulartin*, who, for good conditions, resembled his father, was in his younger years instructed in all foreign Languages, by *Mandaiar*, a white Slave, a Man of wonderful Learning. Now it was well known, thro' all the Realm of *Saba*, how great Pleasure the King took in getting Prisoners from foreign Parts, especially from the North, because of their whiteness: Inasmuch, that he often pardoned even Crimes of high-Treason, provided the Criminals presented him with such Personages.

Hence it happen'd, that one day, as he tose, from *Thble*, there entred into the Hall four Moors, leading by the Hand, a LITTLE GENTLEMAN, about



THREE Years old, of a singular Perfection in Beauty. Having according to their manner done their Reverence to Magadan, one of them spake thus: Sir, the two Brethren, that slew Your Cousin, prostrate themselves in all humility at Your Majesty's Feet, beseeching You to accept of this Child, who, besides the excellency of his Person, has brought from his Mother's Womb a marvellous Sign. This said, slipping off a little yellow Cassock Coat, he had on, they shew'd before all that were present, a Sword, as red as Fire, the Hilt proceeding from his left Knee, and the Point terminating near his Nipple; It had on it certain white Characters, which were then unknown to any, even to Mandair himself, tho' there were in that Age few who equall'd him in Learning. The King, extremely pleas'd with so fair a Present, and much more wondering at the Natural Sword the Child had on his Back, would have him call'd the Gentleman of the Burning Sword, giving him at that very moment to his Son Polartin, who thenceforward so greatly affected him, that he made him his second self, so that one of them could not live without the other, ordinarily exercising themselves in all Virtuous Pastimes.

Now before I pass any farther, 'tis fit you understand, that this Gentleman was that very Child, whom (as you find it Recorded in the sixth Book of Amadis of Gaul) Garinda, one of Onoloria's Attorneys left on the bank of the River, as he was carrying him to the Port of Filina to Purse, whence being taken away by these Corsairs into their Vessel, he was brought up by them, till they presented him to King Magadan, who on this occasion not only forgave them his Cousin's death, for which they were dead, but also bestow'd on them many great Benefits; so agreeable to him was the Gentleman of the Burning Sword, who, growing up, became so fair and godly of stature, that at Eight Years of Age he was taken to be above Twelve, so conforming himself to the Humour of Prince Polartin, that he could not be without him. They were both Instructed in all good Literature, as also in Wrestling, Managing the great Horse, Casting the Bar, Fencing, and all other Exercises fitting for Gentlemen of their high Qualities. And tho' the Gentleman of the Burning Sword became so expert in all these things, that he had no his Equal; yet so great was the Honour and Reverence, he bore his Prince Polartin, that he would never contend with him; by which he so highly gain'd Magadan's Affection, that he ordinarily took him to all places of Pleasure, whether it were to Hunt the Stag, or other diversion whatever.

#### CHAP. II.

How King Magadan, being a Hunting, was Assaulted by a great Bear, and deliver'd from Death by the Gentleman of the Burning Sword.

SOME Years after, the King of Saba having caus'd the Woods to be spread in the next Forest, as he stood watching for a Hour Boye in the midst of a great Path, having a Sharp Boze-Spear in his hand, there rush'd out of a Thicket a Bear, who, frightened

frighten'd with the harking of the Hounds, and sound of the Trumpets, sought which way to save himself. Now Magadan was at that time accompany'd only by the Gentleman of the Burning Sword, who held in a Slip a Sheep-bond, with which, spying the Bear, got his head out of the Collar, and ran to assault him; but the Bear struck him so succumb'd with one of his Fore-foot, that he broke his Jaws, and immediately turn'd against the King, who defended himself with his Boze-Spear. But the Bear so fiercely charg'd the King, that having got the Spear out of his hands, he clos'd with him, and threw him on the ground. The Gentleman seeing this, ran speedily to help the King, and drawing out a Blood-Knife, which hung at his Girdle, gave the Beast so great a blow, that he almost cut off his Leg. The Bear finding himself wounded, let go his hold, and with open mouth ran upon the Gentleman, who, undauntedly lifting up his Arm, struck him with so great force between the Ears, that he split his head asunder.

This done, as he return'd to help up the King, he perceiv'd coming towards him a great Lion, crown'd, and bearing between his Teeth a Child about two Years old, who cry'd with a loud voice: Alas, Gentleman of the Burning Sword, pray help me; which your Father would not refuse to do, were he here in your place.

The Gentleman was no less astonish'd to hear these Words, than to see him that spake them, towards whom he diligently hasten'd to free him from the Danger he was in. The Lion no sooner saw him approach, but letting go the Child, he went to devour the Gentleman, who, stepping aside, gave the Lion so great a Stroke with his Knife, that he separated his leg from his Body. Yet the chafed Beast, lifting up his other Paw, with his sharp claws raze part of the Gentlemen's Garment, pulling him also to him with so much violence, that he threw him on the ground. The Gentleman notwithstanding got quickly up again, and recharging the Lion, wounded him with a back blow so deep into the Arms, that one might have seen his Entrails, the Beast immediately falling dead on the Grass. The Gentleman then look'd about to see what was become of the Child he had succour'd, and spying him run away as long a Path, made after him, that he might get him to declare what knowledge he had of him. Having then overtaken the Child, he very affectionately ask'd him, how he fell into that danger, and whether he had heretofore seen him: For you are while as I said, said the Gentleman, that had my Father been present, he would no more have fail'd to assist you, than I have done.

The young Child, hearing him speak thus, smilingly return'd him this Answer: Indeed, Gentleman, you are Son to such a Father, that he will cost you no small pains to resemble him, tho' you are Born to receive greater Honour for your High rowels and Chivalry, than any one, who has Preceded you; for the rest, trouble not your self to make any farther Enquiry, since you will but lose your labour. This said, he immediately vanish'd out of sight, leaving the Gentleman no less amaz'd, than if he had newly risen out of a dream; yet without not a little musing at what he had heard.

Being now more desirous, than before, to know of whom he was defended, he turn'd

turn'd back to the King, whom finding sorely hurt'd, and wounded in his Thigh, and other Parts of his Body, by the Outrage of the Bear, he (with Tears in his Eyes) askt him, how he did? Magadan, who had curiously observ'd what befel the Gentleman, as well in his Combat with the Bear, as with the Lion, graciously answer'd him: Indeed, my Friend, I am much better than I lately expected, Thanks to our Gods and You: So that never was Education better bestow'd, than that I have given you, seeing the Hazard you have put your self in to preserve me; which makes me thoroughly sensible, that Virtue, once firmly planted, is never lost.

Sir, said the Gentleman, there is no doubt, but that Virtue is underlood only by Virtue; and yet I well know, that I can never all my life satisfy the Benefits, I have already receiv'd of your Majesty. Nevertheless, I humbly pray our great God Father, to grant me the Favour, that my Power may one day correspond with my Will, and then shall be clearly manifested the Desire I have to obey and serve your Majesty. But Sir, I think it convenient, to look for some of your Huntsmen, or some others, that may carry you into the Town; for as far as I can perceive, the Bear has dealt very roughly with you.

I desire you so to do, reply'd the King. Then the Gentleman cross'd thro' the Forest, till he met Fulartin, and many other Gentlemen, who, being Adherents of the Disobedience betwixt their Prince, were very much discontented, and setting Spurs to their Horses, Posset immediately to him, whom they found in a very weak condition, by reason of the Blood, he had lost. However, he exactly related to them, what had happened, telling 'em, that had it not been for the assistance, given him by the Gentleman of the Burning Sword, he was in greater danger of losing his life, than ever he had been from the first hour of his Birth. When making him a Vicer, they convey'd him to the City of Saba, where he was with all imaginable care lookt after by the Queen, who from that very Moment no less esteem'd the Gentleman, than if he had been her own Son.

### CHAP. III.

How Fulartin and the Gentleman of the Burning Sword were made Knights by King Magadan, and how Maudan, stimulated by Envy, falsely accus'd the Queen Buruca.

Magadan having been in this manner preserv'd by the Gentleman of the Burning Sword, had from that time as great an Affection for him, as if he had been his near Relation, especially after he had recounted to him the discourse, he had with the Child of the Lion; whence the King Imprinted in his Fancy, that he must be descended from Persons of the highest Quality: He therefore made him ordinarily sit at his own Table, next to his Son Fulartin, giving him also a young Noble Gentleman, nam'd Ynerik, to wait upon him, and be always near his Person. Thus pass'd away some Years, till the Gentleman, belov'd both by Great and Little, was

come

come to the Age of fourteen, being so well hap'd, and manly, that he seem'd to be above sixteen.

Now it happened, that Fulartin, who was a little Elder than he, being an Accomplish'd and Good-natur'd Prince, requested the King to give him the Order of Knighthood, to which he easily condescended: The Gentleman of the Burning Sword, being Adherents of it, and desiring this Honour above any thing in the World, addrest himself also to Magadan for this purpose, who knowing the Greatness of his courage, with the love he bore him, did not so much consider the greenness of his years, as the Excellence of his Person, and was therefore content, that Fulartin and he should be come Companions in Arms, so that he gave them both the Order, with white Harness.

Now according to the Custom of keeping the Ceremonies, the Feast continu'd the space of fifteen days, during which, Maudan, Son to one of the greatest Lords of Saba, came to Court, to be bred up with Fulartin. He had not been long there, ere he became so jealous, and envious of the Honour, the King did the Knight of the Burning Sword, that falling into a deep Melancholly, he was generally thought to be sick. And the more this Poison gnaw'd his heart, the more did he seek to bring the Knight of the Burning Sword into the Kings Disfavour, which when he could not find occasion to do, he was seen hourly to walk away like Snow before the heat of the Sun.

Now some time after, Magadan, leaving the Queen at Saba, went to visit a Town of his, call'd Terryna, during whose Absence, the good Lady directing her self one day at Chels with the Knight of the Burning Sword, Fulartin and Maudan, who were looking on, weary'd with the length of the Game, went to rest, and left them alone. In fine, after some Dates, in which the Queen had the Victory, he, who (as you have heard) lov'd him, against whom he play'd, as her own Son, as well for his Vertues, as for the Succour he had given the King, when he deliver'd him from the Peril that befel him as he was hunting, made him sit down by her on the Beds feet, where discoursing together, without the least thought of jealousing her Honour, he tenderly kiss'd and embrac'd him. But Maudan, whose Envy made him pry after Opportunities to ruine the Knight of the Burning Sword, having quieted Fulartin to watch them, and seeing their Careless, persuaded himself more, than was true, resolving in his wicked mind, to acquaint the King with their love at his Return: which was not long after. He having advice, that the Kings of Araba and Tharus were coming down into his Country to make War upon him. This made him return the Conter to Saba, that sending out on chery live to raise Men, he might go forth to meet his Enemies. But scarce was he risen from Supper, when Maudan, finding him alone, leaning on a Window in the Presence; after a short Preamble to palliate his Treason, began to discourse him in this manner: Sir I most humbly beg your Majesty's Pardon, if with the greatest Regret imaginable I discover to you a thing, which, I wish, my Death could have prevented, as well for the Discontent, it will give your Majesty, as for the Amity I bear the Knight of the Burning Sword, whom I take all our Gods to witness, I have ever lov'd, honour'd,

and esteem'd above any other of my Acquaintance. But the matter, so nearly concerning You, should I, who am your Vassal, conceal it, I should be guilty of the Highest Treason, and the Education You have bestow'd on me, would be very ill employ'd, so that Reason constrains me to lay aside all respect of Persons, tho' it were of my own Father, for to preserve the Fidelity I owe You, my Natural Prince, and Sovereign Lord. Then he declar'd, how he had seen the Queen playing at Chess with the Knight of the Burning Sword, telling the King the Familiarities, that had pass'd between them, which he to amplify'd and enlarg'd, as to aver, that the Queen, abandoning all Honesty, had violat'd her Marriage Bed. The King was (not without cause) so astonish'd at hearing this, that being ready to drop down to the ground, that he was a long time unable to utter the least word, by reason of the contest, there was in his Interior between the Love he bore the Accus'd, and the dishonour had been done him, so that he could not forbear weeping. Having therefore his face cover'd with tears, he ask'd Maudan, whether it were possible that the Knight of the Burning Sword had so dishonour'd him as he had related. Yes Sir, answer'd he, and I will swear it by the living Gods; for I saw it with my own eyes.

Ah, Ah! said the King, fetching a deep sigh: Since the Traytor has so far forgotten himself, as I heretofore prefer'd him before all that were in this Kingdom, so will I now cause him, and the Strumpet his Companion, to be put to the cruellest Death, that ever wretched Creatures suffer'd.

Then the King, commanding Maudan to keep secret what he had told him, retir'd to his Chamber as full of discontent, as the Willian was of joy, for having so well accomplish'd his design. As the Love of a Father to his Son is incomparably greater than common Affinities, so the hate of the one to the other, when it grows vigorous is undoubtedly more extreme than can be express'd. In like manner the King, who was so affectionated to the Knight of the Burning Sword, that he had almost equal'd him with Furlin, having heard the discourse of this Deliberator, grew so disturb'd, that he had much ado to govern his Passion, as to forbear sending him at that very moment to receive his last Punishment, which yet, tho' not without putting a great constraint upon himself, he for a while suspended, hoping to surprize him in the fact.

So soon as commonly the Nature of Sin, that 'tis no longer brought into the World, but 'tis attended by Repentance, which was the cause, that Maudan, mixing water with his wine, began immediately to know his offence, inasmuch that, considering the many Pleasures and Courtships he had receiv'd from the Knight, he had accus'd, he wish'd he had never spoken ill of him; but when the Sted is stoln, 'tis too late to shut the Stable door. Yet his remorse of Conscience, conducted by Reason, gain'd so much upon him, that he purpos'd at least to save his life, by giving him notice at the King's sake of doing him a displeasure, and advising him therefore to absent himself from his fury. This thought he put in Execution; A thing probably proceeding from Goodness, not for the sake of so wretched a Person, as Maudan, but for the preservation of the Innocent, for which cause we

leave

sometimes be the Wicked, contrary to his Nature, to leave Evil, and give way to Good.

The Sun was already retir'd behind the Mountains, and the Night approach'd, when the Traytor found out the Knight of the Burning Sword, to whom, concealing from him the Poison which lay hid in his heart, he thus spake: My dear Friend so much do I desire your Good, that there cannot any inconvenience befall you, at which I should not be as much troubled as it hapned to my self. 'Tis therefore necessary, you retire with all possible speed; for I certainly know, that the King is resolv'd to put you to death, for which purpose you will be Arrested at your Entrance into the Palace. The particular cause indeed I cannot learn, but some story has been told him, for which he hates you to extremity.

The Knight of the burning sword, as you will easily believe, was not a little astonish'd at this Advertisement, the truth of which, as not having any way offend'd, he would soon have question'd, had not Maudan always pretended a particular kindness for him. He gave therefore so much credit to this Traytor's words, that he immediately commanded Yneril his Equire to bring his Arms, and taking Horse, went secretly forth of the Town, without any other Attendance, Riding all Night in marvellous discontent.

Thus Maudan wove the web, which afterward cost him his life, as shall be declar'd to you. In the mean time the better still to cover his design, he went very late in the Evening to the King, to whom he said: Sir, I doubt Yneril may have overheard some part of the discourse, I had with Your Majesty, about his Master; for I am certainly inform'd he was listening under the window: Which may be the more easily credited, for that I have not since seen the Knight of the burning sword, whom I believe you will find to be dead.

That would be ill, reply'd the King, therefore, pray, know the certainty of it; and that without delay.

At these words Maudan went straight out of the Palace, to the Knight's Lodgings, returning soon after, as in amazement, to tell the King, he was gone. Magadan, hearing this, sent hastily to apprehend the Queen Burca, Coveting, he would have her burnt alive; at which the poor Lady, who knew not for what occasion, was very much troubled, and casting her self at the Kings feet, besought him with hands held up to tell her the cause of his displeasure. Wicked woman, answer'd he, you shall know too soon to your cost.

Then commanding her to be lock'd up, he set Guards upon her, charging them on pain of their lives to keep her safe. After this he sent forth men on all sides to look for the Knight of the burning sword, and having him either alive or dead, for, said the King, he has acted against me the greatest Treason in the world.

Furlin, wondering at this so sudden change, found means to know the cause of it, which the King would not conceal from him, that he might terrify him the more against the Knight, who had done him so many Services, not letting him however know them whom he had receiv'd his Information. But the young Prince, being

ing well advis'd, endeavour'd; what he could to pacify all, and dissuade Magadan from believing any such thing, which 'twas impossible for him to do.

Not long after thence, who had been in quest of the Knight of the Burning Sword, return'd without hearing any news of him; at which the King was so enrag'd, that he wanted I ttle of putting the Queen to death. But by the Advice of his most intimate Counsellors he delay'd it till such time as he recover'd the Knight.

At that very instant there arriv'd a Courier, bringing him News of the Spoil, the Enemies made in his Realm, into which they were entered. This made Magadan, whose Army was now ready, march forth to meet them, and give them Battle, the Queen being led by Fulartin, and the rest of his Forces by the King himself, whose Army was divided only into two Squadrons.

The Kings of Tharsus and Arabia, advertis'd of Magadans approach, drew up their men in a posture to receive him. After a long and fierce fight, Magadan and his Son were in fine taken Prisoners, and their whole Army discomfited, the greatest part escaping to the neighbouring Towns, and the rest being put to the sword. These Kings, having thus gotten the victory, consulted betwixt themselves to send Magadan and Fulartin, where they might be safely kept. Of this the King of Tharsus would take the Charge, attended only by ten chosen Knights, not being willing to trust such a Piece with any other Person but himself; and in the mean time the King of Arabia advanc'd to Beliege Saba.

## CHAP. IV.

How the Knight of the Burning Sword found a Jewish Hermit, and of the discourse they had together.

SO long travell'd the Knight of the Burning Sword, with his Equire Yneril, that having travers'd many Leagues without knowing whether, or which way they went, they came at last into a great Forest, in which they Robetwo whole days before they could find any way out. Now towards the end of the second day, as the Sun had finish'd his diurnal course, they approacht the little Hermitage of a Pagan Moor, who, for the Austerity of his life, was by those of his Law reputed an Holy Man. He was then sitting before his door; wherefore the Knight of the Burning Sword, who had formerly heard of him, as soon as he saw him, immediately set foot to ground, and with great humility saluted him, offering to kiss his feet. The Good Man, wondering at his Behaviour, and seeing him to be so fair, young, and lusty a Knight, graciously lifted him up, and having sett'd him to sit down, and repose himself a little, askt him whence he was, and what Adventure had brought him to that inhabitable Desert: For, Son, said he, I believe, 'tis now above ten Years, since any reasonable Creature, besides you and I, has pass'd by the Place, where I now see you.

Father

Father, answer'd the Knight, my Unhappiness being greater, than ever befel any other, that was born of woman, 'tis no wonder, if you see in me, what you would think strange in many: Since Fortune within these few days has made me certainly know the entire effects of her Inconstancy. But were she other, the Name, she bears, would be no way suitable to her, seeing she sometimes Elevates one to the top of her Wheel, without his having in the least merited it, and presently tumbles another under her Feet against all Right and Reason. Which is clearly manifested in me; whom she had for several years plac'd in the Throne of all Prosperity, and in the twinkling of an Eye, not three days since has so ruin'd, and debas'd me, that, when I consider the State, in which I am, seeing my self in so great Infelicity, methinks I am in a dream, not being able to comprehend, how, why, or in what manner this has befalln me, having never done any thing, to deserve the Evil, I endure.

The Moor, seeing his youth, and hearing him speak so appoittely, and with so much reason, was wisely amaz'd, and exceedingly pity'd his condition: for as he utter'd these Words, the Tears in very great abundance trickled down his Cheeks. Wherefore he said to him: Son, the Gods, to try those, whom they love, and who are dearest to them, often permit many Adversities to come upon them, for satisfaction of the Sins, they commit, as men, giving them after ward (instead of this transitory life) Permanent and ever Blessed Glory. It is therefore necessary, you conform your will to their good pleasure, rendering them glory and thanks for all they send you, were it only for the Beauty and good Wit, with which they have endu'd you: which makes me think, that many great things must pass in you, as they have done in several, who shall serve you for an Example, as that King of great Britain, nam'd *Amadis of Gaul*, and his Son *Esplandian*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, on whom the Divine Bounty heretofore bestow'd such Perfections as yours, altho' they ever were, and still are Infidels, maintaining the Law of their CHRIST. But as the Sun affords his Light as well to the Wicked, as the Good: so our Gods indifferently extend their Graces and Mercies upon all Persons, hoping by that means to bring them to the true knowledge of their Salvation. And tho' it be true, that *Amadis* and *Esplandian*, seeking strange Adventures, as all Knights errant are wont to do, very often fell into such Dangers, that they many times despair'd of their own lives and safety, and other whiles of ever having Joy, or Pleasure, as you do now; yet after an infinity of Miseries and Perils, which they escap'd, Fortune, or to say better, the divine Pleasure has rais'd them to that height, that the one is become a great King, and the other a Potent Emperor, neither the one, nor the other having by their Birth any Right, or Pretence to the Countreys, they enjoy, but having obtain'd them by the Magnanimity of their Courages, accompany'd with *Prudence*, *Fortitude*, and *Virtue*. Wherefore, my Son, endeavour to imitate them: for you have Ability and Discretion enough to resemble them: and our Gods are as powerful as ever, to convert this your great Sorrow into Joy, surpassing your extream Displeasure, and the Evil, that afflicts you, into far greater Contentment, and Good.

C

So

So many other Remonstrances made the Pagan Hermit to the Knight of the Burning Sword, that he was very much comforted, desiring the Good Man to remember him in his devout Prayers, promising him, that he would therefore do all possible damage to the Christians Religion, since by them the Coelestial Court was offended. Then, without omitting any thing, he acquainted the Hermit with the occasion of his flight and Discontent; but the poor Santo assur'd him, that the Event would be very good. Then taking the Knight by the hand, he led him to his Cell, where he and Yneril abode eight whole days, during which, the Hermit fed them with such mean Provisions as he had, giving them also for their Horses some Straw, he kept for a Bull, on which he sometimes rode, when he went far from his Hermitage. And it was commonly reported through all the Countrey, that this Good Man by his exceeding great Sanctity often tam'd, and render'd tractable the cruellest and fiercest Beasts.

## CHAP. V.

How Magadan, King of Saba, and his Son Fulartin, were Rescu'd out of the hands of the King of Tharsus by the Knight of the Burning Sword.



The Knight of the Burning Sword, after a Weeks Abode in that place, taking leave of the Hermit, entered with Yneril his Equire into a Path, which led straight

straight to a Sea-Port Town, belonging to the King of Tharsus, where they determin'd to embark. They Travell'd all that day, without finding any Adventure till the morrow morning, when they met an Horseman, Arm'd Cap-a-pie, whom the Knight of the Burning Sword saluted, asking him, what News, and whether he was going.

The King of Tharsus my Prince; answer'd the other, is entred into the Countrey of Saba with his Army, and they say, King Magadan is marching with his Forces to give him Battle, at which I will not fail to be.

This said, he pass'd on, and, without making any farther stay, left the Knight of the Burning Sword so melancholly, that he began to say to Yneril: I would have you, good Sir, go to the Sea-Port, not far from hence, which, I hear, is a Trading Town, carry thither my Arms, and change them for others, that are black: for I will not henceforward be known, and in the mean time I will stay on the edge of the Wood, expecting your return: but pray, Yneril, make haste.

I shall willingly do it, answer'd Yneril; but your Harness being very good, I know not, what should make you desire to change it for a worse.

Go, said the Knight, thou shalt know when thou com'st back.

Then they withdrew into the private part of the Forrest, where the Knight, disarming himself, gave his Armour to Yneril, who rode straight with it to the Town, where having found at an Armourers, what he desir'd, he return'd to his Master, who having Arm'd himself, and mounted his Steed, said to Yneril: Pray stay for me at the Town, and come every Evening to this place, to see whether I am returned or not: For I must help the King and Fulartin; else the Nourishment, they have given me, would be very ill bestow'd, if in a time of such necessity I should not hazard my Person to preserve them.

How Sir, answer'd the Esquire, will you put your self in such danger, to preserve his life, who seeks to deprive you of yours?

He shall not know me, repli'd the Knight, and besides I have always heard it Averr'd, to do Good for Evil is double Merit. And therefore since the Gods give me this good will, I will employ it, and my Person also, in doing Service to the King, to whom I am oblig'd.

Yneril, seeing him so resolv'd, durst not contradict him, wherefore recommending him to the Protection of his Gods, he took one way and the Knight another, following the course he had been kept by the Horseman, he met the day before: Now he had not rid far, ere he met a Courier coming full speed, whom he askt what News he brought.

Sir Knight, answer'd he, rejoice, our Prince, the King of Tharsus, has defeated the Army of King Magadan, and taken him and his Son Prisoners, bringing them along himself, with a Guard only of ten Knights, which are not far behind me, and for this cause, I am going to Advertise those of the Town, that they may come forth to receive them.

Then he pass'd on, and the Knight of the Burning Sword, still keeping his way,

said within himself, God never prosper me, if I don't deliver them, or dye in the attempt. And that he might not tire his horse, he rode leisurely on, till he came to the top of an Hill, whence he might easily see those, that conducted the King and his Son, who were set upon two little Hags, having each of them an Esquire behind him, which for greater security held them about the middle. The Knight was so mov'd at this spectacle, that without any farther delay he let down the Visor of his Helmet; and seeing his opportunity, rusht in amongst them, crying with a loud voice, Stay, Traytors, stay, the Injury, you do such Noble Princes, shall cost you dear.

The King of Tharsus and his Brother, who rode foremost, seeing themselves assail'd thus on the sudden, put themselves in a posture of defence, breaking their lances on him, that ran against them; but with so much force did the Knight hit the King, that piercing with his Lance both his Shield and Breastplate, he threw him out of the Saddle, his Arm in the fall breaking short in two. Then passing farther, he entered well amidst the seven others, who environ'd him on every side: for of the ten two were retir'd aside with Magadan and Fulartin. Now the Knight of the Burning Sword was not at all dismay'd, but striking on the right hand, and the left, gave not any home blow, but what Death follow'd. Which when the King of Saba, and his Son saw, they greatly wondred, not being able to imagine who it should be, that perform'd so high an Enterprize, but laying within themselves, that they had never seen so much Bravery, acted by one sole man. And with good reason might they say it: for this Dispute continued above the space of four hours, during which the seven assaulted Knights were so ill treated, that the King of Tharsus's Brother lost his life there, and three others with him. The rest, turning their backs, fled through the Wood, whether the Knight of the Burning Sword car'd not much to follow them, but turn'd his Horse, doubting, lest those, who guarded Magadan and Fulartin, might kill them, but they had seen their fellows so well rubb'd, that, to avoid falling into the same danger, they made use of their horses heels. Thus were the Prisoners left without any Guard, to whom the Knight of the Burning Sword turning himself, cut the Cords, with which they were bound, saying to the King: Sir, may it please you now to give me leave: for as far as I can see, you have no longer need of my assistance.

Ah! good Knight, answer'd the King, I beseech you, tell us, who you are: to the end we may bear you good Will all our lives for the favour, and succour, we have receiv'd of you.

Sir, reply'd the Knight, I am one, that owe you far greater service than this, and I hope, the time will come, when you will by experience know the great Respect, I have for you and yours. In the mean time be pleas'd not to trouble your self any farther with enquiring what I am; but cause the King of Tharsus, who lies wounded, to be set on Horse back, and sent into one of your nearest Towns: for, as for me, I must get my wounds lookt after.

The King, perceiving he would not reveal himself, importun'd him no farther; but very affectionately thanking him, committed him to the Protection of his Gods,

as

as the Knight also did him, hasting without any stay through the Woods. Then the King and Fulartin made a shift to catch two of the Strays, which were loose, and having arm'd themselves with the best Arms, they could find, they went to the King of Tharsus, and seeing, that he was not dead, bound up his wounds, and having set him upon one of their little Hags, conducted him thence to the Town of Terrina, where being arriv'd, and understanding, that the King of Arabia had planted his Camp near Saba, Magadan sent him word by a Trumpet, that if he did not retreat he would strike off the head of his Prisoner, the King of Tharsus. The King of Arabia hearing this, and being inform'd how all had pass'd, rais'd his Siege, and without any longer stay return'd into Arabia, as Magadan did to Saba, attended by a great Troop of Knights; and taking along with him the King, his Prisoner, of whom he had afterwards not only Peace, but also a great Tribute and Ransome.

## CHAP. VI.

How after the Knight of the Burning Sword had Rescu'd the King of Saba, and his Son, he entered into the thickest of the Forrest, where he met with an Old Man, and of the Discourse they had together.

The Knight of the Burning Sword, having, as you were told, deliver'd Magadan and Fulartin, turn'd back the way, he came: and tho' he was cruelly wounded, yet did not this so much trouble him, as that he did not know the place, where he was, and less, how to find any help: for the Neighbouring Country as yet remain'd to the King of Tharsus, whom he had defeated, which made him greatly fear being known by them, that fled: wherefore he kept himself as close within the Forrest, as he possibly could, not ceasing to Travel till night, when the Dew, falling into his wounds, much encreas'd their smart.

Being in this pain and trouble, he saw by Moon-shine a Man coming towards him, who at first seem'd to have his face cover'd with a Linnen Cloth; which nevertheless was not so, that Apprehension being caus'd by the Whiteness of his Hair, and his great Beard. Then the Knight of the Burning Sword suspected him to be some Slave, that was stoln away from his Master, and therefore saluted him according to the Custom of the Country, but the Old Man return'd his Salutation in Greek, which the Knight understood, as also all other Languages, having learned them of his Master Mandair. Wherefore he began to say to him in the same Language: Honourable Father, can you inform me of any Place near, where I may find a Remedy for some Wounds, I have on my Body?

If you were a Christian, as I am, answer'd the Old Man, I should certainly satisfy you.

In good faith, said the Knight, this ought not to hinder you: for Vertue is never lost, in what place soever it is exercis'd, since it still continues Vertue. If then

C 3

it be in you, I beseech you to tell me, what I ask, and since you are more oblig'd to your self, than to any other, delay not so good a work, if you can do it: for the Gods are reverenc'd only for the Good, we hope to receive from them, and which is in them. And therefore, tho' you are not of their Law, cease not to imitate them, in what is good, since I my self, who am not a *Christian*, but a *Pagan*, would follow your GOD, in what should seem to me just, and equitable: seeing the Vertue, of which I speak, in what place soever it be lodg'd, is always virtuous, making those, in whom it is, resemble the Divinity.

You speak so well, reply'd the Old Man, that you shall find in me, what you desire: alight then, and I will succour you: for it would go ill with you, should you be known in this Countrey, whence you would not afterward get easily cut.

The Knight incontinently obey'd this Counsel, wondering nevertheless to hear the Good Man's discourse, of whom he demanded, how he could tell it, would be dangerous for him to be known.

Do not, said he, Enquire so far; but let it suffice you, that I know more of your Affairs, than you do your self: but at present I will say no more.

Then having apply'd such Remedies to the Places, where he was wounded, that the Knight found himself without pain, the Old Man gave him some Medals, he had in a Banner, of which the Knight having eaten, fell into so sound a Sleep, that it was hodie day, when he awoke, finding himself Arm'd, not with the black Arms, which Yneril had bought him in exchange for his own, but with other white ones, much richer and stronger, with a Shield, suitable to them, in the midst of which was painted a Sword, resembling that, he naturally had on his Body.

The Knight, then exceedingly wondering, how this had befalln him, was so perplext that he much doubted, whether he were not in a Dream. Especially when he no longer saw the Old Man, that had cur'd him. Being thus in a muse, he spy'd coming along the Way a Woman, mounted on a Palfrey, accompany'd by an Equeir, whom he knew: for it was Yneril. This Woman, as he came near him, appear'd to Old and feeble, that she could scarce keep her self on her horse: He nevertheless graciously saluted her, who askt him, if he could tell her any News of a very Ancient Man, that went before her.

Indeed, answer'd he, I should be glad to hear some of him, for the great desire, I have to find him.

And greater you would have, said the Old Woman, did you know him as well, as I do.

This said, she smote her Palfrey, and pass'd on, leaving him, to whom she spake, very Anxious, yet well pleas'd at Yneril's Arribal, whom he askt, who brought him thither.

On my Faith Sir, said he, I shall willingly tell you. As I was going out of the Forrest, where I left you, the Old Woman, which spake to you, addrest her self to me, bidding me in your name follow her, and she would bring me where we should find you

you at this very hour. Thus we came together, she telling me by the way, that her Old Husband was with you, discouraging you about things, which were of great importance to you, and, as far as I can understand, she is nam'd *Urganda*, and he *Alquist*.

Now the Knight of the Burning Sword had often heard them and their knowledge highly esteem'd in the house of King Magadan, wherefore, as if some new Accident had happen'd to him, he cry'd out; O *Jupiter*! Is it possible, that the Sage *Urganda*, and the Prudent *Alquist* should come to visit me? As I live, I know not any Inconvenience, that can hinder me from following them, wherever they are: and they shall tell me, before I part with them, whose Son I am.

Then taking Horse, he gallopt after *Urganda* and *Alquist*, whom he perceiv'd on the top of an high Hill, where he lost sight of them, discovering them again afterwards on the Sea-shore, as they were entering into a little Bark, which four Men began to Row. He call'd after them as loud, as he could, thinking to make them stay; but 'twas in vain: for the Vessel in less than a moment put off from Land, steering towards an Isle, at pretty distance off, which so displeas'd our Knight as nothing more: yet he went on as far as the Shore, where he found a little Boat, with two Oars, and some Utensils in it, which certain Fisher-men had left there. Then he askt Yneril, whether he could guide him into the Isle, he shew'd him.

Yes very well, answer'd he: but I doubt, the Air of the Sea may prejudice your Wounds. And this he said, because the Knight had told him, what had befalln him upon the deliverance of Magadan.

Trouble not thy self, said the Knight: I have no hurt, that should hinder my Enterprize.

Since it is so, answer'd Yneril, let us alight, and leave our Horses to feed till our return.

They did so, and entered into the Skiff, which Yneril began to Sail, so that they arriv'd at the Isle about Sun-set. They Landed, looking high and low for *Urganda* and *Alquist*; but found not there any living Creature: wherefore they return'd into their Vessel, hoping by the light of the Moon to get back, where they had left their Horses; but scarce had they weigh'd Anchor, when the Weather began to be Tempestuous, and the Sea to swell to desperately, that they abandon'd their Boat to the mercy of the Wind and Waves, and not knowing, which way they went, they lost all sight of Land, expecting every moment an unhappy End.

## CHAP. VII.

How the Knight of the Burning Sword came to the *Defended Mountain*, where he fought with *Frاندalo*, *Frاندalo*, and *Belleris*, whom he vanquisht.

TEN Days and TEN Nights were the Knight of the Burning Sword and Yneril, in the Condition, you have heard, putting all their hope of Life in the Good Pleasure



sure of their God Neptune, and others, whom they incessantly invoc'd, till that one morning the Sun began to get the Masters, and the Sea to become calm. Then they discover'd an high Coast, to the foot of which it pleas'd Fortune to drive them. The Country seem'd to them so pleasant, and well advis'd with tall Trees, that to Refresh themselves, they determin'd there to enter into harbour, and know, whither the place were Inhabited. For this reason they went ashore, where they found a little path, that led them to a Monastery, before which there was erected an high Woodden Cross. Now the Knight of the Burning Sword had never seen such a Sign, wherefore he askt Yncril, if he knew what it meant.

Assure your self, Sir, answer'd he, that we are on *Christian* Ground: for to such a Tree was their GOD heretofore fastned.

This News greatly pleas'd the Knight of the Burning Sword, who lov'd to find some Adventure, and probe himself in such sort, as to do some glorious Act of Chivalry to the Augmentation of his Religion. Wherefore passing farther, they found the door of a Church open, in the front of which were three fair Altars, adorn'd with Sacramental Ornaments, together with some Representations of Saints, accordg to the Custom of the Faithful, and presently they heard several Voices of Men, singing, tho' they saw not any one, at which being wholly amaz'd, they came as far as the Quire of the Church, where they saw a Sepulchre of Marble, cover'd with a very clear Crystal, under which was the Effigies of a Knight, compleatly Arm'd, and round about were engraven these following Words.

Here lies the Valiant and Magnanimous *Murroco*, who before his death had (thro' the Grace of GOD) knowledge of the Eternal Life, and as a Champion of *JESUS CHRIST*, made himself with his own Blood the sign of the Cross, which he ador'd, dying very happily in the Faith of the Elect.

The Knight of the Burning Sword knew well by the Contents of this Epitaph, that Yncril had told him the Truth, and that this was indeed a Christian Country, when at the very instant came forth a Religious Man, prepar'd to say Mass, who, seeing this Stranger so fair, young, and well proportion'd, knew not well, what to think of him; however, without long amusing himself, he began the Divine Service, in which the Knight took so much Pleasure, that he had the Patience to stay, till the Ceremonies were ended, the good Father easily perceiving by his Behaviour, and the little Reverence, he shew'd, that he was indeed no Christian.

Having therefore put off his Alb, and unty'd his Distaffs, he Address'd himself to the Knight, saying: Sir Knight, I desire you not to conceal from me, of what Country you are, who, without any regard to so holy a Place, have made no account of Divine Service, whilst I was celebrating Mass. In truth, if you are a *Pagan*, I wonder, how you durst enter into this Country, so contrary to your Law.

Father, answer'd the Knight, I am a *Pagan* both by Religion and Nation, no less admiring at my Arrival here, than you do to see me. Nevertheless, I earnestly desire you to tell me, what Country this is, and under what Prince or Lord you live.

So,

Son, reply'd the Good Man, the Pity, I have of your ignorant Youth, makes me willing to satisfy you. This Land is part of the Realm of *Nuolia*, call'd the *Defended Mannan*, but now held by the Emperor of *Constantinople*, who conquer'd it by force of Arms.

Then he particularly related to him, in what manner *Esplandian* got possession of it, as it is recorded in the fifth Book of *Amadis of Gaul*. The Knight gladly hearkened to him: for he had often heard of this Emperor and his great fears of Arms. Nevertheless he thought soon to lay by all means the Reduction of the place to its former Obedience, and of the People thereabout to the Religion, under which they had heretofore liv'd: for the attaining of which design, he askt the Religious man by whom the Place was Guarded.

By a Knight, answer'd he, nam'd *Strandalo*, who, having been a Pagan, as you are, submitted himself to the Knowledge of GOD, having since shewn himself so Valorous, especially in the keeping of this Isle, that the Emperor has made him a Count, as also Admiral, and Governour of the Fortres, into which as being impregnable, the King of *Jerusalem* was not long since brought Prisoner, the Garrison being reinforce'd by one only Knight, nam'd *Strandalo*, whom *Strandalo*, whose Kinsman he is, lately sent for, as we are assur'd by one of our Convent, who was there within this few days, and these two together, would (as 'tis said) well undertake to keep the Place, not only against the Neighbouring Kings, but also against all those of *Asia*, should they attempt to force it.

And are they alone? said the Knight.

No, answer'd the Religious, *Wellers* keeps them company, and they have with them their Servants, and Esquires, with some Serjeants and Laborours. But should they have need, King *Strandalo*, who is at *Tessanto*, would be here in a days time with his Army, which is very great, as also the Emperor of *Constantinople*, should it be necessary: for it is not far by Sea from hence thither: therefore I advise you to retire; else you will fall into danger of Death, or Captivity.

I will first, reply'd the Knight, view a little nigher the strong Place, of which you tell me so many things.

And what will you get by it, said the Good Father, except it be the Prison, of which I have given you warning?

Thar's more than I know, answer'd the Knight, I will try at least, whether the Gods are as much displeas'd with me, as they were with those, who heretofore lost it. Which, as you may judge, could never have been effected by the effort of one single man, had not the Divine Goodness consented to this Infelicity for the effences of the Wicked, who at that time possst it. And now, perhaps, our Gods are appeas'd, and will, as I hope, permit, that their holy Law, which has since bin profan'd by you Christians, shall there be renew'd, and restor'd to its former state.

Ah Sir Knight, said the Good man, have a care, lest the Devil deceive you under colour of the Sanctity, of which you speak, so as to make you attempt that, which

Do

you



you neither can, nor ought to do for your Honour, and less for the Salvation of your Soul.

'Tis a mistake, answer'd the Knight, may not Fortune be as favourable to me, as she was to him, that conquer'd it, according as you have related it to me? Therefore pray, good Sir, shew me the way thither, without Preaching to me any longer.

That indeed I will not do, said the good Father, for tho' you are a Pagan, and wholly contrary to the Faith of ~~Jesus Christ~~, yet is it not lawful for Religious Persons, such as I am, to contribute in any manner whatsoever to the death of any one.

Since it is so, answer'd the Knight, do as you please: I will then find it by some other means.

This said, he and Yneril went out of the Church, taking their way along a little Path, and coming very joyful, that they had found an occasion of acquiring Honour by doing Service to their false Gods. They had not Travell'd long, before they met a Man, driving two Oxen, laden with barrels of Water, of whom they askt the way to the Castle, which the honest Country Man willingly shew'd them. Then they began to ascend the Mountain, not without great Pain. And because Yneril appear'd more pensive than ordinary, the Knight of the Burning Sword askt him, on what he mus'd on so much.

Certainly, answer'd he, were I not afraid of displeasing you, I should willingly tell you for the Love I bear you; accompany'd with the desire, I have to serve you.

Friend, reply'd the Knight, thou canst not say any thing, that will be disagreeable to me, since in all things the Intention is more to be regarded than the Effect, which proceeds of it. And moreover, since the Counsel of an Enemy is sometimes good, that of a Friend (as you are to me) ought well to be esteem'd wholesome and salutary: Speak therefore boldly, and, if thy Advice be reasonable, assure thyself that I will follow it: for I will not imitate many obstinate Persons, who, knowing themselves to be in Fault, do yet disdain the counsel of others, committing therein two Offences: the one thro' their little sense; the other thro' their want of knowledge.

Truly Sir, said Yneril, your Arguments are so prevalent, that I will freely lay open my Thoughts, not concealing from you any thing I have in my mind. You are not ignorant, that you were found by the Sea-side, neither your self (as I believe) nor they who bred you up, knowing, whether the Country, whence you were taken, be Christian, or Pagan, wherefore methinks you are much to blame, in what you undertake, since peradventure you are son to some Christian, tho' at present you profess another Religion. And then if it be so, are not you oblig'd to follow the way of your Parents? Yes indeed are you, and you ought to hearken to the counsel of this poor Santo, till you know better what you are, than as yet you do: for the hands often act wrong; tho' the intention be right.

Now Yneril said this, because himself was descended of Christian Parentage,

tho'

tho' he were then a Pagan; but his heart perpetuallyearn'd to return to the Faith of his Ancestors, and he would willingly have diverted his Father from passing any farther, as well for the fear, he had of his Person, as for the Evil, which might follow, if this Country, where God was so devoutly serv'd, should be conquer'd by him, and reduc'd to its first Error.

The Knight of the Burning Sword, hearing Yneril speak with such Affection, could not forbear smiling, but said to him, Indeed, Yneril: I may (as you say) be descended of some Christian, but I doubt it, whereas I am certain, that the King Educated me in the Pagan Law, and in doubtful things we must follow the most apparent. Now I have always liv'd amongst those of Sabar, and receiv'd Knight-hood according to their Faith, in which I will persevere to my death, except my Judgment alter: otherwise I should properly resemble him, who, having his sight perfect, knowingly makes himself blind, or (to say better) leaving the High-way, known to all, I should take the Path that will lead me to Perdition. Believe me, that Wise men advance only with the Time, and follow their good Fortune, when it presents it self, and to these two, Time and Fortune are all Persons naturally subject. Put case therefore, that my Parents were Christians, or still are so, it is nevertheless for me to choose that Religion, which shall seem best to me, and not to imitate them, knowing that they Err. For this cause have the Gods made men differ from Beasts, giving them Reason to choose the Good and Avoid the Evil. Wherefore I am resolv'd (till such time I am otherwise inspir'd) to endeavour by all means the Augmentation of the Pagan Religion, and the Destruction of its contrary, were I therefore to dye a Thousand Deaths, for such Deathought properly to be nam'd the beginning of Life. And moreover it is probable, that our Gods have cast us upon these Coasts, and deliver'd us out of danger, expressly to force us to do them some agreeable service here, in destroying this Rabble, which has so long resided in this place. And as to what you have laid before me, saying, that I am bound to follow my Parents; to this I answer, that I am yet more oblig'd to them, to whom I owe my Education, as I will presently prove by an Example, which was on a time amongst other things told me by Mandasar, who was my Instructor, whilst I liv'd with Magadan. There was, and still is at Sahab's a King, nam'd Don Calaoz, who, being a Knight errant, was entertain'd in the House of a Prince, which then Reign'd in great Britain, call'd Lisbarr. Now it happen'd that a certain Difference arose between this Lisbarr, and Amadis, Brother of Calaoz, touching the Isle of Mongana, for defence of which Amadis, with his Father the King of Gaul, another Brother of his, nam'd Don Florestan, and many of their Kindred, Friends, and Allies, went into it: and to such an height grew this Quarrel, that there follow'd many fierce and cruel Battels, in which Calaoz was always found on the side of the King, by whom he had been entertain'd, giving by his Proofs a certain Testimony of his acknowledgment for the great Benefits and Favours, he had receiv'd of him, preferring the Amity and service, he bore him, before all Right of Affinity, and Parentage, tho' it were against his own Father. And by this

thou may'st judge, that every Personage of noble Spirit is more indebted to his Honour and Reason (by which he ought to govern himself) than to Father, Friends, Kinsfolks, or even his own self.

Discouraging in this manner, they came to the Bridge, adjoining to the Fortrefs, which they were a pretty while in Eluding, and there the Knight took his Helmet, and Shield, commanding Yncil to stay there for him, and not to pass any farther, which was very grievous to him. Then he marcht bravely on, till he came near the first Tower, at the Window of which he perceiv'd two Knights, playing at Chesse, the one bigger than the other, each of them about fifty Years of Age, and both clad in Black. The lesser had his hair exceeding long, and his Beard below his Girdle, twisted with Threads of Gold, which made the Knight certainly believe him to be, as indeed he was, the King of Jerusalem. But when the greater descry'd the Knight of the Burning Sword completely Arm'd, ready for fight, and climbing up the Steps, cut in the Work, he put his head out of the Window, and speaking to him in Greek, said loud enough: Knight, pass no farther, before we know what you are, otherwise the Custom of this place requires, that you be made go down, whether you will or no.

He, to whom he spake, was not at all frighted at these menaces; but without taking any farther notice of them, came as far as the Gate, and then gave him this Answer: Sir Knight, cause the Castle-Gate to be open'd, and let me in, and I will satisfie you, and the Custom.

By my Head, said the other, it shall be open'd time enough to your cost: for it is probable, that you come not into these Coasts for any good will, you bear us; wherefore you shall not escape my staying of you for a Spy.

As he finish'd his Speech, there presented himself another Knight, younger, but so big, that he of the Burning Sword was somewhat amaz'd at him; yet made he no remembrance of any such thing: but said to the other, You may peradventure be deceiv'd; for, if I can, I will renew the Good, of which you have depriv'd this Country; to sow therein so much Evil.

In what manner? said he of the Fortrefs.

The Gods, answer'd the Knight of the Burning Sword, displeas'd with your wicked Life, contrary to their Glory, will permit me to chastise you and drive you hence.

How? said the young Giant, Art thou then one of those Fools, that believe in more Gods, than there are sands in the Sea? Stay a little, and thou shalt see the Event of it.

Scarcely had he utter'd the Word, but they retir'd from the Window; and a little after there was a Postern open'd, at the entrance of which, an Arm'd Knight presented himself, who, holding his Shield ready for Combat, said to him of the Burning Sword, Come in poor Man, and perhaps I will have Mercy on thee.

I know not what Mercy you may shew me, answer'd the other, but I have not yet any part about me, that inclines me to ask it: the Execution also of Arms

Arms I es not in the Tongue, but in the Hands.

Then he of the Burning Sword enrag'd, and soon after began such a Contest between them, that to fear the Blows, they gave each other, you would have taken it for two Swifts beating on an Anvil. The Knight of the Castle gave the other such a Blow with his Sword, that he made his eyes sparkle; but the other in Revenge, struck at him with so great force, that he cleav'd his Shield asunder, and the Point of the Sword, falling upon the crest of his Helmet, wounded him so severely, that he fell backward, as if he were dead. Altho' being then by those that beheld them, they were very much troubled, believing him to be slain; nor did the Knight of the Burning Sword think himself safe. Wherefore he left him, and pass'd on, till he came in to the Court, where he found ten Servants, Arm'd with Brigandines, who ran upon him, crying out: Wicked Infidel, Enemy to GOD and his Faith; thou shalt now pay for thy Rashness, which has brought thee hither: and immediately they embayn'd him on all sides.

But he, as being the best Knight in the World, had them with so much Courage, that they soon felt the weight of his Blows; whoever he struck, being assur'd either of Death, or a Wound, wherefore they began to retreat by little and little, and not without cause: for Three of them were in a little time lay'd dead on the place, which to mob'd the others to revenge, that they resolv'd either to kill him, or to lose every man of them their Lives: pressing therefore more close upon him, than they had hitherto done. He never theless knew so well how to defend himself, that before the passing of the Gate, two more of them were overthrow'n, shaking their Heels. But the five, which were left, gave him afterwards so much work, that it is incredible, how he could prefer be himself: for one of them, closing with him, thought to get him down, but the Knight of the Burning Sword with a Blow of his fist brake his ear, and jaws, the extremity of the pain making him let go his hold, and fall flat with his face on the ground, which the rest perceiving, fled to the Tower of the Castle, crying out, Come forth my Lord, come forth, we are all dead men, unless you assist us.

So close at the heels were they follow'd by the Knight of the Burning Sword, that they had not time to war the door, but he entered after them into the midst of the place, where he heard the voice of one, that said to him, Devil, Enemy of GOD; thou shalt dy by my hands the most cruel Death, that ever brought Wretch to the End of his days.

Then he perceiv'd the Giant; he had seen at the Window, who, being completely Arm'd, and holding his Sword drawn in his hand, came to assault him. And tho' the strange Knight had more need of Repose than fighting, and more occasion of Fear than Assurance, seeing this great Loggerhead so inclin'd to mischief him, he was nevertheless so magnanimous, that bowing down his head, he march'd against him, and being come within a paces two of him, spake to him in this manner. Giant, the Vastness of thy Body did at first put me in some fear, who am as it were but half a man in respect of thee; but when I heard thy Threats, I felt my heart so

swell and rise, that it wholly confirm'd me, setting before mine eyes, that it is far more seemly for all Knights, how Good and Valiant soever, to do than talk.

At the finishing this Discourse, without expecting any answer, they say'd battle with such cruelty, that never two mortal enemies shew'd greater Desire of Killing each other, so that in this conflict the Plates and Pieces of their Harness were scatter'd about the ground, their Helmets batter'd, and not only their Shields, but their Fleets also so cut, that the Spectators wonder'd at their long resistance, especially the King of Jerusalem, who seeing the Blood trickle along the Gyants Armour, sometime thought him vanquish'd, and suddenly again chang'd his Opinion, so well did the Gyant know how to handle his Adversary. Nevertheless after this Skirmish had continu'd the space of two long hours, the worst was seen to fall on the Gyants side, altho' he did his utmost to resist it. Just at this point came in another Knight comely Arm'd, and bearing about his Neck a Shield, on which in a Field of was a Cross Gules, and this Knight was bigger and stronger than any, that had hitherto combated. Now as he was coming into play, he of the Burning Sword knew him to be Frandalo by the Description, the Monk had made of him: whereupon stepping back a little he said to him: Conform, I pray thee, Frandalo, thy Actions to thy Renown, and think, that thou wouldst wrong thy self by meddling any farther in this Combat, which was undertaken by one against one. Let us then finish it, and if Fortune permits me to out-live it, thou mayest then do with more Reason, what Knighthood permits thee for Satisfaction of thy mind: otherwise the vengeance, thou shouldst attempt to execute upon me, might turn to the disadvantage of thy Honour, so that thinking to kill me, thou mightst perhaps put an end at the same time to thy virtue, and thy own Life, since the Hazard may alsoon fall upon thee, as on me.

Frandalo, who, at the first hearing himself nam'd, stood still, perceiving the Pagan discourse with so much Reason, made him this answer: Indeed Knight, I must confess, that I had very much forgotten my self; but the grief, which surpris'd me, seeing the death of my Nephew, whom thou defeatedst at thy entrance into this place, as thou didst afterward my People, even to this Knight my Cousin, made me think to revenge my self on thee without any farther delay, preferring my Choller before the Reason, which every man of Honour ought to have before his eyes, as thou hast made me Remember; yet can I not imagine what knowledge, thou hast of me. Nevertheless who ever thou art, it will be a Pleasure to me to know thy Name, and much more, if thou wilt leave thy foolish Belief, and follow the Faith of **J E S U S C H R I S T**. This doing, I will not only quit thee the Combat betwixt us but will also find means, that the Emperor my Master shall receive thee in his house according to thy Merits.

Frandalo, said the Knight of the Burning Sword, I was upon the point of persuading thee to the same thing; It is then time lost to think of giving Counsel to him, who comes not to receive it, but to give it to another. Therefore retire, and

let

let the Knight and me finish our Enterprize: for we lose a fair Opportunity to no purpose.

My Lord, said he, who had the worst, to Frandalo, he has Reason. I beseech you, let him and me try our Fortune, and if I am vanquish'd, then govern your self as you please.

Thus Frandalo stood aside, and the two others began again their Combat more severely than it had been all the day, so that in less than a quarter of an hour, the Knight so endamag'd the Gyant's Shield, that he had no more of it left in his hand but the handle, by which he held it. And so closely did the Gyant find himself press'd, that the goodness of his Armour could not secure him from the edge of his Adversarys Sword, which drew Blood from him in such abundance, that the place, before brown and dry, became red and moist: nevertheless he did not cease doing his duty, for he had an heart so courageous and resolute, that the Knight, sometimes thinking their Battle at an end, found himself still at the beginning. But as much as the one grew heavier, the other threw himself lighter and luller. At which Frandalo wondering, said within himself, that he had never seen any man equal in Phowes this Stranger, altho' he thought he had known the best Knights in the World. In the mean time the Gyant, whose strength decreas'd by little and little, desiring to bring the matter to a short Issue, threw the little, he had left of his Shield, upon the ground, and taking his Sword in both hands, advanc'd to give such a Blow on his Enemies Helmet, as he thought, might cleave his head in two. Nevertheless it happen'd not so, the Knight bearing it off with his Shield, into which the Sword enter'd above an hand's breadth, and the point fell so hardly upon his Helmet, that it was batter'd to his very head. And as the Gyant thought to draw out his Sword, he found himself so weak, that he had much ado to keep himself from falling with his nose to the ground, the other stepping aside with so much dexterity, that, as he drew back his Shield, he carried away his Adversarys Sword, that stuck in it: and he was now lifting up his, to give the Gyant his death's wound, when Frandalo, putting himself between them, said thus: Ah! Knight, if there be in you as much Courtesy, as good Language, spare the Life of this poor vanquish'd person.

And as he finish'd this word, the Gyant, wholly intersted, fell flat upon the ground, so that they thought him to be dead, at which the Knight being somewhat sorry, said to Frandalo: In faith I wish you had not been so slow in asking me this Pleasure, which I would willingly have accorded you, and, if it be not too late, do yet grant you. For tho' I repute you as my Enemy, yet may I use to you all the Courtesy and good Language, I possibly can.

Truly, answer'd Frandalo, you speak so well, and I have such an esteem for you, that if it were possible to hinder the Combat, between us, I would willingly do it, or I look upon you as one, that would not for any thing delay it. Nor indeed would it be for the Honour of either of us, to put it off. There is nothing then, but the death of one of us, or perhaps of both together, that can terminate this Difference. One only thing I would have you grant me for your own great Profit, and which

which I desire more for the duty I owe to Chivalry, than to your Person, being an Enemy to our Faith. It is, that you repose till to morrow morning: for I see you so tir'd and harass'd, that the victory I hope to get of you, will go for nothing.

This offer made the Knight of the Burning Sword have a very great Esteem for Frandalo, whom having thank'd for his Civility, he return'd him this Answer: Frandalo, believe me, that I am not yet so debilitated, as to stand in need of Repose, so that I do not see now any cause to retard our Combat: wherefore look to your Defence.

Since it is so, reply'd he, come on.

Then they set themselves to Outrage each other, making the place sound with the clashing of their Swords, and the sparks of fire fly out of their harness, so that for the space of half an hour they were not seen to take breath, their fight being so intemperately furious, that they had neither Shield, nor any part of their Armour left entire, the ground being cover'd with the pieces of iron and water'd with their blood. At which the King of Jerusalem being amaz'd, continually pray'd for the Knight of the Burning Sword, hoping by his Victory to regain his Liberty. Nevertheless, considering the shocks, he had already sustain'd, and what he must suffer more, he very much doubted of that, which he would most secure himself of, seeing him, in his Opinion, as brisk, as if he had not handled his Sword that day. By means of which Frandalo began to distrust himself, and being seiz'd with a chill and unusual fear, perceiv'd his strength to diminish, and that of his Adversary to encrease and redouble. Thus they continu'd above four hours, till Frandalo was so wounded, that instead of offending his Enemy, he had enough to do to defend himself. And tho' the Knight of the Burning Sword might easily without much more Labour have put an end to his defence; yet he drew a step or two back, and leaning on the Point of his Sword, as if he would take breath, began to say: Frandalo, thou canst not but certainly know, that thy death is near, if thou contendest any longer against me: yield then, I pray thee good Sir, and I will save thy Life, so good an Opinion have I of thy Person.

I had rather, answer'd he, dy a thousand Deaths together, than do any thing, that should in the least blemish my honour. You may perhaps kill my Body; but as to my Intention, none but our Lord, in whom I put my Trust, can change it. Compeat then thy Victory, without expecting any thing else from me: since I am resolv'd to end my Days, that I may perpetuate my Renown, keeping the Faith. I owe to GOD, and my Prince, as well knowing, how great an Honour it will be to me hereafter, that I have with so much glory paid the Debt, to which I was oblig'd from the first moment of my Birth, and which we all owe to our Sovereign, that has created us, and plac'd us on the Earth.

So well was the Knight of the Burning Sword satisfi'd with this Remonstrance, that he said within himself, I should indeed be very much to blame, should I endeavour any farther to force him, who, being depriv'd of all Strength, has already van-

quish

quish himself, so as rather to choose Death, than never to little to prejudice his Loyalty and Virtue. And certainly it would be no other than Treason to persecute any more so Noble, Faithful, and Magnanimous an Heart, as his; and therefore I will leave off.

Scarcely had he finish'd this discourse in his mind, when Frandalo, fainting, fell down to the Ground, without stirring either foot or hand. At which the Knight of the Burning Sword being much grieved, ran hastily to untie his Helmet, to give him breath. Nevertheless the King of Jerusalem thought, he would cut off his head, wherefore he cry'd out with a mournful Voice: Ah! Knight, I request you by the Virtue, that is in you, to spare him.

At this cry the other left Frandalo, and taking off his Helmet, address'd himself to the King, kneeling down before him to kiss his hands, but the King embrac'd him, saying: Indeed I do not know, that ever I have seen you before: Therefore pray do me the favour to tell me, what knowledge you have of me, and who you are.

Sir, answer'd he, be pleas'd to command some one from within to bind up the Wounds of these Knights, before they dye: for it would discontent me, seeing their Prowess, that any of them should perish for want of help. This done, I will answer you, the best I can, to what you please to know of me.

Indeed, said the King, there is not any one here, that understands, how to dress the Wounded; but below at the Monastery theris.

Then he call'd a Sertant, whom he sent to fetch one of the Religious, that was skill'd in Chirurgery. In the mean time he gave Order for disarming Frandalo, and the Giant Frandalon, who were carry'd, and laid in the best Chamber of the Castle. And the Knight of the Burning Sword, desiring to know, who the first was that assault'd him at the Entrance of the Castle, they told him, he was nam'd Belieris, a courteous Personage, and Nephew to the Admiral Frandalo.

As God shall help me, said he, it will be then a great Loss, if he be dead. Go see for him, and if he be living, let him be put with his Uncle.

Then some ran thither, and finding him come to himself out of his swoond, took him up gently, and laid him in another Bed near Frandalo. Then the Knight of the Burning Sword retir'd into another Chamber, and put himself between the Sheets, that the Monk might apply some Remedies to the Wounds, he had receiv'd. Resolutely after entered Yneris, who, having heard how all had pass'd, was unexpressably glad, especially after he had spoken with the Religious man, who assur'd him, that all the danger was over. And indeed he so dextrously dress'd the wounded, applying to them proper Remedies, that their Pains being mitigated, they all slept quietly till the morrow morning, which was an Apparent sign of speedy Cure.

C

CHAP.

## CHAP. VIII.

Of the Discourse the King of Jerusalem had with the Knight of the Burning-Sword concerning his Liberty, and afterward with Frandalo and Melleris.

The next day, after these things had thus said out, the King of Jerusalem went to visit the Knight of the Burning Sword, whom he found walking about his Chamber, for none of his Wounds were such, as to oblige him to keep his Bed. And therefore seeing the King enter, he went to receive him, and with great Reverence brought him to sit down in a Velvet Chair, and placing himself near him, began his discourse in this manner: Alas! Sir, how shall I ever be able to acknowledge the Honour, your Majesty is pleas'd to do me, who am but a simple Knight, and as yet unknown? And nevertheless, you take the pains to come and visit me, who have never done you any service.

My Friend, answer'd the King, he, that can deliver Kings out of Prison, deserves well to be honour'd by the greatest Lords in the World, and for ever to be thanked by them. Is it not then reasonable, that I, whose Liberty you have so valiantly obtain'd, should offer my self to you, and continue all my life your Oblig'd.

Pardon me Sir, reply'd the Knight, 'tis a small matter to pay an Obligation, due by necessity. Now there is nothing more certain, than that such, as Your Majesty, are born into this World, to be Reverenc'd, and serv'd by all, all being naturally oblig'd so to do, but that Obligation brings along with it this Benefit, that, whoever satisfies it, is thereby honour'd, for as much as the Honour, he pays his Superior, or any other, is of such a Nature, that it returns to the place, whence it proceeded, as the Rivers and Streams do into the Sea, out of which they came. So that, Sir, you do me wrong to thank me so much, since it is abundantly sufficient to commend him, who does well, without giving him thanks. For, if he did otherwise than well, he would not (in reason) deserve to be call'd a Man, but a brute and senseless Beast.

The King, hearing this young Valiant Knight speak so wisely, and with so good a Grace, made him only this Answer: My great Friend, I see in you so much good Wit, that 'twould be a Folly for me, to think of vanquishing you either in word or effect: Setting aside therefore this Contest, I desire you only to give me your Advice, how we shall henceforward govern our selves here, where there is not one in whom you trust, but your Esquire and my self. And I much fear, that some or other is fled to King Rodandel with News of the Conquest, you have gain'd over Frandalo. Now he is so near us, that he will in less than a moment have Besieg'd us, and Fortune may shew us her Countenance quite contrary to what it has been in this beginning.

Since you will know what I think, reply'd the Knight of the Burning Sword, I will presently tell you, I have left at the foot of this Castle a Bark, in which we will

will send Melleris, accompany'd by one from hence, to the next Pagan City, to demand Assistance. And in the mean time, considering the strength of the Place, we shall easily keep it against all Assailants.

This Advice was well approv'd of, so that the Esquire and another embark immediately after Dinner, when the King and the Knight of the Burning Sword went to visit Frandalo, whom the King of Jerusalem ask'd, how he did.

Your Majesty, Sir, answer'd he, may see, and much better consider, seeing the inconstancy of Fortune, who towards the end of my declining years has shewn herself so adverse to me, that she has brought me into Captivity, and under the Power of him, that could vanquish me, and by that means conquer this Place, with the keeping of which the Emperor my Master had intrusted me: which misfortune is much more afflicting to me, than death it self. Nor can my life be henceforth other than a trouble to me, since I desir'd its continuance only to serve him, who had put me in the Honour and State, in which I yesterday day was.

Ah Frandalo! said the King, You have ever been esteem'd one of the wisest Knights in the World, and now methinks, you would seem guilty of that, which never had any place in you, viz. Pusillanimity. Pray good Sir, make use of the Counsel, you have so often given me, thinking to comfort me, whilst I was a Prisoner, and to shew the Magnanimity of your heart, taking example by many others, who have pass'd thro' such streights, as you are at present in, and out of which you may get with Honour, knowing the Virtue, that is in this Knight, whom I will entreat for you: for he alone can do it, and no other.

The Knight of the Burning Sword, hearing the King speak so much to his Advantage, could not forbear blushing, wherefore taking up the discourse, he said to him: Sir, your Majesty may command me in all things. And as for you Frandalo, your Goodness and Loyalty sufficiently satisfy, what you ere while Remonstrated to the King, and the Efforts, you made me feel yesterday in defence, of what the Emperor had committed to your keeping, will always testify the Endeavour, you us'd to serve him faithfully. You have not then any Reason to complain of Fortune; but ought rather to esteem her favourable to you, than adverse or cruel: since she has not any way abus'd your Honour, but exalted your Renown by your Loss, which ought Rather to be esteem'd a Gain, than otherwise: seeing I bear you more Envy for the Honour, you have gain'd with me, than I should Glory, had I reduc'd this Illand under the Law of our Gods, as it heretofore was.

Sir Knight, answer'd Frandalo, the little knowledge, I yet have of you, will hinder me perhaps from thanking you for the Praises, you give me, so highly, as you deserve, so easily may it be seen, that you desire in all things to render your Conditions, and Prowess, equal to your Discretion, and Vertue, not to lose by Reasons, and discourse the Conquest, the Goodness of your Chivalry has made in me. I will not heretofore any longer contend with you in words, fearing least by them you may gain over me, what with the hazard of your Life, you could never have obtain'd, which is to make me voluntarily yours.

This said, he held his Peace, his weakness nor suffering him to speak any more. At which the King and the Knight of the Burning Sword knowing, left him to repose, and went to visit Belleris and Frandalon, with whom after they had along with life discourses, they with them a good night, and retir'd to their Chambers. Here we will for a time leave them, turning our stile to another Matter, very necessary to the compleating of our History.

## CHAP. IX.

How Garinda, sent by Onolofia, to fetch from Filina the little Amadis of Greece, that was lost, fled thro' despair into a Wood, not daring to return to her Mistress: and of that, which happen'd.

**Y**ou will find it Recorded in the most Excellent History of Amadis of Gaul, about the latter end of the Sixth Book, how Onolofia and Gricleria were each of them deliver'd of a fair Son, whom they sent to the Port of Filina, to be there Nurst; but Fortune would, that the little Amadis of Greece was met by the Moors, who carry'd him into their Gallies, where he was tyed up by them, and was afterwards nam'd the Gentleman of the Burning Sword, as you have been told. Now you are to understand, that these two Princesses, thinking Garinda had entirely satisfy'd their command, and that the two Children were plac'd with careful Nurces, often sent their faithful Messenger, to enquire how they did, who always told them the quite contrary to what was befall the little Amadis. As for the other, he deliver'd him to a Cousin of hers, nam'd Florinda, who soon after became a Widow, having but one only Son, call'd Florindo, whom she Educated with the little Lucencio. About a Year after which the Emperors of Trebizond came to the Monastery of Sancta Sophia, so discontented, because she could have no News of the Emperors, that she resolv'd to continue with her Daughters, and no longer concern her self with the Governments of the Empire. She was receiv'd by them in a manner, suitable to her state, and they endeavour'd by all means possible to mitigate her sorrow.

Now one day amongst the rest it happen'd, that Onolofia, desirous to see her Son, commanded Garinda to go and fetch him from Filina, and, that he might prevent all Suspicion, charg'd her expressly to say, that he was her Nephew, or Sisters Son. Garinda, seeing what she had so long conceal'd, now upon the point to be discover'd, went her way to exclaiming melancholly, that she wish'd her self dead. In this despair she betook her self to the Thickest part of the Forrest, fully purposing never any more to be seen by either Son or Woman, but to finish her days with as much misery as she found her self unhappy. In this Determination she ty'd a Cable, which she chose for her abode, eating from that time, no other Food, but wild and ill tasted herbs, hoping by this Austerity to shorten her years, and soon bring her life to an end.

Now Onolofia expected her from hour to hour, but not seeing her return, was very

very much amaz'd, sending a Country man to Filina, to know, what was become of her, and whence her stay proceeded. The fellow with great Diligence enquir'd, as he had been commanded, all about, but could not hear any Tale or Tidings of her: wherefore he return'd to the Monastery, where being arriv'd, and having made his Report, I leave you to think, in what trouble the sorrowful Mother was, who will recover the Boy, she has lost; when it shall please GOD.

In the mean time the little Lucencio grew up from day to day, thinking himself to be Son to the good Widow Florinda, and Brother to Florindo, who in he lov'd as his second self. They were both now come to such an Age, that they were strong enough to go on Hunting. Now as they sat sometimes, during the Heat of the day, under the shadow of the Trees, expecting the Cool of the Evening, when they might better find their Prey, Lucencio would in this manner discourse his Companion: Brother, there is nothing in this world, I should more desire, than if it were possible, to be of the Order of Knighthood. But what? I see not any likelyhood of ever being so: for our Father was not a Gentleman, but a Labourer, tho' a rich and honest man, nor are we noble, but Rusticks, and People of this Condition are reputed unworthy to follow Arms: at which I am ready to dye for spite.

So frequent was this discourse with Lucencio, that the good Widow being Advertis'd thereof by Florindo, which made her from that time doubt, lest coming to understand the truth of his condition, he should leave her: therefore to obviate this, she us'd her utmost endeavours to conceal it from him.

But it happen'd one time, as he and his Companion were on Hunting, having each of them a Bow in his hand, they met an Hind, at which they stor, and wounded her, yet not so, but that she fled through the Thickets, whether the Dogs follow'd her, she doubting to with them, that they came to a fault, and a little after began again their cry, to that Lucencio and Florindo, thinking they had run her down, made hast in to 'er. They perceiv'd them embracing a naked Woman, who was so disfigur'd, that she seem'd rather a Whantasm, than an humane Creature, at the sight of which Florindo was so frighted, that he turn'd his face, flying, and trembling like the Leaf.

But Lucencio, whose blood could not deny the place, from whence he was descended, abate'd and taking his Staff, drove away the Dogs from about this woman, to whom he said: By my Fathers soul, I will now see whether you are an Hobgoblin, or some Devil disguis'd.

The poor Creature, wholly astonish'd, as thinking he would beat her, call'd her self on her knees, and joining her hands, answer'd him: Ah Gentleman, I beseech you by the Faith you owe to GOD, to leave me in peace, without adding farther Affliction to the Misery, in which I have now liv'd these thirteen or fourteen years, and shall live, as long as it shall please him, who has given me Being.

Lucencio, not without cause wondering to hear her speak so discreetly, whom he just now took for a Whantasm, took a more distinct view of her, than he had hitherto done, and subg'd by the Lineaments of her Face, that she must have been her step-mother,



hind one : wherefore he aught her, how she came to make her Repair to this Place, inhabited only by wild and savage Beasts.

Alas ! answer'd she, I pray you desire not to know it : for my Misfortune is greater, than you can comprehend : Wherefore I desire you to take away your Dogs, and not importune me any farther.

Lucencio had such pity of her, that he graciously made her this Reply : Dame I will readily obey you, altho' you would have more reason, and greater joy, if leaving this Austere Life, you would come with me to my Mother, whither I will willingly conduct you for the Desire, I have to serve you, and all others, that would employ me.

My Child, said she, I thank you ; and you will do me a Pleasure to tell me your Name, and who you are, to the end I may pray to our Lord, so to keep you, that the Renown of your good Works may be conformable to your Beauty.

I am, answer'd he, call'd Lucencio : my Father was Sinofry, who dy'd long since, and my Mother, who yet lives, is nam'd Slossima.

Since I had be utter'd this Word, but she began tenderly to weep and sigh. And Lucencio, thinking, that these her Tears proceeded from her hearing of Sinofry's Death, askt her, if she ever knew him.

Indeed, my Child, answer'd she, I have many times seen your Father, and know perhaps more of your Affairs, than you do your self : since I can assure you, that Sinofry nothing concern'd you.

When Lucencio heard this, he was more mov'd than before, thinking her to be some Fairy or Magician, wherefore he said to her : Dame, I request you with all the earnestness I can, to declare more fully what you have began to tell me : for according to your discourse, my Mother must have play'd him false, whose Son I esteem my self.

Your Mother, answer'd she, never did your Father any Injury ; but if you will promise me one Gift, I will tell you a thing, shall make you glad.

Indeed Dame, reply'd he, I promise it you whatever you please to ask me.

My Child, said she, assure your self, that your Father and Mother are of such noble blood, that you are descended of an Emperor, and a King. The Gift, you have granted me is, that you forbear to question me any farther, concealing from all Persons your having found me, and the discourse, I have had with you, and to the end it may not be discover'd, make your Companion also promise you the same, to whom nevertheless you may relate what I have told you. And you will find means between you, to know whi her two Knights, the one call'd Heart of Grace, and the other Person of Saul, lost about fourteen Years since, together with the Emperor, be return'd into this Country, and bring them both hither to me, or at least one of them : for this greatly imports you, and me a's.

Then having embrac'd and kiss him, she ran so swiftly thro' the Thickets, that Lucencio, who was in a maze, presently lost sight of her, joyful nevertheless, that he knew

knew himself to be the Issue of such Noble Parents, in labour of whom he might one day hope to be a Knight. Then returning the way he came, he heard a little after Florindo calling him with a loud and mournful Voice : for he thought him to be dead, and for this reason bitterly wept, and discomfited himself ; but Lucencio took his horn, which he wound so loud, that his Companion heard him, and being wholly resolv'd, came to meet him, saying to him at his Arrival with Tears still in his eyes : Alas Brother, I was greatly afraid of the Wild Beast, believing, he had outrag'd you. On my faith I lookt upon you as gone, nor can I tell what made you so hasty to cast your self into her Paws.

Lucencio smilingly answer'd him : Have I not often enough told you, that the Sons of such, as you and I are, cannot be Knights ? for they have naturally fear for a Companion instead of Assurance, as you have experimented in your self. Yet if you will promise me, never to report, what I shall tell you, you shall presently hear a thing, at which you will sufficiently wonder.

Then Florindo having made such an Oath, as he desir'd, First, said Lucencio, you must never speak to any person of the Beast, we found : neither is she indeed a Beast, but a wife and discreet Woman.

Then discounting to him from point to point all, that you have heard, they came out of the Wood.

Ah ! Ah ! said Florindo, I beseech you, at least let me always continue in your Company, and make use of me, as your Esquire : for I shall think my self happy, if I can come to such honour.

This Lucencio easily granted him, and coupling their Dogs, they return'd into the Town.

## CHAP. X.

How Lucencio and Florindo fled secretly from Sicilia to Constantinople, where Lucencio receiv'd Knighthood at the hands of his Uncle, the Emperor Esplandian.

THE discourse, which the Wainful of the Forrest had with Lucencio, so rais'd his heart, that he rest'd not an hour after without thinking, how he might attain to be a Knight. Sometimes he determin'd to speak of it to his Aunt Slossima ; then all on a sudden he chang'd his Opinion, so that having debated all things in his Interiour, he resolv'd as the best, to go to Constantinople, and there humbly to supplicate the Emperor Esplandian, of whom he had many times heard speak, that he would give him the Order, with Hoyle and Arms, hoping, seeing the Reputation, he had, to be the most affable, and courteous Prince in the world, that he would not refuse him.

This his Resolution he imparted to Florindo, who from the time, he had told him, what was said by the Woman of the Forrest, was become much more fervent to him.

him, then his wife. They began then to dispose the Means of their Departure; for being that which they consulted together to pick open a Coffin, in which Florinda had laid: Money, and take thence as much as would be necessary for their Voyage: which they did, so that the next day, feigning to go on Hunting according to



the Custom, they secretly went aboard a Ship, which they found in the Port ready to set sail for Thracia, and having a good wind, set forth into the Main-Sea, so that in a short time they arriv'd at Constantinople, where the Emperor Esplanidian kept his Court, towards which Lucencio and Florindo took their Course.

The Emperor was (at the time of their Arrival) in the great Hall of his Palace, attended by many Chastant Knights, all clad in mourning for the Death of the Old Emperor, and his Wife, deceased not long before. Close by him was the Emperess Leonorina, and her Daughter Luciana, being then about twelve Years of Age, and so fair withal, and well behav'd, that she was a Pearl amongst the Grecian Ladies. And tho' Lucencio had been all his life time bred up amongst Shepherds, and other Merchantil People, yet was he not amaz'd at the sight of so great an Assembly, but getting near the Emperor, and making him a very low Reverence, with an assured Countenance he 'et knee to ground, and spake to him in this manner: Most Potent Prince, the Fame of your Goodness, which fills the whole World, has embolden'd me to come to your Court, that I might beseech you to give me the Order of

Knighthood.

Knighthood, with Horses, and Furniture necessary; for tho' my whole Estate at present is no more than what you may see about me, yet dare I assure your Majesty, that I am defended largely of great Lords, nay even of Kings, as I have been told. But Fortune, who will not make all equal, has plac'd me in so poor a Condition, that I have not so much, as to procure me an Horse, unless your Majesty please to bestow one on me.

The Emperor, taking him so fair, young, and well-became'd, lookt on him with such an Eye, that he was mov'd to pity, and answer'd him: Truly, my Friend, I will do, what you desire me; for I believe, as far as I can guess by your Person, that Knighthood will not be ill imply'd in you.

And turning to the Marques's Steward, he said to him: My Lord Marques, I give you this Gentleman for a Guest, take him with you, and furnish him with all, that shall be necessary for himself, and an Esquire.

Lucencio rose up, and having made his Reverence, to thank the Emperor, went along with the Marques, who the same day provided him a Suit of rich white Armour, such, as was usually worn by new Knights. And also he had him before him to accoutre, yet was it to sit for him, and did so well he might, that he seem'd to have been altogether born for it. That night he was receiv'd in the Chamber with Florindo, and on the morrow the Emperor, accompanied by the Ladies, after Divine Service was over, gave him the Order, the Princess Luciana, to do 'em the grace to him, girding on his Sword. Then taking him by the hand, he led him into the Hall, where the Tables were cover'd for Dinner.

But scarce were they enter'd, when there presented her self a beautiful Lady, clad in Cloth of Gold, having her Hair, which was fairer than the Sun, spread upon her Shoulders, and on her Head a Garland, set with an infinite Number of precious Stones. She carry'd in a Heart a Sword and Shield, so richly adorn'd with Gold and Pearls, that it was wonderful to behold; and was led under the Arms by two Knights, so old and feeble, that each of them seem'd above an Hundred years of Age. By her went a Gentleman, between sixteen and seventeen years old, very fair, and so excellently shap'd, that he seem'd a Master-piece of Nature. A little behind came two other Knights, completely arm'd, except the Hands, and the Head, with four Damselfs in very good Equipage.

Then she, who appear'd to be the Lady of this Company, humbly saluted the Emperor, and making him a Reverence, endeavour'd to kiss his hands, as the Gentleman also did: But he graciously lifted them up, asking them, if they had any Business with him.

Sir, answer'd she, Your Majesty will be pleas'd to understand, that I am Dutches of Savoy, nam'd Chimarra, and as to this Gentleman, neither You, nor any other, can know his Name, before that he accomplish'd, for which we are come forth of our Country, and with which I am now going to acquaint you. Your Majesty then may understand, that, the Duke, my Father, dying without any Heirs, but my self, I was incontinently crown'd in the City of Chambery,

where



where this Gentleman was then newly arriv'd, who, vanquish'd with Love of me, had left his own Countrey, hoping, after he should have seen me, so to employ himself in serving me, that his Travel and Good Will should be in such manner acknowledged by me, as he might attain to the end of his Desires. And indeed, if my Fame had caus'd in him any Affection for me, 'twas little in respect of the Ardor, he found in himself, as soon as his Eye had given him the enjoyment of my Presence: Which Zeal was yet much more augmented, after he had begun familiarly to discourse with me.

It hapned then, that one day amongst the rest, the Fire of this Love encreasing by little and little, as we were a hunting with a good Company of Gentlemen, Ladies, and Damfels, dispers'd about the Woods, some this way, others that way. I was at a certain Stand, accompany'd only by four of my Women, and two Knights, with this Gentleman. Now so it was, that a chafed Bear came running so furiously towards us with open Mouth, that the two Knights, in whom lay the Safety of our Persons, were so frighted, that they fled with all their might thro' the Forest. Your Majesty will easily believe the Fright. I was then in: But this Gentleman, alighting from his horse, shew'd himself so valiant, that at the approach of the Bear, who thought to lay hold of him, he gave him such a blow with his Staff between his two ears, that he fell dead to the ground. This gave me such Content, that I determin'd in my self from that very hour to love him, as he deserv'd; and not without cause, considering his Civility, the Pains, he had taken, in coming from a far Countrey, to see, and serve me, and the Danger, to which he expos'd himself, for to save My Life, shewing himself, tho' naked, and unarmed, more courageous than those two, who turn'd their backs with their Lances, and Shields.

Wherefore I began from that time forward to treat him with more intimacy, than I had done, offering him my Estate, and what ever a Woman of my quality can honestly offer: Which gave him so much content, that, after a thousand thanks, he said to me: *Madam, tho' it will be impossible for me, as long as I live, to acknowledge the Favour, and Honour, you have been pleas'd, and are pleas'd to do me, I being such, as I am, and you so great a Lady, and Princess; yet will I, with Protestation not to offend you, take the boldness to make you a farther Request, which I most humbly desire you to grant me, hoping, that the Effect will redound to your Glory, and my Honour. 'Tis that you will be pleas'd to give me leave to go into Great Britain to King Amadis, that I may of him at your request receive the Order of Knighthood. This done, forasmuch as that Countrey is said to be frequented with adventurous Knights, than any other, I will for Love of you, and under the Favor of your Presence, keep, and defend a Passage, during the Space of six Months, against all those, that shall attempt to pass it, on condition, that, if I be vanquish'd within the said time, the Conqueror shall receive of you a Jewel of such value, as you shall think fit to give him; but if Fortune give me the Honour to get the better, he, or they, that shall yield, shall be constrain'd to leave their Shields in your Pavilion, with their Names in writing, for an assurance, that they will come, and*

*serve*

*serve you, when you shall require them. And if it happen, that in this Enterprize I do anything, worthy your Love, it will please you then to grant it me, and not sooner: for GOD for tid; that a Princess of your high quality should have any Friend, but such, as she merits; nor would it be Reason, that I, or any other, having done so little for you, should attain so great Happiness, as by your Authority to call himself Yours.*

This Request, Sir, I so willingly granted him, that a few days after we set forth on our journey, and for the Jewel, he speak to me of, I caus'd to be brought with me this Sword, and Shield, which you see, with an Helmet, which for its Goodness, Beauty, and Richness, is not to be valu'd. But by misfortune (said she, shewing one of her Women) this Gentleman, in whose custody it was, staying behind us this morning, was met by a Knight, who askt her, for whom she kept it. She answer'd him, for the best Knight in the world. Then he more discourteous, than Gentility desires, took it from her by force, saying, that, since it was dedicated to the best Knight in the world, it belong'd to none but him. And having gotten it from her against her will, he fled thro' the wood, so that she lost sight of him: at which being greatly discontented, she came to us, weeping for the Outrage, which she related to us. These Knights, who accompany me, hearing it, ran to overtake him; but seeing they lost their Labor in searching for him, being advertiz'd, that you made your Abode in this your City, we resolv'd to come, and pay you our Respects, and know, whether you would please to command us any thing to King Amadis: with whom we had long since been, had not Fortune driven us into these Coasts. This said, she held her peace.

Madam, answer'd the Emperor, You have done me both an Honour, and a Pleasure by this friendly Visit, for which I heartily thank you, and this Gentleman also, to whom Our Lord, if he please, grant the Grace to accomplish so noble an Enterprize: And as to the Villain, who has done you the Injury about your Helmet, believe me, I am very much displeas'd at it, as well that so base an Act should be done in my Countreys, as that it should be committed against a Lady of your Rank.

During this Discourse, Lucencio thought in himself, that he would go to Revenge the Damfel, and recover, what he had lost: And therefore without any farther delay he kneel'd down, and besought the Emperor, that he would give him leave so to do: which he graciously granted him. Then addressing himself to the Dutchess, he said to her: Madam, I have all my life heard, that Knighthood was principally ordain'd, to preserve Ladies and Gentlewomen from Injury: I entreat you therefore command her, whom the Knight has thus wrong'd, to conduct me, till such time, as we have found him, and I promise you by the Faith, I owe the Emperor, to revenge her, and you also; or to dy in the attempt.

Truly Knight, answer'd the Dutchess, I very heartily thank you: and immediately commanded the Damfel to accompany him, saying to her: And as soon as you shall have recover'd the Helmet, fail not to come into Great Britain.

Then Lucencio, having eaten something, took horse, and accompany'd only by Florindo, who serv'd him for an Esquire, and the Damfel, departed out of the City.

in which the Dutchess made afterward but a very short stay, for having thank'd the Emperor for her good Reception; and taken her leave of him, the Dukes and Ladies, He embarkt, steering towards Hercules's Pillars, for to enter into the Ocean Sea. Now there were many upon the Shore, looking after her at her departure. When a Knight, completely arm'd, except his head and his hands, enter'd the Palace, and saluting the Emperor, was known to be Sergil. Esplandian heartily welcom'd him, asking him, how King Norandel did.

Sir, answer'd he, He humbly recommends himself to your good Grace, and has sent me expressly to acquaint you, that one sole Knight has valiantly conquer'd the Defended Mountain, fought with, and vanquish'd Belles's, Brandalon, and Frapadalo, so that he, and the King of Jerusalem, are become Masters of the Fortreiss, as we are certainly inform'd by two Souldiers of the Garrison, who have made their Escape to Tessanta. May it please you therefore, Sir, to advise, how you will have King Nojandel govern himself in this Affair, and to consider the importance of the Place, easy to be regain'd before the Turks send Succour thither, if you prevent them.

How? reply'd the Emperor: Is it possible, that one only Knight has done so many Feats of Arms, as you say? And are my People all dead?

No, Sir, said he: But never Knights better did their Devoir, tho' they were in fine vanquish'd, and left without means to defend themselves.

GOD be prais'd for all, answer'd the Emperor: We must endeavour to provide for it.

Then he call'd the Prince of Brandalia, and the Marquis Salader; to whom he gave Order for the Equipping, and Arming all the Clesses, they could assemble, with Souldiers, and other Persons necessary for the Voyage. He also presently sent back Sergil with Speed to Norandel, to the end he might march, by Land the Army, he had with him to hinder his Enemies from giving Assistance to the King of Jerusalem. But let us leave them, providing for their Equipage, and return to Lucencio, who goes inquest of the Knight, that took the Helmet from the Damel, whom he afterwards found, as you shall understand.

## CHAP. XI.

How Lucencio fought with the Knight, that took by force the Helmet from the Dutchess of Saboy's Gentlewoman, and vanquish'd him.



Lucencio with his Company, going forth of the Town, took their way towards the Forrest after the Knight, that had robb'd the Damel of the Helmet: and as they rode, he enquir'd of the Damel, who he was, that the Dutchess her Affairs so much commended, and why he thus conceal'd his Name.

Sir, answer'd she, my Lady has told you as much before the Emperor, as I know for, on my side, he hath ever since his Arrival in Saboy so well conceal'd himself, that, if he has not discover'd himself to my Mistress, I dare avow, there's none of us, who knows him.

As GOD shall help me, said Lucencio, he is one of the handsomest young men, I ever saw, and of whom I hope much.

His Behaviour, answer'd the Damsel, would yet more please you, had you convers'd with him, as I have done: for his Disposition is no less noble and courteous, than his Stature comely, and graceful.

Thus discoursing, they enter'd the Forrest, on the edge of which, they met a poor man, laden with wood, of whom the Damsel enquir'd, whether he saw a Knight pass by, riding on a Hoan Horse, and having his Shield Or in a Field Azure.

He is before, answer'd the Clown, and can't be above two leagues off: turn on your Right hand at the next cross way, and you may easily overtake him before night, if you make haste.

Lucencio, very glad of this Account, spur'd after him; yet did he Travel two days, and two nights, before he had any farther News of him. The third day following, as he came forth of the Wood in a long and spacious Plain, he saw two Knights, fighting furiously one against the other.

Ha! said Lucencio then to the Damsel, Never trust me, if there be not your man: I pray you fair Lady, go no farther lest he know you: for if it be he, 'tis to be fear'd, he will flye to save his Theft: keep your self therefore conceal'd with my Equi'e, till I have spoken with him.

Having said this, he rode on a great Gallop, and being come near to those that were fighting, they stood still, to know, what he look'd for. But Lucencio, easily knowing the Knight, he fought for, by the Marks, that had been given him, cry'd out to him: Ill-bred Knight, who robbest travelling Damsels, restore the Helmet, or thou shalt dy an evil Death.

The Helmet, answer'd the other, it belongs so justly to me, that you shall never have it, seeing it is mine.

In faith, said he, to whom he fought, neither he, nor you, deserve it; but I alone, who have it my self to gain it by force of Arms, besides, she who carry'd it, said, it was for the best Knight in the world. Now neither of you are any way equal to me: wherefore I advise you to follow your way, and, without contending any farther, to do me Justice of your selves; else my Sword shall do it me to your Disgrace and Damage.

On my word, answer'd Lucencio, you both sufficiently shew your Follies: But tell me in good earnest, for what Reason the Damsel should lose it, from whom it was taken by violence. Come, come, leave this Quarrel, and restore it willingly to her; otherwise I will endeavour to make you do it by force.

Truly Knight, reply'd he, that took it, I no longer wonder at your being so lean, since you trouble your self about so many things. In troth, if he will be rul'd by me, we will cudgel you so well, that you shall be more sensible of your Folly on your Shoulders, than you are of it in your Head.

If you promise me, said the other, that I shall share with you, you shall see how I'll order him presently.

I promise you, answer'd the first.

By this word Lucencio well knew, that 'twas at him, their Discourse was held: wherefore he retir'd a little back, the better to give his horse a Career, and courting his Lancer, ran so directly upon them, that he met him of the Helmet to such force, that his Staff breaking in pieces, he tumbled him on the ground; yet he held fast the Reins of his Steed, and soon after got up again. In the mean time Lucencio turn'd his Side, and setting his hand to his Sword there began to stand and dangerous a fight of two against one, that Lucencio perfectly knew the Peril, he should be in, if he did not look the better about him. Then altho' he had never been at such sport before, mov'd nevertheless with a natural Instinct to imitate those of whom he was defended, he had so good and virtuous an Heart, that his Adversaries soon perceiv'd it, the field being in many places dy'd with their Blood. But our Camellier was yett well match'd: for the two Assassins treated him so ill, that he felt himself so wounded, as to doubt of his Death: at which he became so furious that he enter'd pell mell betwixt them, just as a chased Bull does amongst those, who provoke him in the Place, where he is to be baited. And thus striking on the right hand, and on the left, he met, not with the Knight, that had robb'd the Damsel, but the other, whom he gave such a Blow on the ear with the Point of his Sword, that it made him bow his head as low as his Saddle-bow, and before he could recover himself, Lucencio, redoubling his Stroke, with the edge of his Sword smote his Head from his Shoulders. his Body falling craking to the ground. At which Lucencio glad, cry'd out loud enough: In good faith, Master, you will now have no more need of a Night-cap, much less of the Helmet, you so greatly desir'd.

When the other saw his Companion in so ill a Condition, he no longer desir'd to try the Force of him, he had injur'd: the better therefore to secure himself, resigning to revenge his fellow, he drew near, and lifting up his Arm, gave Lucencio's horse such a Blow with his Sword between the two Ears, that he kill'd him: then giving his own horse the Reins, he turn'd his Back, flying, as if a thousand Devils were at his heels. You may easily believe, that Lucencio was not a little displeas'd: for he saw himself without an horse, and out of hopes as it were to recover what he fought, which was the Helmet, that the other carry'd away. But when he was got up, spying the dead Knights Steed pass by, he found means to seize of him, and getting on his back, pos'd after him, that was fled.

Then Florindo and the Damsel, who had kept themselves conceal'd within the Forrest, seeing him thus sped away, came out of their ambush to follow him: but they lost sight of him, and it was almost Night, when they saw him again on the top of an Hill, whence he discover'd his Plan, making such hast down, that his horse being tired, and out of breath, he took so great a Leap along the Valley, that he roll'd above a Stones cast, before he stop'd: in such manner that Lucencio could not forbear laughing: for he thought, the horse had broken his own Neck, and his Passer too. Nevertheless they both got up again: and in the mean time Lucencio approach'd, crying out a loud: By my Faith, Sir Knight, you shall now leave the Helmet, which is none of yours, and your Head likewise.

The other, seeing him so close at his heels, thought no way better to secure his life, than to throw down, what he had, hoping that Lucencio, instead of pursuing him, would amuse himself in taking it up. But he, not regarding it, pass'd on to such speed, that he overtook him near a great wood, and gave him such a blow on the bare head, as cleav'd it down to his teeth. Then he turn'd back to the Place, where he saw the Knight throw down the Helmet, but he found it not there: Wherefore he thought that Florindo and the Damself had taken it up: And so, this cause, he lookt round about to see, whether he could spy them; but it was in vain. At which being much troubled, he return'd to the top of the Hill, and entering thence into the Forest, resolv'd to stay there till morning: for the Darkness was by this time so great, that he could not see which way to go.

By and by, he heard an heavenly noise, and thinking it might be those he lookt for, he rode thither, where by the light of a great fire he perceiv'd a very fair and young Lady, washing her hands in a Fountain, which spang forth of an hollow Rock close by. He was attended by six others, having each of them on their Heads Garlands and Chaplets of very odoriferous flowers, two of which, joining their voices to the sound of the Lutes, which she sweetly toucht, made the Air found with such a Harmony, that Lucencio became wholly astonish'd, surpris'd never before with some sort of Love, which so enflam'd his heart, that he approacht them, and saluting the Company, address'd himself to the fairest of them, to whom he said: Madam, I beseech you to excuse my Presumption towards you, assuring you, that my Coming into this Place is not to disturb you; but rather to serve you, if you please to command me any thing.

At this Discourse she, who thought only of refreshing herself, lifted up her head, and seeing him all Arm'd, except his Helmet, which he carry'd at his saddle-bow, was at first amaz'd; but his demeanour, appear'd so gentle, that she readily began telling him what he sought.

Madam, answer'd he, I was looking for an Esquire of mine, and a Damself whom he accompanys: but Love, I think, has directed me to the Light of this Fire, to make me experiment the heat of a fever, with which I already feel my self inflam'd; yet your great Beauty and Excellence, which have kindled it in my heart, have also the means to moderate it, if you please to take pity of me, who never offended you, as I know of.

The Lady, hearing him speak with such affection, could not forbear smiling, and signing not to understand this Language of Love, turn'd the Tare against the host, saying to him: And how did your People lose you thus?

Madam, answer'd Lucencio, as I was going after a Knight, who had forcibly taken an Helmet from the Damself, I speak of my Esquire and she, who follow'd me at a Distance, were surpris'd by the night, and I expected to meet with them in this wood, but I find my self much mistaken: for thinking to recover another I have lost my self by the Extremity of that Divine Beauty, with which you are endued. When he related to her from point to point all, that you have heard of the Helmet, and what had befalln since.

Knight,

Knight, said she, I have seen part of what you tell me, concerning him that fled: your Esquire, and the Damself, I know nothing of; but of the Helmet I will give you a good account, if you will promise me a Gift, such, as I shall ask of you.

Madam, said Lucencio, the Charms of your Beauty have made me so much yours that you may command me in whatever you please, and I shall be yet more inclin'd to serve you, if by your means I may recover the Helmet, which I am oblig'd to restore to her that follows me.

Then she lifted up the border of a Battin Mantle, on which she sat, and shew'd it him, saying: Is not this what you look for? One of my Women took it up, a little after the Knight, you pursu'd had thrown it down. Come then alight, and rest your self a little with us: for I believe, you have need enough of Repose.

He, who desir'd no better Occasion of discoursing with her, readily obey'd her: and, when he was sat, she sent one her Women out of the Forest, to see, whether she could understand any thing of the Esquire, and Damself, that were gone astray: (for already the Moon began to shine) and in the mean time she entered into discourse with Lucencio, to whom she said: Knight, you have promis'd me a Gift, such as I shall ask you. In order to the accomplishment of this promise, I desire you, that as soon, as you shall have recover'd your Esquire, and the Damself you have lost, you will accompany me to a Ship of mine, which my People have at Anchor hard by, and out of which I landed this morning, as well to see this Country, which seem'd to me pleasant, and well-shaded, as to refresh me after my Travel on the Sea, where I have long voyag'd.

Madam, answer'd Lucencio, you may dispose of me, as of one of your Slaves; for I will not disobey you, but you shall always find me willing, and ready to follow your Pleasure.

Indeed, repli'd she, I very heartily thank you.

Whilst they were thus discoursing, Florindo and his Companion arriv'd with her who went to look them, and alighting from their Horses, pass'd there the rest of the Night till Sun rise, when Lucencio, calling the Dutcheless Damself, said to her: My good Friend, there is the Helmet, that was taken from you, you shall carry it to your Mistress, and recommending me to her Favour, assure her on my behalf, that I am her Servant. And forasmuch as I have promis'd my Lady to embark presently with her, I desire you to excuse me, that I bear you Company no longer.

Sir Knight, answer'd she, you have done so much for my Mistress, and me, that we are for ever oblig'd to be thankful to you: and since you are pleas'd to licence my Departure, I shall, as I pass by, acquaint the Emperor with your Achievements, and from thence will take Ship for Great Britain, as I have been commanded: therefore consider, whether you please to have any thing else with me.

He answer'd No, she recommended him to the Protection of our KING, and mounting her Horses, took her way towards Constantinople, the rest going towards the Sea, where they found their Ship, in which being embark'd, they weigh'd Anchor and departed. Let them Sail then at their leisure, if the Weather will permit.

permit them, and let us return to those, whom we have left in the Defended Mountain.

## CHAP. XII.

How the Emperor Esplandian arriv'd at the Defended Mountain, where he fought with the Knight of the Burning Sword: and what was the Issue of their Combat.

**T**he Knight of the Burning Sword continu'd in the Castle of the Defended Mountain above thre weeks after the Murther, he had gotten over those, that guarded it: during which, three pass'd not a Day, but he went to visit Prandalo, and the other wounded Knights, till such time as Yneril return'd from Natolia with a Reinforcement of twenty Turks, who were very well receiv'd, especially by the King of Jerusalem; who had before related to the Knight of the Burning Sword the manner, how he was taken at the Siege of Constantinople, as his Son and Daughter were a little before by Perion of Gaul, then surnam'd the Knight of the Sphere.

But believe me, said he, never was captive Prince more honour'd, or better treated, or had so many Civilities shewn him; as I receiv'd from King Amadis, and the Emperor Esplandian.

Then he related at large the Labours, and Courtesies, that had been done him, which were so many, that the Knight of the Burning Sword said aloud: Truly I must even from your Discourse confess, that Virtue and Prowess are more familiar to Amadis and his Children, than to any other Knights in the World.

As they discours'd thus, leaning on a Window, that lookt towards the Sea, they perceiv'd a Bark with two Oars come into the Harbour, out of which landed a Knight, arm'd in black Armour, all but his Head, an Esquire bearing his Helmet, and a Dwarf his Shield, on the midst of which in a field Or was painted a Cross, red as blood. They began to ascend the Steps, cut in the Rock, so that in a little time they were come to the Portal, where the Knight made himself ready to fight. Which being seen by him of the Burning Sword, who beheld him come so boldly up, he knew not at first what to think of him; but it came at last into his mind, that he was indeed some Christian, who, having understood the Loss of the Castle, would endeavour to recover it, if he could. And for this Reason he askt him out of the Wall below, whether he was going, and what he sought: For, said he, the Blason of that Shield you bear, testifies that you can be no other than an Enemy to the Turks.

At this word the black Knight lifted up his Eyes, and saying him, that question'd him, thought him the fairest Personage, he had ever beheld: wherefore he answer'd him: In good faith Knight, if you are he that have gain'd this Castle by force of Arms, Knighthood indeed (considering your young Age, and what your Countenance shews) is better employ'd in you, than in any other, I know; and if your

Conditions

Conditions are such as Fame reports them, you ought not to take it ill, that (bearing the Sign, which is in my Shield) I endeavour to do what you have done, desiring to prove my self against you, as against the most courteous, and valiant Knight of Asia. I desire you then to cause the Gate to be open'd for me: For, on the Security of your word, I will come in, and we will try (if you will take my advice) which of us two Fortune will most favour in fight.

The Knight of the Burning Sword easily imagin'd by the Discourse of the other, that he must be some valiant Man: And for that reason he said to him: Indeed, Knight, you speak so much to my advantage, that I greatly doubt, whether I ought to assure you that I am he, you imagin, or another. One certainty there is, that Honour always redounds to him, from whom it parts: thus you cannot but gain Honour by the Combat, you demand, whether you have the better, or the worse. For to praise the Strength, and Vertues of ones Enemy is nothing else, but to illustrate ones self, and to desire to conquer his Heart by Virtue; before one attempt his Body by Force. And therefore, since you are come to hazard your life, and to endeavour the gaining of Renown by doing what your Law obliges you to, it would neither be reasonable, nor courteous in me to deny you, what you desire of me. Stay then a little, and I will cause you to be let in on the Condition, you request, and which I willingly grant you.

Then he retir'd from the Window, leaving the black Knight extremely satisfy'd with the Civility of his Discourse. But he said not long before the Gate was open'd, at the entrance of which a portly Knight presented himself, arm'd with white Armour, and having about his Neck a Shield, on which was painted a Red Sword, with some Characters, that he could not understand: nevertheless he doubted much, that it was he, who had spoken to him at the Window, and with whom he desir'd to fight: for he had him enter, and then endeavour to accomplish that for which he was come.

At this word the black Knight pass'd on, and, as he enter'd, said to the other: I pray you good Sir, let our Combat be farther in the inner Court of the Castle. This he said, fearing, lest (if he should vanquish) the Door might be shut against him.

The Knight of the Burning Sword, very well knowing what he meant, answer'd him, that he was well pleas'd, it should be so, and offering him the Honour of the way, importun'd him to go in first: but the black Knight refus'd it, telling him, that he, who was Lord of the Place, ought to show him the way.

I will obey you then, answer'd the other: for it may be thinking to shew myself too courteous towards you, I may fail in not doing, what you desire: I have alls all my life heard say, that Knights, who are upon the point to combat, ought to have Courtesie in no less esteem, than Honour using towards each other humble and gracious Discourses, remitting all the ill Will, they may bear one another, to the strength of their Arms, guided by the Magnanimity of their hearts, in expectation

tion of the future Victory: which if they obtain, it is so much the more glorious, as their Discourse was more courteous and affable, than the Place and Occasion required.

Then he pass'd on, and the black Knight after him, who, before they began the Combat, said to him: Knight, if thou wouldst leave thy foolish Belief, and follow me to a Place, where thy Strength and Courage would be better employ'd for his Glory and Honour, of whom thou hast receiv'd them, believe me, I would easily forbear this Contest, for much to any doubt, I have of thee; but only to the end we might be Friends, so much do I commend and esteem thee.

Ah! answer'd the other, This Request is so much out of Reason, that I ought by no means to dispute it with thee. Therefore amuse thy self no longer to preach, but regard, for what end thou com'st to seek me.

Is it so? said he in the black Arms: Come on then. And uttering this word, they charg'd one another with such vigor, that there was never seen a fiercer Fight: for during the space of above two long hours, they ceas'd not to cut and thrust, unjoining each others Arms, and paring their Shields in such manner, that the Place was up and down cover'd with the Pieces which flew from them, so that it could not be judg'd, to which of them the Victory was promis'd: for the longer they fought, the more eager they cam'd to be: whence it hapn'd, that they were by the heat of the Sun (it being now Noon) so scalded in their harness, that they were forc'd to draw back, and lift up the Visors of their helmets to take breath. But this lasted not long, ere they charg'd again with more Fury, than before; yet could not either of them gain any advantage over the other: at which being extremely bent within themselves, they let go their Swords, leaving them hanging at their wrists in Silver Chains, and closing, endeavour'd each by his strength and skill in wrestling to throw his Adversary on the ground: which 'twas impossible for them to do, both of them standing so stiff, that the King of Jerusalem, running to Frandalo, whose weakness caus'd him to keep his Chamber, said to him: If you can but come into these Galleries, you will see (perhaps) the cruellest Fight, that can possibly be between two persons.

Frandalo wondering what it might be, made a shift to crawl thither, and came just as they were falling one upon the other, yet without any way letting go their hold. Then they strove, who should get the advantage; but in vain: for one was no sooner got uppermost, but he presently found himself again underneath. Thus struggling, sometimes above, sometimes under, they grew out of breath, that they separated, and rising up, took their Swords again, with which they acted so valiantly as if they had not striken a stroke all that day before. Which made Frandalo to who the King of Jerusalem had related all the beginning of this Dispute, conjecture that he in the black Arms was Amadis of Gaul. But he soon chang'd this Opinion: for Amadis was indeed of less Stature, and in too far a Countrey: wherefore he suspected that it was rather Lisart of Greece, who had made this attempt. And was saying so to the King of Jerusalem, as the Knight in the black Arms, lifting up his

head

head, spy'd Frandalo, at which he was both Glad and Sorry. Glad to see him alive, and Sorry that his Colour was pale and wan, which was caus'd by the continual Pain, he suffer'd in his wounds. This made the black Knight so much desir'd to revenge him that setting in himself for having been already so long about it, he could not forbear saying between his Teeth: By my Head, I have been too long fighting for so desir'd a Victory, and I must surely believe, that this is some Devil let loose from the Bottom of Hell: for if he were other, I should long since have brought him to reason.

And at that instant his Courage increas'd in such manner, that he struck him in the white Arms so outrageously, that he forc'd him to let knee to ground: yet he got suddenly up again, and the better to be quit with his Adversary, took his Sword in both hands, with which he gave him so strong a blow, that had it not met with the Shield, which he oppos'd against it, 'twould have been his last: nevertheless the Point fell upon his Helmet, and so runn'd him, that he was constrain'd to lean against the wall, else he had tumbled on the ground. But this Astonishment lasted but a little, ere they made a fresh charge with more violence, than before: tho' indeed the black Knight began visibly to grow faint and leave, however he still vigorously perform'd his Devoir: yet was it easily discern'd that he could not long hold out. Wherefore he in the white Arms drew a little back, and said to him: Knight, be not thine own Murderer; but yield: for it were great Pity thou shouldst dye, being so valiant a man, as I know thee to be.

In good faith, answer'd the other, thy Courtesy summons me: as it were to follow thy Counsel; but my Honour contradicts it, so that nothing but Death shall finish this Dispute between us two.

And altho' he had not then so much Shield left, as would cover his Arm, and tho' his Helmet, and Arms were unbroken and broken; so that his bare flesh appear'd in many places, yet as he answer'd his Antagonist, he enter'd into such a fury, that stepping forward, he gave him such a blow with his Sword upon the Shoulder piece, that the Blood in that place dy'd his harness. This exceedingly incens'd the white Knight, who was about to make him very sensible of his Resentment, when a Serbant came running to tell the King of Jerusalem, that there was a Damsel at the Gate, who desir'd to be let in for a matter, which greatly import'd the two Combatants. The King commanded her to be immediately brought in, and the instantly presented her self before the Knights, to whom she said: My Lords, I beseech you, if you please, to delay your Fight, and hear the Message I have to deliver to you.

At this word they drew back, principally he in the Black Arms, who knew her: for it was Alquisa, who, since the Loss of Lisart and Perion, had kept company with Urganda in the Isle of Apes, and was by her Father sent towards the two Knights, to prevent their death which was very near, if their wrath had continu'd as it was begun. To obviat which, she presented her self at the feet of him in the Black Arms, speaking to him in this manner: Sir, my Father, who loves and esteems you, commanded me to do you this Honour, assuring me, that at my first

word



word you would know me, tho' I have never seen you, as I know. He intreats you that the Combat between you and this Knight may pass no farther; and this for a Reason, he will one day let you understand, and for which you will thank him.

Damfel, answer'd he, if you know me not at present, I know very well, who you are, we having often discours'd together at a more agreeable time. As for the rest, you may easily see, I have no power over this Knight, to pray him, or command him, considering the State we are in: wherefore I am of opinion; that you your self speak to him, and know what he thinks of it.

It shall not stick there, said the Damfel. Then turning her Face towards him in the white Arms, she said to him: Knight, the Old Man, who found you in the Forrest, after you had deliver'd King Bagadan, desires you for a reason to fight no more against him, to whom I have address'd my self, but to remember the Discourse you had with him, when you said, that *Virtue was never lost, in what place soever it were exercis'd.*

Damfel, answer'd he, I am so much bound to the old man, that I will believe his Counsel, and would gladly be in place, where I may do him Service as I desire.

Now he had taken notice of the Honour, he did the black Knight, which made him conjecture, that he was some King, or other great Personage, wherefore he said to him: My Lord, pardon me, I beseech you, if in my Behaviour and Words I have not been so courteous to you as I ought, and do me the Favour to tell me, who you are, that I may hereafter better know by name, him, in whom there is so much Goodness and Prowess.

Knight, answer'd he, your so glorious Discretion makes me entirely lose the ill will, I have hitherto born you, and summons me to leave you the Place, since our dispute can take no other course: Yet I will first satisfy your Request, and tell you, who I am, on condition, that afterwards neither you, nor any other shall hinder my Departure.

Of that you may be sure, said the white Knight, and I promise you it upon my Honour.

Understand then, said he, that you may now see Esplandian Emperor of Constantinople, who came hither, hoping alone to recover, what your self have gain'd from me, and mine: but finding, what is in you, and knowing the Strength of the Place, I make no farther account of getting any thing, what Power soever I can bring.

O Jupiter, cry'd out the Knight of the Burning Sword, is it possible, that the Prince whose Renown is the greatest, and most glorious of any in the whole world, has done me this Honour! On my faith, I may at present well stile my self the happiest man on earth, having had the Means to prove my self against the best Knight living. Ah! Ah! most Excellent Emperor! You are such, that the Praises, which are given you, are far short, of what is due to your Merits. And would to our Gods, the Law, you hold, were conformable to their Honour, that you might in

time

time see, with what affection I would do you Service, instead of the Displeasure, you have receiv'd thro' my ignorance: for which I entreat you, and this Damfel to excuse me.

Now he believ'd her to be still behind him; but he was already departed, which he perceiv'd, as he thought to give her thanks: wherefore with much discontent he chang'd his discourse, and ask'd, what way she had taken.

My Lord, said one from within, She is gone forth, and we saw her descend strait to the Sea.

Ah! said the Knight, she does me wrong.

Now he thought to know of her, where he might find the good old Alquist, by whom he hop'd to come to the Knowledge of his Parents. And for this cause leaving the Emperor, he went hastily out of the Castle, running after her, and the farther he went, the more he said within himself: By my Head, I have no wound, that shall hinder me from following you: and if once I catch you, you shall tell me, where your Father is.

But notwithstanding his Diligence, Fortune guided him far another way, as you shall hereafter be inform'd.

## CHAP. XIII.

How the twenty Turks, which Sarril had brought from Patolia for the Relief of the Defended Mountain, set themselves to kill the Emperor Esplandian: and of that, which hapned.

FRandalo, who was come down out of the Galleries, to listen to the Damfels discourse, having heard from the Emperor Esplandians own mouth, that it was he who had fought with the Knight of the Burning Sword, presently knel'd down to kiss his Hands, the King of Jerusalem also making him a very great Reverence. The Emperor receiv'd them very kindly, and embracing the King, said to him: In good faith, Brother, your Liberty is, I believe, more happy than you expected, being deliver'd, and freed out of Prison by the best Knight I ever saw in my life.

Ah Sir, said Frandalo, your Presence gives me an incomparable Joy, and a Regret even to Death,

My good Friend, said the Emperor, you have always be esteem'd so discreet, that you need not any Comfort, but what you can give your self.

But they had not long continu'd this Discourse, when the twenty Turks lately arriv'd for Defence of the Place, calling out to Arms, ran upon the Emperor: who more astonish'd than before, and that not without cause, said to the King of Jerusalem, whom he suspected to be the Head of this Treason: How, Brother, Dare you indeed do an Act, so injurious to your Honour, and the Right of Chivalry? On my faith you not only wrong your own Person, but all others, who bear the Title of

Gentlemen:

Gentlemen for you cannot be ignorant, that I entred into this place with Security from him, who had power to give me it.

The King of Jerusalem, very sorry for this assault, took suddenly his Sword in hand, and severely menac'd these Rascals: who, to shew how little they would do for him, began in such manner to let fly their Arrows, that they seem'd like hail, pouring down from Heaven. This so chaf'd the Emperour, that without any farther delay, he cover'd himself with his Shield, and with Sword in hand entred pell mell amongst them, striking to on the right and left, that he gave the first, he met with, such a blow, that he never spake after, and following the rest, brought three of them with their Roles to the ground. Nevertheless this could not have preserv'd him without Frandalo, who, weak and feeble as he was, got hold of a Battle-axe, and follow'd by two of his Squires, so well seconded the Emperour, that whether the others would or no, they were forc'd to give back, to their great shame and loss. And as we often see a company of Pies pursue an Hawk, that, taking his flight from off his Masters hand, perches upon some Tree, at his departure from which being provoked by their beating and pecking at him, he not only seizes upon one, two, or three of them, but furiously scatters the Remainder: in the like manner these Rascals, having done their endeavour against the Emperour, betook themselves to flight, some falling dead, and others putting all their hopes in the entrance of a fair case, whether they retir'd for their Defence. But this weak Resistance lasted scarce a moment, the Emperour and Frandalo following them so close, that there did not one of them escape.

The King of Jerusalem was then in very great perplexity, fearing, lest the Emperour might impute it to him, that he had been the Author of so great a Villany: of which being desirous to excuse himself, before he was spoken to about it, he went to meet the Emperour, and said to him: Sir, I humbly beseech you to believe, that the Treason of these Rogues was not in the least known to me, nor yet to the Knight of the Burning Sword: as Frandalo can also assure you, with what Civility he has been treated since the Conquest of this Place.

Truly, answer'd the Emperour, these Wretches have sufficiently shewn, how little they know to maintain the Fidelity, requisite amongst Knights, and they have also been very well recompens'd, and chastis'd for it. And as to you, King of Jerusalem, I certainly believe what you affirm, and farther to satisfy you, I do so, I will not hinder your departure, whither, and when you please, out of this Place, which (as you know) I have conquer'd twice with the Price of my Blood. And this makes me the more desirous to keep it better, than ever I have done, nor can so doing any way blemish my Honour, I being no more oblig'd to keep Faith with those here, than they have been ready to do it with me. So that being the wicked and base Act of these Rascals, which assaulted me, and the Suspicion also, that may be had of you, who are of their Religion, if I shew you now any Courtly and Civility, you ought to thank the Knight that is gone, and none else.

At the finishing their Discourse, they entred into the great Hall, which lookt to-

ward

wards the Sea, where the King of Jerusalem discover'd a vast fleet of Ships, and other warlike Equipage, which Esplanadian had brought for Recovery of that Place: But would, before he laid Siege to it, endeavour to regain it by the means you have heard: for which purpose he wanted a Ship, taking together a Company consisting, but one Squire, and Carmellian: he staid for him at the Gate, into which he entred, when he perceiv'd the Knight of the Burning Sword go out. Yet the Emperour presently sent her back again to fetch Walter Elizabel, who came with the Prince of Brandalia, and the King of Hungary, to the Event of so hazardous an Enterprize, were in strange Pain for the Emperours Person: but when they knew, how it was hapned, they came to wait upon him, praising God. Walter Elizabel blurted his great and dangerous Illness, for the cure of which he was constrain'd to take his Bed, where a few days after he began to amend, during which, King Norandel came with his Army, which he had brought from home: I hesitate, according to the Directions had been sent him by Esplanadian. Being come within a days March of the Place, he had News, that the Defended Mountain was retaken: wherefore leading his Soldiers on camp'd under the Command of the Prince Blino, the same with Esplanadis, where he found the Emperour, who after he had bidden him welcome, related to him the Summ of his own Affairs, and the Knight of the Burning Sword, who is, (said Esplanadis,) in my opinion, the best, and most courteous Knight in the world.

Ah! Sir, answer'd King Norandel, how then have you lost him so soon: certainly your Court would have been much honour'd, if you had staid him for yours. He follow'd the Dameljabat parred us, reply'd the Emperour, and will (perhaps) return. Then you may be sure, he shall not scape me: tho' I should be fain to give him half a Chair, to stay him. How I love him, said Esplanadis.

Thus did the Emperour discourse of him, whose Grand father he was, tho' not knowing it: and so long did he continue in the Defended Mountain, till his wounds were at last quite cur'd. At which the King of Jerusalem seeing, he took a fitting opportunity, and said to him: Sir, you know the Liberty you have given me, will you be pleas'd (since the Knight of the Burning Sword, by long delays, has refus'd to let me have some Vessel, in which I may return into my Country, &c.)

Brother, answer'd the Emperour, you shall have one. And immediately commanded Provision to be made of all that was necessary, so that the King might the more winking bestow, having Yncril in his Company, who was extremely discontented for having thus lost his Master, and the rather, because he knew not where, or in what place to have Cole or Things of him.

Thus was the Fortress of the Defended Mountain regain'd, with which the Emperour desirous to acquaint King Anadis, sent a Gentleman into Great Britain. And in the mean time having given Order, touching what was necessary for the Defence of the Island, where he left Frandalo, return'd to his Wife, and set sail for Constantinople.



## CHAP. XIV.

How the Knight of the Burning Sword, being in quest of the Daniel Magilla, met Alpatraz, King of Sicily, with whom he fought; and what afterwards befell them.

YOU have heard, in what manner the Knight of the Burning Sword went forth of the Castle, where he left the Emperor's Elplandia; to follow the Wander, from whom he had to learn News of the old man, that succour'd him in the Forest, as you have been told. And for this cause he travel'd so far; that he might find him. And he himself, now knowing what way to go, to great was the Wander, and to thick and bright was the Woods, into which he was got. Then began his wounds to grow cold and stiff, which put him to such pain, that he was often in the mind to return, from whence he came, could he but find the way back. Which he was in this Stray, he saw at a distance the Light of a Fire, which made him think that he, when he sought this Knight perhaps he there; but when he was got near, he perceiv'd, they were only torches, that were looking to the Spoken Castle, who fled away for fear, as soon as they spied him. But he call'd them back, and gave them such assurance, that they return'd towards him; and he ask'd them, whether they had not seen a Daniel Magilla, who he describ'd to them in the best manner he could.

By St. Mary, answer'd the Keeper of them, is not half an hour since he went along this Path, making all the way he could, as he said.

This troubles me, said he: for I would willingly have spoken with her. But, since there is at present no Remedy, I pray you, if you have any thing to eat, give me part with you.

When one of them drew out of his Wallet an Earb of sweet Bread, and a Bottle of wine, and presented him with them, which were so welcome to him, that never any Food in the Court of King Magadan appear'd to him so delicious as this. Having thus refresh'd himself, he got them to bind up his wounds in the best manner, he could, and laid him down to sleep, till such time as the Moon should rise. But as soon as he could see his way, he got up, and thanking his Hosts, took the Path, they shew'd him, so that by break of day, he was come to the Spoken Castle, not knowing what further course to take: for the Master hinder'd his passing on; and if he thought to turn on either side, the high and insupportable Rock shew'd him the Difficulty of the Matter.

Being thus at a loss, what to do, all melancholy, and as it were in despair, he had a desire to drink, and perceiving the Stream of a clear Spring, passing between the Rocks, he went thither, and standing up the Hill, found the head of it, which was so pleasant, that having taken in the hollow of his hand, what was sufficient to quench his thirst, he put off his Helmet, and lying down on the green and fresh grass,

with

with his head leaning on his left hand, fell to sound a Sleep, that at his waking the Sun was now very high. For he had been there thus, had he not heard a noise on the other side the Clift: it was the Clift rising up, he saw on his Helmet, and soon after saw a Knight come along in exceeding fair and rich Armour, accompanied only by a Gentleman, with whom he discours'd, so that he was already upon the Bank of the Fountain, when he perceiv'd the Knight of the Burning Sword. Now came he already armed with the Counters of the Arms of the Defended Mountain; those, that were set, telling these one, how a Knight, bearing the Shield Argent a Sword Gules, had vanquish'd Frandalo and the other Suggs: so that by these Signs the Knight in the rich Armour immediately knew, that he of the Fountain had perform'd that Enterprize. For this cause he addrest himself to him, and without saluting him, us'd this Language: Sir Knight, are not you he, who, living against the Christian Law, have not long since lost the Defended Mountain? Certainly, I will endeavour, if I can, to keep you from offending any more the God of Heaven and Earth, of whom you pretend not to have any knowledge.

Having said this, he took his Shield, and ran upon him of the Burning Sword, who, without being any way dismay'd, answer'd him bravely: By my Head, I know not who you are; but I have seen many as brave as you, who at the end of the Night have been conquer'd; and yet without choice: therefore take heed lest the like befall you.

That will appear, reply'd the other.

Then step'd forward another Knight, that never the Suggs, heard at the War for love of the dead, then themselves more furious. So that after many blows struck, fortune would, that he of the Fountain should have the better, giving his adversary two such strokes, that whether he would or no, he fell from his horse, being deprived of all his senses, in which stroke the Knight of the Burning Sword seeing, he went on to take off his Helmet, and afterwards his Head. But Frandamilla, (so was the man), who had long beheld them, began to cry out, and with the Tears trickling in abundance down his Cheeks, call'd upon for the vanquish'd Knight.

Daniel my Friend, answer'd he of the Burning Sword, I will not refuse you, that you shall be obey'd: for I have never learnt to be discourteous to Ladies; nor will I begin with you; tho' the Knight deserves great Chastisement, having assaulted me who never in my life injur'd him, as I know of. I shall only in recompence desire you to tell me his Name; for by his Rich Armour, join'd with the Valour and Goodness I have found in him, I guess him to be some great Personage.

Ah Ah, good Knight, reply'd this, this I will willingly do on condition, that you also grant me a Gift, which will not I think be any way displeasing to you: for, if you are he, whose Renown lies thro' the whole World, I am in a manner assur'd that you will without constraint accord it me, when you know it.

Daniel, said he, you shall have of me, whatever you will nor shall the Difference between your Religion and mine hinder it, provided your Request be reasonable and discreet: for I and all others, who bear Arms, and the Name of Knight, are specially

ally oblig'd to maintain Right, and to do our utmost for Ladies; otherwise the Strength given us by the Gods, would deserve no more praise, than that weakness and impotence, which is so peculiar in you, that you cannot without us resist the Wicked.

A virtuous Knight, answer'd the, you have spoken so well, that I shall esteem you for it, as long as I live. And as to what you desire to know concerning the Knight, you shall understand, that he is natural King of Sicily, nam'd Aliphaty, Husband to one of the most noble Princesses of Europe, call'd Miramania, Daughter to the King of France; and they two were some time since enchanted by the Sage Sarcas: but about twenty years ago, the best Knight and fairest Lady in the world deliver'd them out of that pain, the Knight, of whom I speak, gaining an Helmet, and the Lady a Crown of inestimable value. But as one Unhappiness often accompanies another, King Aliphaty and his Queen living peaceably in their Countrey, blest with one only Daughter, which GOD had given them, more divinely accomplish'd in all Perfections, than any other Creature in the world, it happen'd that the King of Sicily died, by whose Death Miramania, his sole Daughter and Heiress, became Queen and Lady of his Countreys, which are large and rich, as having been given for Appanage to a second Son of France: for from Pharamond, who first took the Title of King over the French, descended, as I have many times heard, Claudius and Heracles. This Heracles had three legitimate Sons, who, when their Father was dead, divided this great Monarchy betwixt them; so that the Kingdom of Sicily came to the second, who was Father of the Queen, that is VVife to this Knight. And for this reason he was sometimes nam'd, and entitled King of Sicily in France.

Now it is not long since Aliphaty took possession of it, and receiv'd an Oath of Fidelity from all his Subjects. But as he was returning into Sicily, he had News, that a near Relation of the Queens was revolted, and had taken by surprize the principal Towns of the Realm, under color of a certain pretended Law, establish'd and ordain'd, as they say, by the said Pharamond, by which the Traytor affirms, that the Realm of France must never fall to the Staff, and that the Kingdom of Sicily is subject also to the same Statute, as being a Member and Part of the French Monarchy.

This News was as pleasing to the King, as you may imagin it to be; yet he hop'd to avenge himself thoroughly on the Traytor, which he would easily have done, had not a second and worse Misfortune diverted him. VVhich was, that the Queen Miramania, and her Daughter, as they were hunting in the Forrest, near Saragolla, were surpris'd by a band of the Cyclops, and his Son, two horrible and merciless Gyants, who maul'd the Huntsmen and others, sent away the two Ladies Prisoners into the Isle of Sicily, where they are yet at present. And these Devils have sent word to the King, that he shall never recover them, unless he come with another, and fight with them concerning the Right, they pretend to the Realm and Countrey of Sicily, which, they say, belongs to them, as having

been at first peopled, and inhabited by their Ancestors: and if they shall be vanquish'd, they will restore the Ladies: but if the King and his Second, shall have the worst, he shall be constrain'd, and oblig'd by Oath, to surrender into their hands the Countrey, they claim, to be enjoy'd by them, as their own, without Contradiction.

Thus you see, how this poor Prince has been treated by Fortune, which has in a moment depriv'd him of Countrey, VVife, and Child, which he loves, and esteems dearer than his own Person: so that he has been even ready to dye thro' excessive Sorrow. Desirous however to shew the Magnanimity of his Courage, and that not Time, but Vertue, appeas'd his grief, he has so far recomforted himself, that he has undertaken the Combat against the two Gyants. And for this Reason he was failing towards Constantinople, hoping to obtain of the Emperor some Kinman of his, to second him against the Cyclops.

Now it hapned that traversing the Strait of the Hellespont, we met a Galley, that was bound for Great Britain, the Master of which acquainted us, that the Defended Mountain was newly conquer'd by one sole Knight, whom by the marks, I heard given him, I believe to be your self. The King was so troubl'd at this news for the Amity, there is between him and the Emperor, that he would come ashore, and landing over-against the mouth of this stream, saw the Forrest so shady, that, thinking to and pleasure in it, he has been more severely handled, than I should have imagin'd.

I have now so well satisfied your Demands, that there remains nothing but the Accomplishment of your promise, which will serve only to augment your glory and renown. My humble Request therefore is, that you will be pleas'd to accompany the King into the Isle of Sicily, and contribute your Assistance for the Deliverance of the Queen my Mistress. Which will be ealie for you to effect, considering the Prowess, I have with mine own Eyes seen to be in you, who have in this manner subdu'd him; whom I have heard esteem'd one of the valiantest men on earth.

In good faith, Damsel, answer'd the Knight of the burning Sword, this I so willingly granted you, that had you not desir'd it, I should my self have requested it of you, having heard the Nature of the Affair: which if I could bring to an end, I should assuredly account my self one of the happiest Knights living. For supposing that those, who have forc'd away the Queen, and her Daughter, be of the same Religion with my self, yet would I not support them in their wickedness, having receiv'd Knight-hood with no other Intention, but to employ my Endeavors for the Relief of those, that suffer wrong and injustice. And therefore let us go, where you please, and I shall willingly accompany you, whatever Business I have in these Parts.

During this Discourse, the King, who had all this while lain in a sound, began to open his Eyes: which the Damsel spying, went to lift up his Head, and with a smiling Countenance said to him: Ha! Sir, cheer up for GODS sake: Fortune

time is at present more favourable to you, than you would have ever thought, having to near you him, who will ease you of your Journey to Constantinople, to find a Second against Frandalon and his Son.

How so? said the King.

Sir, answer'd he, this good Knight is contented to accompany you into Silanchy, and to employ himself for the Recovery of your loss.

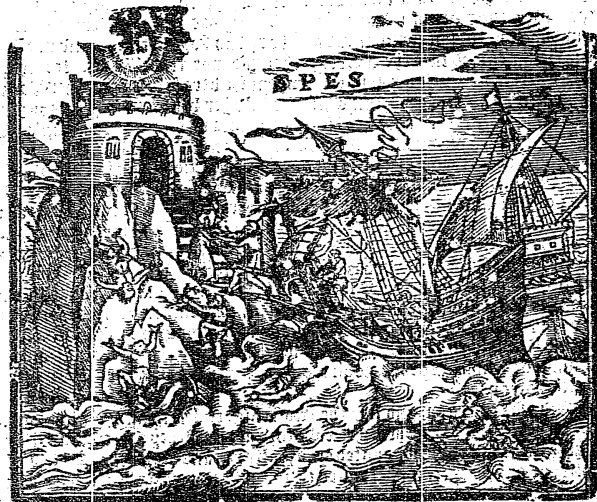
Then she punctually related to him all the Discourse, that had pass'd between them; at which the King was so overjoy'd, that he rose up of a sudden, and stretching out his Arms, went to embrace the Knight of the Burning Sword, saying to him: Certainly, good Knight, I now well know, that you are no less endowed with Vertue, than with Prowess and Courtesie. And if you will do me so much Favour, as this Damself assures me, you shall always have a King for your Friend, and ready to do you any Picaresque: for I have such Hope in your high Prowess, that I am in a manner secure, by your means to recover the thing, which I love, and esteem dearer than my self, and for loss of which I have already undergone a Discontent, and Sorrow, worse than Death.

Sir, answer'd he, I will follow you, where ever you shall command me, not so much to accompany and serve you, as to acquit my self of what Reason enjoyns me: for altho' by reason of the Real Dignity, that is in you, every inferior Person ought to serve you; nevertheless the difference of the Religion, I profess, from that, in which you live, forbids me to favour or assist you; but not to succour the Afflicted, in whose Number I reckon you: and for this good work alone I will put my self in hazard of death, when occasion shall offer.

Now Alpatraz was so wounded, that he was scarce able to stand upon his Legs: wherefore the Knight and Damself took him under the Arms, and with exceeding great difficulty got him back to his Ships, where his wounds were viewed by the Chirurgians, who took such care of them, that they were soon heal'd, as were likewise those of the Knight of the Burning Sword, who had also had such a share in the Case, that he was fain to keep his Bed. In the mean time the King acquainted his Attendants with the Danger he had been in, telling them, that he thought he had a Knight in the World to fight against Frandalon the Cyclops, and that therefore their Voyage to Constantinople should be excus'd. Wherefore he immediately commanded his Pilots to set sail for Silanchy, but staying arising drove them far from thence.

## CHAP. XV.

How Alpatraz and his Fleet were driven by tempest into Great Britain, where they fought with a Knight, that kept a Passage for love of the Dutches of Savoy.



Forteen days and as many nights did the King of Sicily and the Knight of the Burning Sword sail on the Sea with so favourable a Wind, that they made a count they should soon be in Silanchy. But Fortune, who cannot continue long in one state, to follow her usual Inconstancy, rais'd so great a Tempest, that both Knights and Pilots were in frequent expectation of the Hour, that, bearing them in the depth of the Waves, should make them become Food for Fishes. For there was neither Rope, nor Nail, which was not torn in pieces, so that it was wholly in vain, they abandon'd their Ship to the mercy of the Waves, by which they were driven about for the space of two Months, not knowing whether, or which way they went.

went. Per the Divine Clemency was so propitious to them, that one Sunday morning they found themselves near the Edge of a Forcfe, on which the Sea beating, made there an Harbor, tho' little known, because unfrequented,

Then the Knight of the Burning Sword askt the Spariners, on what Coast they were. But, when they could not give him any Assistance, he, tir'd with the Fatigue of that tedious Storm, and seeing the Countrey suddenly pleasant, desir'd the King to go a Shore: which was no unpleasing Request to him, arming themselves therefore, they caus'd their Boates to be taken out of the Ship, on which they mounted, their selves carrying their Arms and Shields: for they had not any Company with them, but Frandamella, having commanded all the rest to stay for them, and not stir from thence: Being entred into the Forrest, they had not travell'd far, ere they met a Dwarf, bitterly lamenting a Knight, whom he bare before her on her Backings, very much wounded in his head, on which he held her hand, to stop the too great effusion of Blood. Then they askt her his Name, and who had thus outrag'd him.

Alas! my Lords, and now I dye, my ill Fate alone, and not any want of Prowess in him, who is at this time esteem'd amongst valiant men one of the most dextrous Knights, that can be found, has been the Cause of this Misfortune. His Name is, *Marinus of Carstantium*, and he has been thus treated by a Devil, who at the going out of this Wood, keeps a Kay, by which for love of a Gentlewoman, he has in his Company, he suffers not any one to pass. Now curs'd be the hour, that ever She, or He came hither: for he has now above fifteen days perform'd this Enterprize with wonderful courage and success. I therefore counsel you to turn back, and take another way, at least if you intend to pass the Key, from which GOD, preserve you; and conduct you in safety: for I am going to look for one, that may apply some Remedy to this Gentleman, my Brother, who, desiring to try himself against him, of whom I speak, took me to accompany him: but it is fain out to him but ill, as you see.

This said, he percei'd on, and left the two Knights laughing together, at the counsel, he had giuen them. Then they rose forward, till they percei'd another Gentleman, coming towards them, mounted on a Horse, and bearing a Shield of pollicist Steel without any Device, who saluted them, and addreſſing her self to him of the Burning Sword, said to him: Sir Knight, I am very glad to meet you, whom I was seeking, to make you a Present of this Shield, as being the compleateſt Gentleman: I ever saw. And since you receive ſuch Praise of me, I beseech you to grant me a Gift.

Damsel my Friend, answer'd he, ask what you please, you shall not be refus'd, especially considering the good Assistance, you give me by these Arms, of which I had very great need, mine being of so little value as they are.

And to say the Truth, his Shield was so par'd in the Combat he had with his Grandfather the Emperor Esplandian, that there was scarce enough left to cover his Arm. The Devil then deliver'd him that, the carry'd, and ask'd him for the other; which I will keep, said he, in remembrance of what you have promis'd me, and will perform, when I shall require it of you. Then

Then she smote on her Balfeey, following her way: as they also did, till they came to the going out of the Forest, where they perceiv'd a rich Pavilion, erected under an high Elm, against which were many Barres leaning, and saw two Esquires leading a great bay Horse, on which there mounted a Knight, in very rich Armour, when presently a Dwarf came to meet them, who, saluting them with a very good Grace, said to them: Sirs, The Dutches of Sadag, my Mistress, who is in this Pavilion, sends you word by me, that he, whom you see ready for Combat, hath sworn to her, that he will for love of her defend this Passage, during six whole Months, against all Knights, who would pass this way, on condition, that, if he get the better, the vanquish't shall be bound to leave with her his Shield, and his Name in writing, with promise to serve her, whenever she shall require him so to do. And if her Knight be worsted, she will also be bound to give the Conqueror an Helmet, a Sword, and a Shield, the fairest, and richest, that ever were seen. Therefore consider, what you have to do.

Daniel, answer'd the King, if we thought, it were the Dutchesses pleasure, that we should take another way, we would do it for her sake, but conceiving, she will receive greater satisfaction in the Honour, we shall do her Knight by following his Enterprize, return and tell her, we will pass the Kay on the Conditions she has sent us.

Certainly, said the Dwarf, of such fair and dextrous Knights, as you are, I expected no other Answer.

Thou shalt by the way understand, that this was he, who subdued Lucenio due of Constantinople, to find the Knight, which had by force taken from her the Helmet, and was not long since arriv'd in Great Britain, whither the Dutches of Savoy had brought the fair Gentleman to be made Knight by the hand of King Amadeus of whom having receiv'd the Order, he presently undertook the keeping of the Bay, where he had already continu'd fifteen days with so much success, that above Threescore Knights had left their Passes, and their Shields, according to the Custom there established. He means wherof his Name was spread in so many Places, that there was not any thing else talk of. Thus the Danish return'd towards the City, and in the mean time Alpatracy, King of Sicily, bestow'd the Knight of the Burning Sword, that he would give him leave first to try his Fortune, which the other willingly granted him. The King therefore having lookt on his Helmet, and put his Lance in his Rest, rode leisurely toward the Knight of the Dutches's sword, coming forth of her Partition, to be set the Combat, late her down in a Chair, covered with Cloth of Gold, having in her Arms a Rich Shield; the Prize and Remembrance of the Unknown Stranger. But before the two Combatants began this dispute, there came on the right side of the great Forest two Gentlemen, arriv'd at the place upon the Point of being made Knights, differing nevertheless in their Weapons: the one bearing all Black, and the other Allire: They were attended by Citizens, carrying their Helms and Shields, all which stood still, to see how the Combatants would defend themselves.

## CHAP. XVI.

How the King of Sicily, and the Knight of the Burning Sword, fought one after another with the Dutcheſſes Knight: and what beſel of it.

**T**he Knight, that kept the Paſſage, as you have been told, having heard the Dutcheſſes Answer, and ſeing the King of Sicily ready to perform his Devoir, took his Courſe againſt him: and their Meeting was ſuch ſuch impetuouſly, that their Spears, piercing each others Shield, ſilver'd to pieces, their Bodies joining to violently, that the Knight of the Key loſt a Stirrup, and the King came to the ground being ſquared on the graſſe. Yet he very lightly got up again, and putting his hand to his Sword, ſaid to the other: Alight, Sir Knight: for you ſhall vanquiſh me with the Sword before you have my Shield.

I am well content, answer'd the other.

Then he ſet foot to ground, and without any farther delay there began between them a very fierce Combat, which continu'd the ſpace of a long half hour, beſeig to could be perceiv'd, which would have the better, or the worſe: Heberſeig a little after the King began to be ſo enſeig, that he knew he could not much longer reſiſt without being ſlain or vanquiſht: to obſtate which, he drew a little aſide, and ſaid to him of the Key: Knight, pray let us take breath: The day is long enough for us to finiſh this Diſpute in.

Our Combat, answer'd he, is more for pleaſure than Enmity: Therefore I grant you this ſatisfaction, altho' I have no need of it.

The King, hearing this gracious Answer, and very well knowing that it was true, beſought himſelf (the better to preſerve his Honour, and avoid the Danger) to ſpeak with the ſail of Courteſie, what he wanted in force, ſaying to him: In good faith, Knight, your Obligingneſſe has ſo far vanquiſht me, that, conſidering your Enterprize to be wholly cauſ'd by the Love and Service, you bear her, whole you are, I am very well pleas'd to keep company with ſo many valiant men, as you have prov'd your ſelf againſt, and ſurrender you my Shield, on which I will write my Name, for to ſerve the Dutcheſſe, when ſhe ſhall pleaſe to command me.

Then he took it from his ſpall, to preſent it to him: but the Knight of the Key, putting it back with his hand, made him this Answer: Stay Knight, you ſhall not leave me your Shield, but if you pleaſe to let me have your Name, I ſhall eſteem it more than all the Wealth in the world, ſeing the Proweſſe, and great Civility, you are endu'd with: Not that I have vanquiſht you, who have your ſelf Conquer'd me, ſo that I ſhall be all my life indebted to you, in that you would not conſtrain me to quit this Paſſage: for I muſt have immediately retir'd, and loſt the Sight of the thing, I moſt love, which is my Lady.

Then he exactly related to him his Intention, in the ſame manner the Dutcheſſe had told it to the Emperors Eſplandian at Conſtantinople.

In good faith, ſaid the King, had I known ſo much, you ſhould have yet had a better bargain of me: for I have my ſelf with a thouſand labours too much experienced the Evil, Love works through the leaſt diſfavour of the belov'd Object. Underſtand then, that I am Alpatrac, King of Sicily, and ſet, arriv'd not ten hours ſince on theſe Coaſts, and that not intentionally, but by the greateſt Adventure imaginable: If therefore you pleaſe to ſpare your ſelf the combating my Companion, I will prevail ſo far with him, that for my ſake he ſhall forbear it.

The Knight, very glad of the Intelligent, he receiv'd from Alpatrac, not ſo much becauſe he was a King, as becauſe he had heard him accounted one of the beſt Warriours in the World, and ſet him: Sir, I cannot ſufficiently thank your Maſteſty for the Honour you do me, who am but a ſimple Gentleman, and you ſo great a Prince, that I ſhall eſteem my ſelf happy to go and ſerve you in France or Sicily, as ſoon as I ſhall have ſatiſfied my Lady, and of that you may aſſure your ſelf: but as to your Offer of deſiring your Companion to deſiſt from conſeig with me, I beſeech you, Sir, to pardon me, and to be content, that I entertain the cuſtom of the Key, being come hither for no other Reaſon.

You ſhall do as you think beſt, and ſet the King: it ſuffices me, that you remember the promiſe, you have made me, to accompany me in the Conqueſt of my Kingdom of Sicily, as ſoon as I ſhall have finiſht a Voyage, from which I cannot excuſe my ſelf.

Then were their Hories brought them, on which, when they were mounted, the Dutcheſſe approach'd, to know, what diſcourſe they had together, which her Knight recounted to her without omitting any thing, whereat ſhe greatly prople'd. And in the mean time he, that came with Alpatrac, took ſuch pleaſure in beholding the Excellent Beauty of this Princeſſe, that he remember'd not that he was to fight, when the Knight of the Key, who perceiv'd it, ſaid to him, ſaying: Sir Knight, you have muſt long enough for once: The cuſtom of this Place requires ſomething elſe, than muſing on Ladies Beautes. Think, Sir, on what you are come for.

And as he utter'd theſe words, he went to the King, againſt which the Lances ſtood, and choſe from amongſt them the ſtrongeſt, he could find. Then Alpatrac's Companion well knew, that the Knight of the Key was a little ſtung with Jealouſy, wherefore he took ſo unperceptibly this Advantage, that he retir'd back far enough to take a Carer, and then ſeing his Adverſary ready, ſet ſpurs to his Hory, as the other alſo did, encountering each other with ſo much bigow, that they both brake their Spears. Then turning their Bodies, the ſame Knight was putting his hand to his Sword, when he of the Key deſt'd him to ſtand ſo long, till one, or both of them came to the Ground: to which he readily conſented. The Servants then and Eſquires advance'd to bring 'em new Lances, and they brake each of them ſix Haves, without ſtirring from their Saddles. This to enrag'd them both, that at the ſecond charge, their Spears being broken to the very handles, they had ſuch a Encounter of Shields, Bodies, and Heads, their Hories alſo meeting head to head, and ſhoulder to ſhoulder, that they both fell ſunne'd on the graſſe. Yet the two Com-

batants can get up again, and embracing their Swords, fell furiously so to hew and hark each other, that in a short time the place was all over cover'd with the Plates and Pieces of their Haukergeons and Coats of Mail. The Knight of the Burning Sword had indeed a very great Advantage over the other; the Shield, which was presented him by the Damfel in the Forest, being of such a Temper, that neither Lance nor Sword could make any impression on it. Nevertheless he of the Ray behav'd himself with so much courage, that for the space of above a long hour it could not be discern'd, who would hate the better.

Whilst they were thus in the heat of their Engagement, there arriv'd King Amadis, and Queen Oriana, attended by a great company of Ladies, Gentlewomen, and Knights, who, having heard of the extraordinary Powers of him, that kept the Ray, were come from London to see this Pastime, with purpose not to part thence in a while's time. They perceiv'd then the two Combatants in the Condition, I told you, wherefore they stood still to see, which of them would gain the Honour of the Victory, King Amadis himself not knowing what to think of it, seeing them so full of Animosity one against the other. Ray was his wonder a little increas'd, when he was told, that they had been above two hours in these Transpires, without taking the least Repose, or Breath, so that the best they could expect, was the speedy Death of one of them, if not of both together. Which so astonish'd the Dutchess, that she knew not what countenance to keep, tho' he put on a smiling and assur'd look, the better to keep her Knight in heart: who, willing to leave nothing unattempted, us'd all imaginable Endeavours to vanquish his Enemy. But his Adversary was too strong, and pretending also to the same End, at which he aim'd, press'd him so close that he now no longer did any thing, but pass'd his Shield to the others Blows: as which the Dutchess, as despairing of his safety, so exceedingly chang'd colour, that he perceiv'd it, and enter'd into such a Rage, that resolving to win the Prize or lose the Saddle, he took his Sword in both hands, and struck his Enemy with so much to see, that he made him see his knee to the ground. Yet he got himself up again, and to revenge himself, so handled the other, that his Armor was in no place of strength enough, to hinder the Edge of his Enemies Sword from piercing to the quick, so that it was plainly to be seen, that, if he persist'd any longer, his Death was near.

Now, as he was in such extremity, there came in great haste a Damfel, Riding on a Palfrey, whoar her approach cry'd out as loud, as she could: Ho! Knights, hold, hear, what I have to say.

At this cry the two Combatants drew back a little from each other, and the Damfel, addressing her self to the Knight of the Burning Sword, ask'd him, if he did not know her.

Yes surely do I, answer'd he: for you have this day given me the best Shield in the world.

'Tis true, reply'd the Damfel, and I am come to demand of you the Gift, you promis'd me; which is, that without any delay you leave this Combat in the Condition it is in, and return with your Companion to your Mariners, who expect you.

In

In good faith Damfel, answer'd he, you are very short with me, yet I will satisfy you, what ever may come of it.

Scarcely had he utter'd this word, when the Damfel, turning her Bridle and whipping her Palfrey, enter'd the Forest, and got soon out of sight, leaving the Knight of the Burning Sword displeas'd even to death, for being hinder'd to prosecute his assured Victory: for his word having oblig'd him, he would not for any thing in the world infringe it. Wherefore having again mounted his Horse, he and the King return'd back to the Sea-side, thinking well, that the Damfel had not without mystery appear'd this Quarell. Being then come to their Ships, and having caus'd their wounds to be dress'd, they commanded their Mariners to weigh Anchor, and hoist up Sail, once again steering their course towards the Isle of Silanchy.

Now because King Amadis had not seen the Combat between the Knight and Alpatracy, and that he was told, how they had made Peace together, he ask'd the Knight of the Ray, whether he knew him, and the other also.

Sir, answer'd the Knight, He in the rich Arms is the King of Sicily; but of his Companion I know nothing, save that he has given me the best Rubbing I ever had in my life.

In good faith, said the King, he is a gallant man, and I am very glad of the Adventure, which thus parted you: Yet had I thought that the King of Sicily was in these parts, he shou'd have kept us company a little longer, unless he had positively refus'd me: for I love and esteem him, as one of the best Princes on the Earth.

Now the Knight of the Ray was so wounded, that he was fain to keep his Bed for fifteen days together: and therefore we will leave him at present, to follow another matter.

## CHAP. XVII.

How King Amadis had News, that the Emperor Esplanian had reconquer'd the Defended Mountain, and knew, that 'twas the Knight of the Burning Sword, who had so severely handled the Knight of the Ray.

There was mention made in the foregoing Chapter, that, as the King of Sicily and the Dutchess Knight were beginning their Combat, there came thither two Gentlemen, one in black Arms, and the other in white. Now you shall understand that, after King Amadis had left the wounded Knight, as he was retiring to a Pavilion, which he had caus'd to be set up for himself, where the Queen Oriana attended him, the two Gentlemen, whom I've while mentioned, came to meet him, and making him a very low Aballance, he in the black Arms spake thus: Most excellent Prince, this Companion of mine, nam'd Dyzzenes, Son to your Nephew, the King of California, and my self, nam'd Babartus of Sicily, Son to your other Nephew King Perion, and the Queen Dintiquinestra, are come expressly to supply



cate your Majesty, to give us the Order of Knighthood, hoping afterwards to go in quest of, and find out, if it be possible, Perion and Liffart, who are said to be lost with the Emperor of Credmond, esteeming our Travel very well employ'd to that purpose, if it may be pleasing to you, and you may by this beginning know the desire, we have to serve you for ever.

The King, who had never before seen them, embrac'd them, and gave them a very good Reception, saying to them: I am indeed very glad of this your good Will, and accept it very kindly.

Then he took them, one in his Right hand, and the other in his left, and led them to Oriana, and telling her, who they were, he receiv'd them very affectionately, the King deferring to make them Knights, till such time as the Knight of the Ray was recover'd. In the mean time he resolv'd to Hunt the Stag, to that end sending for Huntsmen and Dogs, with which he often gave the Ladies Recreation. In the midst of these Tranquillities, there arriv'd a Courier, sent by the Emperor Esplandian, to acquaint the King with his having regain'd the Defended Mountain, the Emperor having written him a particular Account of all, that had pass'd between himself, and the Knight of the Burning Sword, when the Danger he was in of losing his life, had not the Damsel Alquifa parted them. The King was much troubled at this News, as well because the Emperor did not tell him, that he was no longer in danger, as also by reason there came into his mind the Discourses, made to him by the Child in the Forest, and the Threats with which he then menac'd him, as it is recorded in the first Book of Amadis of Gaul. Yet he prudently conceal'd, what he thought, making the Courier no other Answer, but that Thanks ought to be render'd to our Lord for the recovery of the Place, and then ask'd him, whether he had ever since had any News of the Knight of the Burning Sword.

No Sir, answer'd the Courier, he went, as the Emperor has written you word, after the Damsel Alquifa, and we never knew, what became of him.

He will be found again some other time, said the King, and went immediately to visit the Knight of the Ray, into whose Tent he had scarce sit foot, when there arriv'd a Damsel, Sister to Farinous of Carlsantum, who, having left her Brother in the Chirurgeons hands, came to give the King notice, she had met the Knight of the Burning Sword, for she knew by Report, that he had conquer'd the Defended Mountain. And for this cause, as soon as she saw Amadis, she fell down on her knees, and said to him: Sir, the Knight who, as they say, fought Frandale, and his People, is to my certain knowledge in this Country.

Is he so? said the King: and have you seen him?

Yes Sir, answer'd the Damsel

Then he related to the King, how she met him in the Forest, as she was carrying her Brother: And for the greater certainty, said she, he had yet his shield with the Burning sword, and was accompany'd by another in the richest Armor, I ever saw in my Life.

Never trust me, answer'd the King, if it were not he, that thus severely treated

our

our Knight, having chang'd his Arms the better to conceal himself: But had I known him, I would have given him the Honour, and good Entertainment, he merits.

Yet he spake against his own Conscience: for he would have undoubtedly put him to death, not being able to forget the Chylas Thearning, which I just now mentioned: for which cause he would have sent after him, had he not remembered the Request, the Damsel made him, to return to his Ship. Now there were many good Knights, who knowing, that the Knight of the Burning Sword was thus escap'd, without being any farther exp'd in Great Britain, were very much displeas'd: for they would willingly have combated him, to know by experience, whether, what Fame report'd of him, were true. And he of the Ray promis'd himself, that, after he had recover'd his health, and acquitted himself of his duty to the Dutcheß, he would not stay in any place, till he had found him, and fought him again: For was it long ere he was strong enough to bear Arms: which being come to the knowledge of King Amadis, he told Orizence and Bravatus, that he would on the morrow give them the Order, for which cause they kept the watch, and in the morning were made Knights, the Queen her self girding on their Swords. And to the end he and the other Ladies might thenceforth better, and with more ease see the Jests and Comedies, which should be perform'd at the Ray, the King commanded a Dragoon to be created, on which they continu'd not long idle, before they perceiv'd six Knights come out of the Forest, marching leisurely towards them.

The Dutcheß, seeing this, sent her Messenger to acquaint them with the usual Commands whom they answer'd, that they would for this reason pass the Ray. Then they made themselves ready to fight, as did also the Dutcheßes Knight, who so furiously encountered the first, that he threw him to the ground. But he soon got up again, and putting his hand to his Sword, had the Knight of the Ray alight: if he would kill his boy: for he would essay, whether Fortune would not be more favourable to him on foot, than on horse-back. This the Dutcheßes Friends would not conceal with him, but leapt down on the ground, and there began between them a Combat, fierce enough at first, but with this end, that the Stranger was first to leave his Name and Shield, according to the Agreement. And to the end I may not hold you any longer in suspense, who it was, he was call'd Alcio, Son to Olivas, and the others that accompany'd him, were Garimont, Son to the King of North-Wales, Brucellis Son of Brandoivas, Yfany, Yrguian Son of Count Gandalin, and Brianes his Brother, all which were in such manner receiv'd by the Knight of the Ray, that they had no cause to brag of their Entertainment. Nevertheless missing the best of their Ill-Fortune, they came and paid their Reverence to the King, and the Ladies, converting their Disgrace into pleasant and delightful Discourses, which lasted not only that day, but even to the third day following, when eight other Knights thinking to revenge this injury, tell him the like Whimsy: for they left their Names, Reputations, and Shields. At which King Amadis amaz'd, and in a manner jealous, deliberated from that time to know by some the Dutcheßes Knight,

very

very much importuning her to tell him it; but she refus'd it with to good a Grace, that he was contented to expect still, that he might see, whether his Fortune would continue, as it was begun.

## CHAP. XVIII.

How the Knight of the Key vanquish'd Dyrenes and Bravartus, who came to assault him in disguise, and of that which hapned.

**T**he Overthrow of their foregoing Knights gave such an Example to light Undertakers, that for four days after not one presented himself to hazard his Reputation against him, whom they nam'd The Wont to overcome. Nevertheless before the Week was out, as King Amadis, newly risen from Caste, was walking along a Gallery, he descri'd far enough off, two Knights advantageously arm'd and mounted: To whom the Dutcheſs (according to the Custom) sent her Damſel Messenger, to acquaint them with the Place, by which they were to paſs, and the Conditions, to which they were oblig'd. She, who was no Apprenice in such Ambaſſades, did what ſhe was commanded; but the Knights answer'd her, that they came for no other purpose; wherefore ſhe return'd.

Soon after the Dutcheſs's Knight took one of the biggest Lances, he could find, and letting Spurs to his Horse, ran so vigorously against him, who presented himself, that their Shields were pierc'd, and their Staves broken to the very Caniles, dismounting their Armours even to the Flesh, without receiving any other hurt, as they well gave to understand: for at the end of their Career they turn'd about, and putting their hands to their Swords, began to treat one another, not as in a Tourney for Pleasure, but as if they had fought for some Quarrel, which they were oblig'd to maintain with their Lives. For was it a little Honour, that the Knight of the Forced gain'd there: for, during the Space of a long hour and above, he behav'd himself so valiantly, that the Dutcheſs's Knight knew not where he was. Wherefore irritated with extreme Choler, he lift up his Sword, and thinking to beat down the other, rush'd upon him with all his force; but he with his Shield ward off the blow, which was so violent, that making way through all opposition, it fell upon the Horse's head, who immediately dropt down dead, carrying his Master along with him, and so disadvantageously, that he was not able to get up again. The Death lay to heavy on his Right Leg. And as the Knight of the Key was alighting, to make him witness the Performance of the usual Covenants, the other cry'd out, that he accepted him both his Name and his Shield, since Fortune had so dispos'd him through the fault of his Steed.

Then there came Servants and Squires, who freed him out of this little case, and he stood by with a great deal of Confusion, expecting what would befall his Companion. Who seeing the Dutcheſs's Knight single his, and with a new Lance, ran

against him, both gallantly breaking their Spears; but their Meeting was such, that the Dutcheſs's Knight lost one of his Stricups, being ready to fall, had he not caught hold of his Horse's Mane. The others luck was yet worse: for he and his Steed were in one moment overthrow'n, so that they were both thought to have broken their Necks, which gave the Dutcheſs's Knight great occasion to alight, and see how it was. Yet could he not make so much halt, but that his Adversary was got on his feet, and with his Sword in hand, and Shield before him, fully determin'd to revenge the Injury he had suffer'd. Then they charg'd one another so furiously for three quarters of an hour together, that it could not be known, which of them had the Advantage. Nevertheless they were slain in the end to rest, tho' this Repose lasted but a little, ere they began again their Dispute with greater fierceness, than before: whence there proceeded such Cruelty, that their Arms were batter'd, and unbraced, and their Flesh in many places dy'd with Blood, altho' neither the one nor the other made for all this the least show of fear, but kept up yet a long hour, still perilling to do better and better.

But the Spectators were all amaz'd, seeing the Knight of the Forest, as he was giving a step aside, fall in a wound to the ground, at which his Companion, who beheld him, being exceedingly discontented, as thinking him to be dead, made the greatest moan imaginable, and throwing his Helmet far from him on the ground, cry'd out so loud, that every one heard him: Alas! our foolish Presumption has well deceiv'd us, and yet better chastis'd us: for we ought to consider, that this is the best Knight in the World; and yet we were so temerarious, as unfortunately to set our selves against him.

Then were they known, the one to be Orizenes, and the other Bravartus, who (the better to make trial of their Poisons against the Dutcheſs's friend) had thus dignis'd themselves, and that to their Damage: for they were both in danger to lose their Lives, especially Bravartus, who was incessantly discomfited, and so well lookt after, that he began to grow better than was expected. Yet was not King Amadis pleas'd with their folly, but privately remonstrated to them, that they ought to have forborn this Enterprize, considering the Experience, they had seen of the strange Knight, who was no less glad of his Misdoings, than the others were sorry for being vanquish'd, tho' he were constrain'd to keep his Bed, as well as Bravartus and Orizenes. And in the mean while the Dutcheſs, who had him Company, askt him from time to time how he did.

Madam, answer'd he, the Joy, I have, in beholding continually your excellent Beauty, so much eases my Illness, that I feel no Pain in any wound, how dangerous soever, especially since they were gain'd in your Service.

Alas! my Friend, said she, you do so much for me, that I ought not a little to rejoyce at it: since there is not in the World any Princess so great, but would esteem her self happy to have you for hers, considering the Goodness, and high Chivalry, with which you are endow'd. How then shall I, who am but little in respect of an Infinity of other greater Ladies, presume in my Person to merit you? Certainly

there



there is not any thing else, but the extream Love, I bear you, which promises me, that I ought before all to have the first Place in your Favour, the which I humbly beseech you to grant me.

You shall make me, answer'd he, what you please, and I well know, that none can better judge than my self, of how great worth you are in your own person, setting aside your Quality, and the House, of which you are descended: in so much that neither Liffart of Greece, esteem'd the Flower of Knighthood, nor all those who are reckon'd at this day amongst the Valiantest Men on Earth, are worthy to give so much as one Glance of the Eye on the least of your Perfections. And I, who am in comparison of them but a Dream, how much am I render'd yours by the Favours, you do me? For by them has that Successfulness in Feats of Arms, for which you give me so much Praise, been known to be in me, with all the rest of that Goodness, if I am indu'd with any. I will therefore dye, but I will obtain the Rich Helmet, with the Sword, and Shield of value, which you promise to the best Combatant: well knowing, that, letting them be lost, I shall lose your Love, without ever daring to appear before you.

In good faith, my great Friend, said she, you do me wrong, to doubt thus of my Constancy, since there is not any thing either in Heaven, or Earth, that can efface out of my mind the Good, I desire you. And should we happen by Fortune, or otherwise, to be separated one from the other, believe me, I would at the same time separate my Life from my Body, which is, and shall be yours to the end.

In this manner did the Dutchess content her passionate Heart, expressing the Recovery of her Knight, whom the King valued almost every day.

Now Orizides and Bravantes found themselves some time after strong enough to travel: wherefore they humbly besought Amadis to give them leave, to go in quest of Perion of Gaul, and Liffart of Greece, which he willingly granted them. And for this cause, taking leave of the Court, they Embarkt in the Ship, in which they came, and holding up Sail, Launcht forth into the open Sea, very much displeas'd at the Fortune they had, in their beginning to bear Arms; nevertheless considering the Valour of him, who had the Advantage over them, they bore this Trouble, the best they could.

But so much as we have too long left behind us the Knight of the Burning Sword, we will return to speak of him: and in the mean time Amadis shall remain at the Ray with the Dutchess and her Knight.

## CHAP. XIX.

How the King of Sicily, and the Knight of the Burning Sword Arriv'd in the Isle of Silanchy, where they fought Frandamon the Cripple and his Son.

The King of Sicily, and the Knight of the Burning Sword, being departed from the Place, where they had fought the Dutchess's Friend, rode on with Frandamella, till they came, where they had left their ships. Having caus'd their accounts to be carefully lookt into, they commanded their Barriners to steer as directly, as possibly they could, to the Isle of Silanchy; but they were scarce got a League from Shore, when Frandamella, addressing her self to the Knight of the Burning Sword, presented him a Letter from her, who, as you have heard, parted from him at the Ray, telling him, that she had expressly charg'd her, not to deliver it to him any longer, and therefore he might read it at his leisure. Then the Knight, taking it, brake open the Seal, to see the Contents, which were, as follow.

Urganda the Unknown to the Knight of the Burning Sword sends Greeting. Know that to free another out of Prison, thou shalt within a few days enter into the greatest Captivity, ever poor Slave was in, and shalt have thy Soul and Body so afflicted, that the same Sword, which has many times sav'd the Place, whence thou art issu'd, shall pierce thro' thy Body, whence it shall be afterwards drawn out by the hands of her, who, thinking to save her self, shall restore thee a Life, worse than a thousand Deaths together. And this Bitterness shall last thee, till such time as thy Fathers House, being at the point to fall to Ruine, shall be preserv'd, and sav'd by its first Possessor. Believe me: for it shall come to pass, as I foretell thee. And to the end thou mayst credit it, understand, that, to preserve thee from a Misfortune, into which thou wast this day about to fall by fighting with the Knight of the Key, I presented thee the white Shield, and asked thee the Gift, thou grantedst me, and performest, and for which thou oughtst to give me thanks: because without my Providence thou wast falling into a Repentance for all thy life, as thou wilt better know in time. And sooner trouble not thy self with thinking to know any thing of it: for it would be Labor lost, as it would be also to look for me. Let it suffice thee, that I know thee better, than thou knowst thy self, and that for hope of a Succor, I expect one day to have of thee, I would shew thee this Favor. For the rest, follow thy Enterprize, without delaying it on any occasion whatever, since it is the Will of him, whose thou shalt sometime be.

Exceeding Perisbe was the Knight of the Burning Sword, and what rendred him yet more Silanchy, was, that he could not comprehend any thing in it, but what seem'd to him gaily to be told. He said nevertheless within himself, that he

was indeed extremely bound to Urganda, who had done so much for him; but since he could not credit the Merlinians, he would pass it over as well, as he could. The better therefore to conceal his Thoughts, he began to look pleasantly, saying, Urganda acquainted him, that the Countrey, they had then left was, Great Britain, and that they should thereforeward have fair weather.

Thus sail'd they with so favourable a Sea, that the King, and he, being cur'd of all their Wounds, discover'd one Sunday Morning Frandalons Fairness, at the nearest Shore to which they Anchred, and went all a Shore, except the Mariners, who continu'd aboard, expecting what would be the Issue of this Enterprise, to which the King went, accompany'd by thirty Knights, beside him of the Burning Sword, fearing, that Frandalon, who had taken away the Queen and Isabella, would not receive them according to the Conditions of the Combat, he had granted; but instead of doing it, would endeavour by some Treason to arrest him also.

For this cause they march'd in very good Equipage to a Grove of Trees, where they were descri'd by the Sentinel of the Castle, who winded a Horn to loud, that they heard him: and soon after they saw, coming towards them with great speed, a Damself, mounted on a Palfrey, who addressing her self to the King, whom by the Richness of his Armour she took to be the chief amongst them, said to him: Knight, My Lord Frandalon the Cyclops, sends me to know, who you are, that have entered so familiarly into his Land without his Permission.

Damself, answer'd the King, acquaint him, that, if he will accomplish his Promise, made to Alparatry, whose Wife and Daughter he injuriously detains, he shall find him, and another Knight, ready to fight him and his Son. But because we cannot confide in his Word by reason of his wicked Disposition, he must send us an Hostage, before we enter the Field one against another; else we shall consider, what we have to do.

Ha! ha! said the Damself, smiling, and making her Head: You have Reason: but he comes soon enough, who seeks his own Misfortune, which, assure your self, will soon be shewn you.

Then going back the way, she came, she re-entered the Forests, whence she returned a little after to tell the King, it would have been more agreeable to Frandalon, that he had freely and without dispute surrender'd him the Countrey of Sicily, which belong'd to him by right of Inheritance: Nevertheless, said she, since you are otherwise inclin'd, he will send you his only Daughter for the Security, you demand, on condition, that you send back all your People, keeping only with you, him, that is to be the Companion of your Infelicity: for there is none in his Castle, but himself and Son, of whom you should have any doubt.

Damself, answer'd the King, his Daughter being come, we shall do, what is fit for us.

Then the Messenger return'd back again, where she stay'd not long, before she brought forth Frandalons daughter, in fact, well dress'd, and of such good Behaviour,

as you shall hear. She was a Giantess, with one only Eye, having on more over a Crown, the Crown whereof was an Ell long, cover'd with little Beales of Silver, and on her Head a Mail, powdered with Snail-shells. Such was the Attirement of this Aligin, whom the King courteously saluted: and yet she regarded him not, but added her self to the Knight of the Burning Sword, whom she saw without a Beard, and said to him: Are you then he, who are to fight with the King against my Father and Brother?

Yes, Madam, answer'd the Knight: but why do you ask?

Because, reply'd she, I think some of my Women much fitter for such Dances than you, whom a Ladies Hood would better become, than that Helmet, which thus heats your Head.

The Knight of the Burning Sword perceiv'd himself scold'd, yet did he but laugh at it, saying to her: In faith Madam, if all the Beauties of this Countrey resemble you, it will never be thought, I came hither to make love, and much less, that You and I are one mans Children.

Whilst they were in this discourse, they perceiv'd Frandalon, and his Son, come forth: wherefore the King commanded his Folks to retire, and take with them the Giantess for Hostage.

'Twas not long ere the two Cyclops approach'd, the Father being mounted on a Beast, almost like a Dromedary, and having no other Arms, but a Shield of fine Steel, hanging about his Neck, and in his hand a Battle-axe, make, and weighty, fit for so gentle and gracious a Gentleman, as he was. So it is, that there was not seen in his time any man bigger than himself, nor had he any more Eyes than his Daughter: and for this reason was he also call'd Cyclops. His Son, who was much less in stature than himself, was arm'd with a strong Haubergeon, having a great Semiter at his Girdle, and bearing a stiff Lance on his thigh. Now when they were come within a Sacer of the Kings, the Giant cry'd out to him as loud, as he could: Surrender to me my Countrey, if thou art wise, and enter willingly into my Prisons, or thou shalt dye piteously by my hands, and the Villian also, that accompanies thee.

Ho great Loggerhead, answer'd the King, dost think, we have travell'd so many Seas, to be in such manner carel'd by thee? No, no, I am come from Sicily with a good intent to break thy head, as that of the vilest Traitor, and wickedst Wretch that was ever born of woman.

Sir, said the Knight of the Burning Sword, I beseech you to let me dispute this Quarrel with him, whilst you take the other to task.

I will do what you please, answer'd the King.

At this word the Knight pull'd down his Mail, and ran with such strength against Frandalon, that he nail'd his Shield and thigh together: Nevertheless the Giant thought, as he pass'd, to be even with him, and separate him in two: but as he lifted up his Arm, the Knight of the Burning Sword avoided the Blow, and

As fell in vain, their Bodies meeting with Lichfours, that Frandalon, wounded and lamed in his Leg, could not keep his Saddle; no more than could the Knight, who with this great Shock, and by the strength of his Lance, the Girths and Bonds of his Saddle breaking, was carry'd over his Horses Crupper, etc. without receiving any farther hurt. Yet was he not at all contented with his Fortune, but getting up in a rage, let his hand to his Sword to strike Frandalon, who being thus wounded, as you have heard, could not stand on his Feet, but was fain to lie on the ground, keeping nevertheless an assured look, and giving the Knight at his approach to great a Blow, that had he not supported himself by clapping down his right hand, he had fain flat on the ground. But before the Giant could recover his Air, the Knight of the Burning Sword, taking him unprovided, cleave his Head asunder, he having neither Headpiece, nor Cap to save it.

His Son (who had not liv'd till then, nor yet the King, the better to behold the Combat of the two others) seeing this, was so surpris'd, and indam'd with Choler, that he ran with full speed against Alpatracy, to whom he gave so great a blow with his Lance, that wounding him severely in the Breast, he threw him to the Ground: At which the Knight of the Burning Sword exceedingly discontented, as doubting him to be dead, resolv'd to revenge him; but the young Cyclops little car'd for it, thinking soon to bring him to Reason. And for this cause touching his Spear, he thought as least by running his Point over him to trample him down, when the Knight, who was nimble and quick, turn'd aside, and in his turning gave the others' Horse such a Blow, that he ham-string'd him, by which the young Frandalon was constrain'd to alight, and light on foot. But in the mean time the Knight of the Burning Sword seiz'd on the Giant's Air, with which he made head against the other, who thought with one Blow of his Demiter to hew him down: which without doubt he had done, had it not fallen in his hand, that the very weight of the Blow tore it from him. But the Knight of the Burning sword was more successful, striking the Giant so home with his great Air, that cleaving down his right Shoulder, he parted his Soul from his Body.

Then the Conqueror came to the King, whom Frandamella held in her lap in a swoon; nevertheless as soon as his Helmet was taken off, that he might see Air, he began to breathe again.

Now the Queen Miramynia, and Lucella, had seen him overthrow, and doubting him to be worse than he was, wept and bewail'd him bitterly, and to show, that the King heard them cry, and lament: Wherefore he took heart, and to comfort them, got up, feigning that he felt not either Hurt or Pain. The same also he said to the Knight of the Burning sword, who, ere he was aware, felt the Blow of a Lance given him by the Giant's, wife to Frandalon: for he, knowing the Death of her husband and Son, and of both of the Castle, and being full of Rage and Despair, came secretly behind the Knight, thinking to hear out his Warnings, and indeed the Blow he receiv'd from her, was such, that it made the very Fire fly out of his Eyes. He

would

would not however strike her with his sword, but took a Truncheon of a Lark, with which he made her such a Fly-slap, that she began to stagger, as if she were giving up the Ghost.

Then the Knight left her, and return'd to the King, who embrac'd him, saying to him: Alas! Blessed be the day of your Birth: for besides my Life, which you have sav'd, I recover this day by your means, what I most prize of any thing in the World.

Sir, answer'd the Knight, give thanks only to your good Right: for I have done nothing, but what I was oblig'd to by reason. But does it not please you, that we go to the Queen, and my Lady your Daughter, whom I see at the Windows of yonder Tower: For I believe, they expect you with very great devotion.

Let us go then, I beseech you, answer'd the King

Then they went towards the Castle, and when they were come nigh, the Queen call'd out to them, that they should take the Keys from the Giantess, since they could not otherwise get into the Tower, in which, she and her Daughter were enclosed. The King therefore sent Frandamella to fetch them: and in the mean time they went on into the inner Court, whither they were no sooner got, but they heard their Daughter crying, and calling out for help: wherefore hastening towards her, they perceiv'd her running with full speed from the Giantess, who follow'd her, with the Truncheon of the Lance; so that the King and the Knight could not forbear laughing, to see the Race, that was between them. Nevertheless fearing, lest Frandamella might be surpris'd by the Giantess, they kept forward to save her: but the Giantess even dash'd cross the fields, carrying along with her the Keys of the Tower, and running so fast, that they could not overtake her. Wherefore (she being so secure her self) she went so far into the Lake, which on one side environ'd the place, that the Knight of the Burning sword could not get near her; but giving her to all the Devils, return'd towards the King, who had in the mean time sent Frandamella to the Shore, to fetch thence Ten of his Knights, who might force the Giantess. They, understanding, in what manner a fight was ended, were all's with an admirable joy. They made hast then out of the Ship, and went straight to the Castle, where before their Arrival, the Giantess, who had seen the King and the Knight of the burning sword go into the inner Court, and the Queen also withdraw from the Windows, came forth of the Palace, and ran straight thro' the outward Court into an Hall, where she caught up a strong Bow, and a Quiver full of Arrows, with which returning back, she took the Shield of the Giant her husband, and a great Demiter, which hung at his side: and then got back again into the Lake without being perceiv'd by the King, or any other: for they were gone up into the Chambers, where they found two men weeping, whom they commanded to shew them the way of the Tower.

They trembling through Excess of Fear, led them to an Iron Door, fastned with

a

a great Bad-lock, whither being come: There is (say they) besides this, another door, stronger, and better barr'd, and both of the one and the other the Giants have the Keys, so that 'tis impossible to get in without her.

Sir, said the Knight of the burning Sword, you are greatly wounded: I am of opinion therefore, that you disarm your self, and ly down on this bed, to the end I may bind up your Wounds, and then I will consider of some means to recover your Queen and Daughter.

So this the King accorded, who soon after fell asleep, and for this cause the Knight of the burning Sword went forth of the Chamber, to meet those, whom Frandamella had been to seek, whom he saw at the Lake; pursuing the Giants, but she to infect them with her Arrows, that one of them fell down dead, at which the others, extremely hurt, retired to far into the Lake, that they thought, they should not get out again. When this Sde-Devil let fly her Arrows, with one of which she pierc'd a Stone into the Head, so that he tumbled down into the Water, carrying his Master along with him, which so terrified the rest, that they began to draw back. Now the Queen and Lucella beheld this Sports through the Window of the Tower, which the Giants seeing, let fly at them with such fury, that the Arrow hit against the middle of the Bar, without doing them any hurt, whereas they were astonish'd, as was also the Knight of the Burning Sword, who was then underneath, the Arrow falling at his feet, which so irritated him, that reproaching those, who for fear of death had left the Giants in Peace, he forc'd them to return to the Assault. Then the Old Woman well knew, that she should have enough to do, and yet resolving rather to dye, than to fall into their hands, her to fall at them, that she mortally wounded two of the most likely amongst them, and then went so far into the Water, that 'twas impossible for them to get near her, unless they swam: Which nevertheless one, more adventurous than the rest, attempted, but as he thought to save her, he, casting her self a Slipper, gave his Stern such a blow with her Heels, between his two legs, that both he and she sank down to the Bottom, not being any more seen.

By this the Knight of the burning Sword well knew, that he should never have her without some other Artifice: Wherefore he made them all Retire, and hoping to gain by words what he could not get by Arms, speak to her in this manner: Lady, give us the Keys of the Tower, and I promise you on the faith of a Gentleman that you shall not receive any displeasure; otherwise your Daughter shall pay her Head for your Folly.

But she made no account either of his Flattery or Threats: Wherefore the Knight returned to the Castle, and the rest with him, there to find out the King, some better Expedient: for the Queen and her Daughter were almost famish'd; nor could they tell how to give them any Viands.

## CHAP. XX.

How the Knight of the Burning Sword slew the Giants, Wife to Frandalon the Cyclops, and fell in love with the fair Lucella, for whom he did afterwards many high Feats of Arms.

Night being come, and the Knights betaking themselves to their Repose, the King, whose Thoughts were ruminating on his Queen, and Daughter, that remain'd still shut up without Food, or any means of being speedily succor'd, had not yet clos'd his Eyes, when he heard the Voice of one, who cry'd out for fear: Wherefore suddenly starting up, he call'd out to the Knight of the Burning Sword, saying: As I live, my dear Friend, I am greatly mistaken, if they are not outraging the Queen: for I have heard a great cry.

At this the Knight rose hastily up, and taking his Sword in one hand, and a Flambeau in the other, ran to the Place, where he heard the Noise, and, as he was going down the stairs, saw the Giants, who carried the Queen, and her Daughter under her two Arms, flying with all the speed he could toward the Lake. And the Burthen was very heavy, yet she made such hast, that he could not overtake her, till she was gotten up to the knees in the Water: But then he so surpris'd her, that he never more parted thence, but immediately dy'd, letting the Queen and Lucella fall into the Water, at which they at that time drank more than they bid of Wine. In the mean timetwixt the others, whom the King had likewise wak'd, and that just in the nick, as the Knight of the Burning Sword was hard put to it, to save the Queen and the Daughter. Thus were the Ladies assist'd, and whilst those, that came last, took up the Queen, he carry'd Lucella on Land, whose Elegancy and excellent Beauty gain'd such power over him, that he found himself seiz'd with Love, a thing very new to him, who had never till then experimented the force of that little god, who nevertheless treated him with so much Gentleness, (tho' contrary to his Custom) that at the same time he inclin'd the heart of the Princess to a Reciprocal affection, making her no less desirous, than desir'd. Nevertheless both the one and the other with great Modesty and Discretion carefully conceal'd this Passion, tho' the Knight of the burning Sword had no sooner seed her out of danger, and set her on firm Land, but (making her a great Reverence) he ask'd her, how she did.

Alas! Sir, said she, my heart beats so vehemently, that I know not, whether I am dead, or living: For GOD's sake conduct me to the King, and tell me whether he be much wounded: for when I saw him yesterday, I was in great doubt of his safety.

Madam, answer'd the Knight, he is certainly wounded, but not so much, as you may think, and the Joy, he will receive by your presence, will make him forget the greatest part of his pain.

Indeed Sir, reply'd Lucella, you have so much oblig'd us, that we are bound to

you for ever, especially I poor Gentlewoman, who never merited Favour of such a Knight.

Ma'am, said he, I shall esteem my self the happiest man in the World, if you graciously accept the little I have done for your deliverance, since I am so much yours, that under your sole Favour I resolve henceforth to follow Arms, and no otherwise, giving my self the Glory to be servant to the fairest Princess, this day living.

uttering this word, he felt the new Elixir of love so strong, that, had the Sight been clearer, his Colour might have been seen to change ten times in one Instant. He would have said more, but the others who had assisted the Queen, approach'd, and they went together towards the Castle, where they were met by Frandamella, who with great Joy call'd her self at the Queens Feet, by whom she was graciously taken up and embrac'd: for the Queen greatly lov'd her for the sake of Frisillon her Father, who was Governor of Sicily, when Alpacracy and she were disenchant'd. Then they Ascend'd the Stairs, and went into the Room where the King lay sick, who seeing the Queen and Luella in good Health, was (as you may believe) so fill'd with Joy, that his Speech fail'd him, and stretching out his Arms, as these two Ladies said him their Thanks, he embrac'd them, the one with his right hand, the other with his left, the Tears falling abundantly down his Cheeks.

Then all of a sudden fetching a deep sigh, he lifted up his Eyes to Heaven, and cry'd out: O Sovereign GOD! prais'd be your holy Name! since it has pleas'd you, after having deliver'd us out of the cur'd Conjurat'ion and Enchantment, in which the Sorcerers Meeba had put us, to grant me this farther Blessing, that I should this day see with my eyes the two persons, that are dearer to me than my own life. Ah! ah! Knight of the Burning Sword! how is it possible, that I shall ever be able to acknowledge the Benefit I receive by your means? On my faith we are so much oblig'd to you, that we may with Reason call you our second Father, as having given us a new life: since without your Assistance we had been certainly lost, these Ladies with ill Usage, and I with Discontent.

Now the Queen and Luella had not eaten any thing in two days: Wherefore the Knight of the burning Sword, seeing that the King was entering into a Discourse, which was like to hold him long, interpos'd, saying: Sir, your new Content makes you forget the long Time that these Ladies have been without Food. Does it not please you, that some Victuals be brought them?

I beseech you, let it be so, answer'd he: for I believe they have very great need. Then were the Tables cover'd, and in the mean time the Queen recover'd the fear, she was in, till such time she saw the Giants dead.

And who slew her? said the King.

Sir, answer'd she, showing him the Knight of the Burning Sword, this Gentleman cleav'd her Head in two, and she remain'd bury'd in the Mud of the Lake.

She's very well lodg'd, said he, GOD, or the Devil will henceforth treat her as she has deserv'd.

In these and other Discourses they pass'd the Time till the Knight of the Burning Sword had the King and the Ladies good Night, so to retire till Day into another Chamber, where, instead of sleeping, he threw himself down as he was, upon a field Bed, and having before the eyes of his soul, the Beauty of his new Mistress, entered into a profound a Cogitation, that he even forgot himself: Wherefore after he had sufficiently turn'd both on the left side, and the right, he fetch'd a deep sigh, and remembering the Threat, that Urganda made him by the Letter he sent him at his going out of Great Britain, began to say within himself: Alas, Wife Prophetess, I now well perceive, that the Advertisement, you gave me, is true: for the very day, that my Lady came forth of Prison, I was to make her Captive and Slave, that I have nothing in me free, or that is not subjected to her. Ah, ah! poor Knight of the Burning Sword! Hast thou then hopes ever to receive cure? Certainly thou may'st well discern the assured Perdition: for thine eyes have plac'd the Ladder of thy Faith so high, that thou oughtest rather expect to fall, than to get up. Thus the greatest Damage will be thy own, since thou shouldst have known thy self to be one, that ought not to think of obtaining such an Happiness. O Wretched Slave to thy self! thou wilt henceforward pine away by little and little, desiring that, to which thou art not capable to attain: since the greatest Honour thou canst boast, is thy Education in the Court of King Pagaban, from which thou art also causelessly banish'd. How dar'st thou then consume thy Time in Thoughts more vain, than can be imagin'd? No, no, learn to command thy self, at least, if thou dar'st to live.

Then all of a sudden changing his Opinion, he said: But perhaps I am deceiv'd of such a Lineage, that I ought not to have so mean a conceit of my self; and my Heart's taking to high a Flight is an Argument, to make me believe that my Father was a Gentleman, and that it merits something. Ah! how I now dream! Certainly my Folly is too apparent: For were I son to the greatest Princess on Earth, yet must I confess my self unworthy to serve such a Lady. And besides she and I are of different Religions: thus (put case I should arrive at my pre-ensons) I must in gaining her forget our gods, and lose both my Body and Soul; hencefor a adoring her, as my only Lady and Goddess. Shall I do it then? Why not? Yes, surely, and, come what may, I will never, while I live, repent so Noble a thought: being assur'd it would be a true Herefy, to essay the withdrawing me from it. Death may indeed well use his power over my body, but not over my Affections: for, whether he will or no, they shall live for ever, and for ever remain where I have plac'd them.

A Thousand and a Thousand other Discourses made the Knight of the Burning Sword all night, so that he could not take one wink of Sleep till break of day, when he humbly a little, till one came to tell him, that the Ladies were ready: wherefore he arose, and entering into their Chambers, after he had humbly saluted them, enquir'd how the King did.

So well (answer'd he, who overheard him) that I resolve without any farther de-



lay to return into my Ship, where I hope to have a Speedier Cure, than in this place, in which I have receiv'd so much Displeasure.

And tho' the Queen and the rest us'd their utmost Endeavours, to dissuade him from it, still he were better recover'd; yet could they not in the least prevail with him, who, as soon as ever they had bin'd, crav'd them to put up their Baggage, and Com-  
manding the Pilot to set Sail. Which when Galsadea, Daughter of the Cyclops, who had (as you were told) been given in Vengeance, perceiv'd, she began ex-  
ceedingly to lament. Now she had till then heard nothing of her Parents death; but when she understood, how all had pass'd, never was Woman more discontented. Wherefore Lucella in such manner comforted her, that moderating her Passion, she no longer despair'd, but govern'd her self with Patience, knowing, there was no other Remedy. Then the Mariners order the King, whither he would have them steer their Course.

To France, answer'd he: for I design not to return into Sicily, before I have fought the Villain, who has so treacherously caus'd my Kingdom of Sicily to revolt, at least, if it please you (said he to the Knight of the Burning Sword) to bear me company.

This he willingly granted him, not so much to do him service, as for the Dis-  
ease, he took in the Presence of his new Mistress, who, infected with the like Disease, could not for leave meditating day and night on his Perfections. And tho' they bore about them the Remedy, proper for their Intire Cure, yet they conceal'd it for a time, but at last the Wound was open'd, and the Unguent so fitly apply'd, that their Pain had some ease, as you shall hereafter fully understand.

## CHAP. XXI.

Of a Wonderful Adventure, that befel the King of Sicily, the Knight of the Burning Sword, the Queen, Lucella, and Frandamella, by which they were separated from their Fleet, and in danger of being drown'd.

SIX whole Weeks sail'd King Alpatracy, and his Company, with so favourable a Wind, that all things went according to their Wish, and the King was so carefully lookt after by his Chyrurgions, that his wounds were wholly cur'd. But that of the Knight of the Burning Sword grew daily worse and worse, seeing to near him (and yet so much out of his Command) Lucella, whom he most affectionately lov'd: and what yet more grieved him, was, that the Queen never let her be out of her sight. Thus had they not any means to Confer familiarly with one another, but liv'd in hopes, that Place and Time would one day afford them a better con-  
venience. And in the mean time their sole Delight was to discourse together, contin-  
uing their Affections with Amorous Glances, not from their Eyes, which

often carry'd them to their passionate Prayers, of what they most desire.  
In this manner they continu'd their Course, till one Evening about Sun-set, they discover'd within a League of them a little Island, which seem'd to them to plea-  
santly planted with Trees, and water'd with an Infinity of little Rivers, that the Queen, weary of the Sea, desir'd the King to Land there, and refresh them, which was no disagreeable Request. He thereupon caus'd a Boat to be let down into the Sea, into which he and the Queen went, accompany'd only by Lucella, Frandamella,  
and the Knight of the Burning Sword, who took his Arms, as the King also did, together with their Swords, to defend themselves, if any Adventure should give them occasion. Then Frandamella, who serv'd for Pilot, let her self to row, for she had heretofore handled the Oar, for Diversiment. By means whereof he in a moment carry'd them off from the Principal Ship, which the King, accompa-  
nied in the mean time to ride at Anchor, intending to make a speedy Return.

They had not sail'd long, ere both men and mares, by the Wind, they came within a Bow-shot of a very high Rock, high and steep I may well call it, for it in a man-  
ner touch'd the Clouds, and was cut either by Nature, or with such Artifice, that it seem'd to have poss'd the Hatchet or Chisel. In the Top were an Old Woman and an Old Man, holding each other by the Collar, and wrestling with so much Agility, that at every turn the one, or the other, appear'd likely to be thrown. And in fine they mutually cripe up each other with so great Violence, that they both without let-  
ting go their hold fell into the bottom of the Sea, and immediately also the Rock sank with such an Emotion and Tempest, that the Waves swell'd up with so great a Contrivance of Winds, that the Boat which was guided by Frandamella, was above an hundred times cover'd with Water, and ready to be swallow'd up, greatly terrify-  
ing them, and taking from them all hopes of ever getting to Shore, for their guide was so astonish'd, that abandoning Rudder, Oar, and whatever was serviceable to them, she fell down without stirring either Hand or Foot.

This when Lucella saw, trembling like the leaf of the Tree, she knew no better Place of Security, than the Arms of her Knight, into which, as yet, last Refuge, she cast her self. Then (tho' the Inclemency of the Weather presented them with so evident a Danger) this Favor of his Mistress was so agreeable to him, that, as one shall drive out another, he forgot the Peril of Shipwreck, to let her understand that, in which his life was at stake, through the excess of his love, unless she took pity of his Person. For the obtaining of which he began to make her this Remonstrance: Ma-  
dam, I humbly beseech you to believe, that the Rigor of this Sea cannot be so cruel or dreadful to me, as is the Violence of that Flame, which consumes me, who love you with such an Affection, that none but my self can feel, or comprehend, unless he will measure it by the Greatness and Excellence of your Beauty. And in this case every person of good judgment will bear me witness, that tho' I should dy an hun-  
dred times a day, yet would not these Deaths be sufficient to merit the least Favour of your good Grace. If then you know, with what Affection my Heart has unde-  
taken



taken to serve you, 'tis impossible, but you should accept it, which I humbly request you to do for your own Honor, who are each ever shall be my only Lady & Mistress.

These Remonstrances were intermix'd with sighs, accompanying with such abundance of Tears, that the fore-part of his Garment was all wet with them. And yet, lest he made a show of not understanding him, but dissimbling the great Pleasure, he took in hearing him, grounded her Expressions fear on the present Danger: and under this Color, he began to shut her Eyes, and lean back her Head on her Lovers Bosom, as if he were in a swoon. But she let him then know, that all this made for his Advantage: Wherefore leaving her to mure dear'd Face and Mouth, lying so fit for his purpose, he could not forbear kissing her above a thousand times.

“ Ah! ah! happy Tongue and Contented Mind! Who can enjoy Men at this time express the Joy, the Satisfaction, the Content, the Bliss, the Paradise, in which you then were, whilst you were so near one another! Certainly such Felicity is so far from being utterable, that it is unimaginable, and he alone, who has approacht such Pleasure, ought to be esteem'd happy, for this is the strait way, leading to the Garden, where is the Rose Bush and Bird, the Fruit and Recompence of all loyal Lovers, for the obtaining of which so many persons have labor'd: some in vain, and others with content.

In this manner receiv'd Lucella these sweet Carresses, the Objections of the weather, the Rain, and the Trouble, they were then in, keeping them from being perceiv'd by the King & Queen: Which so embolden'd the Knight, that gaining ground, by little and little; he proceeded from Kisses to pressing her Breasts, which constrain'd, Lucella to fetch a deep Sigh, who resigning to be return'd to herself, cry'd out sweetly: O Sovereign GOD! how long shall we be in this danger! Ah my Knight! for sake me not, I beseech you: For without you I had been already dead.

The King, hearing her make such pitious Swan, call'd her to him and the Queen. Now the Air was (as I told you) so cloudy, and the Hill so thick, that they could not see one another, which made Lucella (as she had restrain'd speaking, that she might not have lost the Pleasure, she receiv'd from the sweet Carresses, made her by her Lover. But now there was no Remedy. She must (in obedience to the King) rise, and with the Knights help go to the other end of the Boat, where the Queen was devoutly making Prayers and Prayers to GOD for their Safety, of which she had little or no hopes: for the Storm so madd'd their Vessel, that during all that day they could not see either Heaven or Earth, nor discern any thing, but an impetuous Tempest, and Clouds, driven by delir'd, intermix'd with great Thunder and Lightnings, terrible enough to daunt the most resolute Courages.

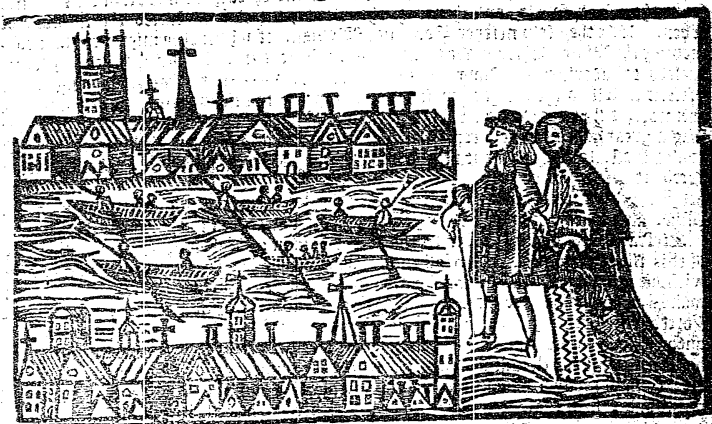
In the mean time, those who remain'd in the great Ship, as the King had commanded them, seeing the Weather and Sea change of a sudden, their Sails, Masts, and Raging batter'd, and broken to pieces, were constrain'd to follow Fortune, without being able to stay any longer, how unwilling soever they were to leave, and abandon those of the Boat, whom they look'd upon as lost. Being in this manner carry'd away

away by the Impetuosity of the Winds, they were about the end of the Chain driven on the Coast of Sicily, where they arriv'd into Harbor, standing by common action to conceal the Misfortune of the other, and to affirm that they were still in the Isle of Sicily, the King having sent them away with Frandalon's Daughter. This was easily Credit'd by those of the Countrey, when they saw Caldeas, who was then put into safe Custody, those of the Vessel relating before all, how the Knight of the Burning Sword had defeated Frandalon and his Son; and deliver'd the Queen and her Daughter, together with the Trousers, given them by the Old Countess, who knew three or four of their Companions.

Then, as soon as their Vessel was repair'd, and refitted, they set forth again to Sea, steering that Course, in which they soonest hop'd to have News of those, whom they held in a manner for lost.

## CHAP. XXII.

How the King of Sicily, and those, that were in the Boat with him, were driven into the Isle of Argenes, and what befel them.



The Boat, in which was the King, the Queen, the Knight of the Burning Sword, Lucella and Frandalonella, was all that day, and the night following, in most dangerous, and yet more the next morning: For it fell upon a Sand, adjoining

to an high Rock, where they were miraculously sav'd, with all, that was in the Boat, nothing at all being lost. And tho' the Countrey was unknown to them, and that they saw neither Path, nor Way, to get up, yet they thought themselves much better amongst the Scrubs and Hills, than amidst the Rage and Tempest of that infernall Sea, where they had been so much tormented. Now Perseus, which is, as every one knows, the Patron of Argis, made them search diligently about, till they found a Path, a little beaten, and frequented.

Then the Knight of the Burning Sword said to the King, Sir, I think, it would be best, that we should go up, and see, if we can discover any House, or Cottage, where we may get Shelter.

Well, let us go then, answer'd he.

So they all took horse, and climb'd up, till they discover'd the Tops of certain Buildings, towards which they rode, to that about the closing of the Evening they might easily see the Fortrefs, which was a great square Castle, environ'd with thick Walls, having Bartlements, and being in good Defence. But before they could come near it, they saw at a good distance two great Marble Pillars, where they began a small way went to a very fair Tower, and thence to another about a Bow-shot off, where were likewise two Pillars and so to four more, each at a Bow-shot Distance from the last, before it, and thence to the Castle, which completed the number of seven. But they saw neither Man, nor Monian, of whom they might enquire concerning the Place, which made them certainly believe it to be uninhabited. Nevertheless considering the Danger out of which they were just escap'd, nothing could prevent it self to their Eyes, which seem'd capable to offend them. They went on therefore, till they came to an high erected Pillar of Crystal, on the Top of which was a great gilt Statue; representing the Person of a Queen, holding in her left hand a Rod, so long, that it reach'd down to the Basis of the Pillar, wherein, with excellent artifice were graven certain Chaldean Characters, to which he pointed with her Right. Then the King askt the Knight, whether he understood any thing of it: Who, answering, that he did, began to interpret it to him in this manner.

Listen the Magician, Sister to the great Soldan of Babylon, Queen and Lady of this Isle of Argenes, and of all those, who either are there, or shall arrive here without our Leave, whether of the Pagan Religion, or of the new Law of CHRIST make known. That we have by our Art and Industry built this Palace, call'd the Fortrefs of Treasure, which shall be defended by seven Guards, appointed thereunto till such time as the Fair one shall seize on the cruel Sword, to defend and secure herself against the dreadful Lyon, by whose Roarings her doubting and passionate Heart, shall recover new Force, driving away all Feminine Weakness. Then and not sooner, shall these Enchantments end, which we have here establish'd.

In good Faith, said the King, this is a strange Hap. As far as I can see, we are then arriv'd in the Isle of Argenes, of which I never heard, as I know of: at worst we shall see, what Enchantments and adventures are here.

Sir,

and Sir, I answer'd the Knight, Night comes on upon us, and I am of Opinion, that we pass no farther till to-morrow, when we will enter the Castle if we can.

This was very agreeable to the Ladies; wherefore they alighted, and (unbitching their Sables, to let them feed,) sat down at the Foot of the Pillar, where they had not long been, when there came towards them a very Ancient Gentleman, having a Faulcon on his fist. He, knowing, that they were Strangers, askt them, what they were doing: For, said he, if you be perceiv'd by those of the Castle, you cannot avoid being put into the most doleful Prison, that ever wretched persons eadred into.

Knight, answer'd he of the burning Sword, declare to us then, if you please, on what occasion, and by whom this so unhappy Custom has been ordain'd.

I shall willingly do it, reply'd the Old Man, for the pity, I have of you. Understand then, that this Countrey is the Isle of Argenes, and this Eagle's the Representation of Zusea, Lady of it, but at present absent, as she has long been, nor is it well known, where one might have News of her; if any one should desire to find her. True it is, that she has left in her place a Daughter of hers, nam'd Ariana, the fairest, I think, in the World, and with her seven Knights, esteem'd amongst the best of Asia, of which four are Giants, and every one of the seven has the keeping of one of these Towers, with express command from the Queen, that no Knight arrive in this Countrey, but that he be kill'd, or taken. Now I am come to acquaint the Guards, that Ariana will within two days return from Hunting, where she has been all this last week. But doubt not, that I will say any thing to them of you: for I would rather divert them, from doing you hurt.

Then bidding them good night, he turn'd towards the Castle, leaving them in great doubt, and ready to take another way, if they could tell how; but the Knight of the burning Sword stop't them, telling the King, that, since there was but one Guard in each Tower, they ought to try their Fortune: For I hope, said he, that with the help of our gods we shall defeat them, and have the Place at our Command, before Ariana returns. And should it not be so, you know, Sir, the little means, there is to save us, this Countrey being encompass'd with the Sea, and we without Ship or Boat: So that it were much better to dye speedily, than to languish longer. One thing there is which exceedingly comforts me, to wit, a firm Belief, that what ever has hitherto befall us, is some fatal Destiny, the Issue of which will perhaps be better, and more honourable, than we expect'd: and therefore I beseech you not to be troubled, but to comfort these Ladies, whom the seeing you so perplex has very much discontented.

And to say Truth, they wept, like Persons in despair, which gave the King better occasion to believe the Knight recommending their Fortune to his Powers: and for this cause the King told him that he believ'd him, and that as soon as it was day, they two would take Horse, to go and fight the Guards, and the Ladies expos'd themselves: But this the Queen would not, saying, that she

would

would be present at the Good or Evil that might befall them. At which the Knight of the burning sword receiv'd great Pleasure, hoping to do such feats of Arms as Lucella, as should make her love him the more.

## CHAP. XXIII.

How the Knight of the burning sword conquer'd the Castle of the Isle of Argence and of the Combats he fought there.

Thus they pass'd a great part of the Night, till such time as the day began to appear. Then they all took Hoyle, and the Knights making themselves ready for the Combat, march'd on to the first Tower; and, as they went, the Knight of the burning sword brought the King; that and they were to fight the Guards; one after another, he would be pleas'd nor to enter into fight, as long as himself should have Ability to resist them: which the King willingly granted him. Whilst they were discoursing thus, they came to a very deep River, over which was a Bridge of Ashood, whereby they were to pass into the first Tower. Then they presently heard a Horn sound, and perceiv'd a Knight of immense Stature come forth, mounted on a marvellous strong Horse, who from the Entrance of the Bridge, call'd out to him of the burning sword, (for he march'd before the King) saying: Sir Knight, leave your Arms, and come without constraint into my Prison, else I will make both you, and your Companion, lose your Heads.

But he answer'd not a word to all these Threats, so that running one against another, they met with so much violence on the Bridge, that their Horses breaking, the Knight of the Tower and his Steed were tumbled into the River, whence the Horse at last got out, leaving his Master in the bottom, who never in the least complain'd of it. And the Knight of the burning sword marching on, the March, who had sounded the Horn, made a great cry and went off.

Then the King and the Ladies, which accompany'd the Knight of the burning sword, hither near, and pass'd the Tower together, at coming out of which they heard another Horn sound from the next Fortress. This they rightly thought to be the calling forth of the Guard to the Combat: wherefore the Knight of the burning sword went to meet him: and when they were within a Career of one another, the Knight of the Tower, riding on a great black Horse, cry'd out as loud as he could: Yield your self, poor Wretch, and resolve to suffer perpetual imprisonment, and Hunger: for by you has my Companion lost his Life, as we have understood by the cry of the Watch.

Now the Knight of the burning sword had gotten the King's Lance, wherefore, saying himself more secure, he thus answer'd the other: By my Head, Sir Knight, if your Companion be dead, so much the worse for him: and because He, who thinks

thinks to revenge anothers Disgrace, very often increases his own: I am of opinion, that you should forbear any farther Threats, and think of defending your self against me.

Then they turn'd one against the other, and their meeting was such, that the Guard break his Spear on his Enemies Shield, who, having better taken his Aim, pierc'd him quite thro' the Body, so that he fell dead on the Place. Whilst the second March being, made the like Cry with the former, and then disappear'd, whilst the King and the Ladies approach the Tower, which they found shut; but the Keys hanging in an Iron Chain by the Gate, they open'd it.

They were scarce enter'd when the third March, sounding as the two former had done, call'd them forth to meet the next Guard, who was ready for the Combat: Wherefore the Knight of the burning sword advancing, for coming forth far, a great Giant, arm'd in very strong Armour, having two Steel Spurs, one upon his Shoulder, and the other at his Saddle-Bow, who, before they met, speak thus to the Knight of the burning sword: Knights, the Combat between thee and me is (according to the Custom of this Tower) to be perform'd with Maces: wherefore take, which of these two thou wilt, and think of doing thy Devoir: nevertheless if thou wilt yield to my Will, I shall perhaps have mercy on thy Person, which is in so great Danger.

Certainly, reply'd the Knight of the burning sword, I will first see how thou canst strike: for I never had a Desire, or Thought to receive Mercy of such Persons, as thou art.

Well, choose then: said the Giant, presenting him the two Maces, of which the Knight took that, he lik'd best, and immediately they began to assault each other with such Fury, that at the two first Blows they both fell down: as dead: when the March of the third Tower cast forth a louder and more pitiful Cry, than any the rest, and instantaneously absent. Lucella then certainly thought, that he had her Love, at which she so exceedingly, tho' inwardly, griev'd, as to wish her dead: when she saw him get up again, and run upon the Giant, when he thought he only slumpe'd. But his Condition was much worse: for his two Eyes were starc'd out of his head, and his life wholly gone. Then the King brought the Conqueror his Horse, and the Ladies drew near, to know, how he did.

So well, answer'd he, that I have no Hurt, to hinder my passing on; if nothing worse befalls me.

In good faith said the Queen, if you continue, as you have begun, you will very good right gain the Name of the best, and happiest Knight, that ever was.

Saying this, they pass'd the Tower, and the March of the fourth Tower, as the others had done. Then of a sudden there presented himself a Knight of a monstrous Stature, having his head like to that of an English Spadass, his Armour being a Helmet of Mail, with a great and strong Shield, a Brander by his Side, a Bow in his hand, and at his Back a Staff, hanging full of Arrows, one of which he held ready to shoot. And because he was of an Ill, nam'd Cynocephalus, where all the

Inhabitants have the Faces of Dogs, he had thence taken his Name, being call'd Cynocephal. Now he came to fight on foot, which made the Knight of the Burning Sword, think, he should have enough to do with this new sort of Arms; nevertheless, seeing him march straight towards him, before his Approach, let fly an Arrow with such strength, that passing the highest Frontal, he entered into his Brain, and kill'd him. Whereupon another, wherewith he wounded the Knight in the thigh, which so maim'd him, that feeling nothing at present of the Wound, he got hastily up again, and ran upon his Enemy, being well cover'd with his Shields, in which he carried two Shores more from the Dogs face, with whom, in fine, he came hand to hand; and their Combat was so hard and cruel, that the Pieces of their Arms, fell thick to the ground. And thus striking off the right hand, and the left, the Knight of the Burning Sword, weary, and weary at so long a Delay of his Wife's, especially in the presence of his Lady and Sister's, kept forward, and lifting up his Arm, as if he would strike the Cynocephal on the Top of his head, laid with his left hand on his Shield, which he pull'd to him, with so much strength, that plucking it from his Back, he brought him with his Pole to the Ground. Whereupon he suddenly got up again, and thinking to revenge himself, he took his Hammer with all the force, he could, at the Knight of the Burning Sword; but he stepping aside, avoided the Blow; and as he turn'd, gave the Dogs face such a Thrust in his Throat, as cut his Wind-pipe: At which the Watch of the fifth Tower wondering, wound his Horn, and crying out with a piteous voice; disappear'd. Whilst the King and the Ladies admir'd, doubting their Knight to be more wounded, than he was.

The remedy which, Frandamella instantly alighted and bound up his Wound with an Linen Cloth. The Blood was no sooner stop, but the Guard of the fifth Tower presented himself, no less furious than the rest; for besides that he was a Chief of a very fierce Countenance, he would have the Combat to be with Arms, being for that purpose run upon his Shoulders, of which he gave the choice to the Knight of the Burning Sword, who, in fine, discomfited him, and the Sentinel founden afterwards as the former had done.

The fifth Tower being then conquer'd, and the King with his Train having laid there a messenger of the sixth a young Knight, about thirty years old, labing, no other Arms, but a Sword and a Cloak, with which he kept to defend; what he was appear'd to. Then he march towards him, who had already Conquer'd so much, and as he approach began to say to him: Certainly, Sir Knight, you ought in reason to be pleas'd, having defeated five such, that it is difficult to find their Equals. And to show the Truth of it, it is not within the Memory of Man, that ever any, besides yourself, got by force to the third Tower: but since Fortune has been so favourable to you, and you are, as I see, resolv'd to follow it, you must observe the Conditions requir'd in this place, which are such. The Combat between us two is to be with Sword and Cloak; without any other Arms whatever: Therefore you

you may well ease your self of all this Armor, which is, I believe, very burdensome to you.

Now the Knight of the Burning Sword was excellently well skill'd in fencing, and for this cause not willing to refuse the others Offer, made him this Answer: In good faith I am displeas'd at the Death of your Companion, tho' you cannot but know, that it was not so much thro' my Fault, as their own, and the perverse Custom of this Place, for which I am sorry, that if you think fit to leave it at present, without constraining me any farther to fight, assure your self, you will lay an Obligation on me for ever. For, besides that you seem to me a valiant man, you have in the beginning so pleas'd me, that I know not, what I Thanks to give you.

Truly said the other, were I Master of my self, our Accord would be easily made; but I have given my Faith to her, that brought me into these Coasts, to defend the Tower to my death. And I was indeed much surpris'd, when I oblig'd my self to it: For she ask'd me a Gift, which I granted her, without knowing what, whereof I have had leisure enough to repent me.

Since it is so, answer'd the Knight of the Burning Sword, I would not for any thing, desire ought of you, that may blemish your Honor.

Then he call'd Frandamella to help him off with his Harness, of which, when he was deserv'd, the Knight of the Castle, seeing him so fair, and well proportion'd, conceiv'd a very great Esteem for him. Now he wanted a look on Daniel: but Frandamella, who heard all the Discourse, sent him to her by the Daniel, whom she charg'd to her Name to desire him, that he would for her sake be very careful to defend himself.

It is for you, perfect Lovers, to judge, how great Pleasure his Soul then receiv'd: Did not Love then do much for him, man taking to him at that time, and to apparently, the Good the desir'd him, for whom he dy'd day and night? Could you must confess, that this sole Labour was sufficient to induce him with so much Courage, as he would not only have dar'd to fight the Gentleman, that assail'd him; but even to lay himself, nay the very Giants, which Jupiter enclos'd in the hollow Mountains, he over turn'd upon them.

This he well let be understood by the Answer he made Frandamella, saying, My dear Friend, since my Lady has had such Remembrance of me this precious Man's shall not part from my Arm, till either the Honour of the Combat be fully granted me, or Death separate my Soul from my Body, which in this world is only to obey her as the fairest, discreetest, and most virtuous Princess on the Earth.

Scarcely had he utter'd this word, when the Daniel arriv'd: for the Knight of the Castle would proceed to the Combat which was between them the most gallant that ever was seen. For if the one understood the Art and Speed of such Sport, the other shew'd himself an expert Master in it: so that to consider it well, it was not less pleasant to behold them, than the Exercise was to them dangerous. However they continu'd long, and in any Blows and Thrusts pass'd between them, without ever coming to the quick, so valiant, vigilant, and dextrous they were. And the top of the Tower us'd much Artillery, and made many false Quarters, to endanger

and surpris'd the other; yet could he not in the least injure him, nor yet so much as touch his Cloak, which he guarded and defended, more than his own Person: whereupon his Enemy being irritated, as thinking he disdain'd him, kept forwards, and in stepping lifted up his Arm to cleave his Head, which the Knight of the burning Sword so well observ'd, that falling back, he made an offer of giving his Adversary a Blow directly in the Breast, but letting fall his Arm, gave him such a cut in the Leg, as brought him to the ground, being not able to stand any longer: wherefore he cry'd out: Ah, ah, Knight! since success is so much at your command, pass on, and follow your Fortune.

And as he would have spoken more, the March of the next Tower (instead of winning his Horn, as the others had done) made a great Exclamation, crying out: Come forth Soldiers, come forth, or we are all lost.

The Knight of the burning Sword then well thought, that he should now find more to do, than he had done hitherto: wherefore he came to Lucella, and putting his knee to the ground, gave her her Cloak, as whole, as he had receiv'd it from Frandameila, saying to her: Here, Madam, is, what you lent me, which I have to the utmost of my Power defended against my Enemies Sword, to shew, how dear I esteem whatever comes from you.

When he hastily took his Arms: for he already heard the Poise and Bustle of those that were coming forth, whom he instantly receiv'd, being six arm'd, and accompanied Knights, and four Servants, having Habergeons, and Head-pieces of Iron, who all ran together upon him. Then began a Fight of ten against one; but the King would take a Part, and fell in amongst them, like one, whom the matter nearly concern'd. Which the four Slaves seeing, they went aside, and hid on the Ladies, whom, notwithstanding all their Cries and Lamentations, they carry'd into the Forests. Altho' thus caus'd such a Fury in the two assaulted Knights, that sparing neither their Skin, nor their Flesh, four of the others fell dead in the place, the two, that remain'd, flying with all speed to save their lives; but they were soon overtaken, and created like their Companions.

Thus the King and the Knight entered into the Tower, into which they had seen the Ladies carry'd, whom they found not there: and for this cause they went towards the Labyrinth, near which they met the four Villains, returning from their Enterprize, to assist those, that were assaulted, but whatever Resistance they could make, the two principal of them were slain on the Place, and the others taken to Percy, on Promise of declaring, what they had done with the Queen and her Company. Now as they were going into the Castle, the Knight of the burning Sword seeing that the last Guard did not appear, as the other had done, enquir'd of the Villains, where he was.

My Lords, answer'd one of them, the Infanta Sigrana our Princess, who Intimately loves him, has taken him within these few dayes on hunting, and we were told yesterday by one, who came from them, that they would be here this day, or to-morrow at farthest. Nor could any thing have befall'n you, more favourable than

than their Absence: For if he, for whom you ask, had been here, tho' your Prowess be great, nay extream, yet could you never have escap'd out of his Hands without Death, or Imprisonment.

So long continu'd they this Discourse, till they came into a lower Hall, where they found the Queen, her Daughter, and the Damzel, lay'd with great Cords, and more dead, then living: But their fear was soon over, when they perceiv'd the King and the Knight of the Burning Sword, who incontinently unbound them. As was now Night, and they had neither eaten, nor drank all that day: Wherefore they ask'd their Prisoners, whether they had any Food, who answer'd them, that they had.

Go then, and fetch some, said the King. They did so, and he, with the Knight of the Burning Sword, and the Ladies took their Repose: And when it was time to break themselves to Rest, they were conducted into a Chamber, where there were three Beds, having about them Curtains of Gold and Silk, the Hangings of the Room being exceeding rich, and curiously wrought. And whilst they were busy'd in viewing them, the King perceiv'd the Entrance to a Stair-case, the Steps whereof were of Porphyry and Jasper, which made him ask, what Stairs those were.

Sir, answer'd he, to whom he spake, 'tis the Ascent to the Chamber of Treasure, into which none can enter: But he, who sees the Riches of the Person, plac'd before it, has enough to wonder at.

It shall be then for to-morrow, said the King: Repose being at this time very necessary for us: Nevertheless, good Sir, I would gladly know, by whom the Chamber is so well defended, and what Treasure there is in it, that ought to be so much esteem'd.

Sir, answer'd he, this I cannot well tell you: none but the Queen Ziffra, having ever entered into it, not so much, as her own Daughter. I have indeed heard it often affirm, that so great Riches are scarce to be found in the World besides. But it is so guarded by Enchantments, that none dare approach it.

We will not, said the King, stick in so fair a way, but will to-morrow combat the Devil, rather than not see, what it is. Go you therefore to sleep, and leave us two lighted Tapers in this Chamber.

The Servants having done, what he commanded them, retir'd. The King then, and the Knight of the Burning Sword lay'd themselves down, arm'd as they were, for fear of being surpris'd. The Ladies also repos'd themselves on another Bed, without putting off their Robes, or any other part of their Habits.

## CHAP. XXIV.

How the Knight of the Burning Sword went up to the Chamber of Treasure, where the Emperors of Trebizond, Licaet or Grece, and Perion of Gaul were Enchanted: And what befell them.

The Knight of the burning Sword, having two federal Wounds, one in his Leg, made by Cynocephals Arrow, the other in his Heart, by Lucella's Scourge, could not take any rest for the Light of the Capers that were burning in the Chamber: But as soon as they were extinct, thinking by the help of the Darkness to close his Eyes, there came such a Brightness from the Stair-case, we lately mention'd, as made him suddenly start up: And doubting some Treason, he hastily took his Helmet, and his Shield, and with his Sword in hand going straight to the Place, whence this great Light proceeded, he began to ascend the Steps towards the Chamber of Treasure, till he came under a Perron, supported by seven Pillars of Jarrinrh, so transparent and shining, that he easily perceiv'd in each of them an Image of Gold, so curiously wrought, that they wanted nothing but Life.

Each of these represented the Effigies of Men, and all the Rest of Women: Whose Robes were to cover'd with Diamonds, and other precious stones, that from the Spinning of them issu'd such a Light, as twenty Torches could not have yielded a greater. Now each Statue had in its left hand a Roll of Gold with Latin Letters, and with the Right pointed to the Wall, towards which their Faces were turn'd, whereon were painted with marvellous Artifice certain Histories, which I am going to rehearse to you.

The first Statue, representing a Man, had on his Head an Imperial Crown, and in his Roll were to litten these Words:

*Apollidon, Emperor of Constantinople, the most excellent of all Magicians, that ever were.*

The Histories, he pointed to with with his right hand, were the Proof of the Ark of Ioyal Lovers, and the Defended Chamber, where Amadis and Oriana acquir'd greater Fame than all others, that attempted to enter. The Oval of the Sword and Garland, with the Berchief, cover'd with Flowers, which this excellent King and Queen gain'd, as you find it describ'd in the second Book of Amadis of Gaul. Hard by was figur'd, how Lisvart of Greece plucks the Sword out of the Lyons Body before the Pillar-Gate of Constantinople, at such time as it was belleg'd by Armace, and those of the Firm Island were disenchant'd.

The next Statue was of a very ancient man, in whose Roll were the following Words.

*Aquis, the great Philosopher, more intelligent in supernatural things, then any man in his time.*

The

The Histories, he shew'd painted on the opposite Wall, were the Ship, govern'd by Ages, when he lent to Lercy the King of Great Britain, and those, whom Urganda had stay'd in the Palace of Apollidon by Force of her Conjurations: the manner, how he arriv'd at Fennia, where Perion of Gaul, and Lisvart of Greece (turn'd, the one the German, and the other the Solitary Knight) justed against all Comers, and were by him discover'd, after they had a long time conceal'd themselves.

Next to this on another Pillar, was the Image of a Queen, holding her Roll, on which was written

*Medea, expert and skilful above all others in the Secrets of Nature.*

The Painting over against her represented King Alpatracy and his Wife enchanted, with the Helmet and Crown, gotten by Lisvart of Greece, and Onoloria, as is recorded in the fifth Book of Amadis of Gaul.

The next Statue was of a Woman, whose Roll had these Words

*I am the Damsel Enchantess, who was second to none.*

The opposite Painting shew'd, how the Emperor Esplandian got the Sword, the Treasure, the Image of Jupiter, and the Lion, with the Combs, as it is at large in the fifth Book of the said History.

The next Image shew'd an honourable Old Woman, wearing a Crown, in whose Roll was this Line:

*The Princess Melia, the most exquisite Sorceress in the World.*

The Wall was painted with the history of the Adventurous Fountain, where Esplandian found the Infanta Eliaxa; the manner, how the said Melia was, together with King Armato, brought Prisoner into Constantinople; how the Dragons carry'd them, and Urganda the Unknown, away in a Chariot; also the Comers of the Burning Sword, which is long held all Thrace in fear, when Lisvart was Prisoner.

The next Statue was also of an Ancient Woman, cloar'd like a Matron of that time, and in the Writing, he held, were these Words.

*Orinda, the most wise Enchantress.*

She directed to the History of the Enchantment, made by her in the Castle of Apollidon over the Kings Amadis, Galaor, Agraies, and other Princes, Lords, Ladies, and Gentlewomen, as you find it amply related in the fourth Book of the said History.

The Ship also of the Serpent, with the Frigates, the many times caus'd by her Arrival at the Port of Fennia.

The seventh and last Statue represented the Effigies of a Queen, holding in long a Roll, that it contain'd the whole Circumference of the Perron; having these words engraven in it:

*Zirfaa, Queen of Agenes, Magician, a Lover of Knowledge, and of the Knowing in the Art, wherein I have been instructed, by which (so perpetuate my Memory) I have built this Perron, and what it contains, especially to put Posterity in admiration by the strange Facts of those, that are here represented, who have neither before, nor since, had their Equals.*



With her other hand she pointed to the Entrance of a Strait-cave, the Steps where-  
of were of white Sapphires, the Pervon being all cover'd with fine-work, the Stones  
of which were of Gold, and the Spaces of Rubies, Diamonds, and Emeralds; with  
an infinite Number of small Birds, and little Creatures, so curiously wrought, that  
they seem'd to have been form'd by Nature her self.

The Knight of the Burning Sword took so much Pleasure in this place, that the  
longer he lookt, the less weary he was of looking, contemplating the Histories, pain-  
ted about the Pervon, most of which he had often heard recounted in the Court of  
King Magaden. And as he was turning thus from one side to another, he esp'd a  
great Lion, sleeping close by the latter Strait-cave, up which he went, and having at-  
tended the first four or five Steps, he perceiv'd a Portico, under which was a Door shut,  
and all of a flaming Fire; nevertheless there was a Dwarf leaning against it, who  
seem'd to him of a stature, above the common Proportion of others, but otherwise  
very fair, tho' her Countenance seem'd full of Discontent, and deep Melancholly, for  
she held her Head leaning upon her left hand, and in her right hand a naked Sword,  
from the Hilt of which proceeded a Brightness, like to that of the Planet Mars,  
when he is in his greatest Vigor. And altho' she had her Eyes shut, like one in a  
Quiver, yet did the Tears trickle down her Face, and the ever and anon reach'd such  
deep sighs, as struck the Knight of the burning Sword with so great wonder and com-  
passion, that addressing himself to her, he said: Dwarf! beseech you, conceal not from me  
the Cause of your sorrow: for I assure you if I can remedy it, you shall find me  
ready to serve you.

At this word she open'd her Eyes, and seeing him so near her, cou'd up her self, as  
one thoroughly frighted, and fear'd him with great joy: Ah! rash and presumptuous  
wretch! hast thou then dar'd to attempt the Coming up hither? Thou shalt indeed  
presently receive thy Reward.

When stretching out her Arm, she gave him such a Blow with the Sword, as pierc'd  
his Shield, Armour, and Body, to the very Hilt, the Knight falling all along on the  
Place. But when, as if she were come to her self out of a deep Sleep, she presently  
cri'd out: O Jupiter! Alas what have I done? I have cruelly slain him, on whom  
my Life depended!

Then sitting on his Ance, she took the Knight's Head in her Lap, and having set  
her Eye on it, her Sorrow grew so strong, as if Heart would have rickt asunder:  
And in this Passion she fell down in a swoon upon the wounded Body.

Lucella was not then asleep, but solicited by the Love she bore her Friend, had  
him continually before the Eyes of her Imagination, and heard the Dwarf's Re-  
grets and Cries: Wherefore not knowing, what to think of, she look'd Strait to-  
wards the Place, where she had seen him lie down, but he was no longer there: as  
which, surpris'd with an unusual Jealousy, she rose up, and ran hastily towards the Strai-  
re's Entrance, in her opinion, the lamentations proceeded, which gave her this Trou-  
ble. She went up to the Pervon, where she again heard a Voice, saying pitifully:  
Ah, ah, poor, miserable, and unfortunate Gradassia! What will become of thee,  
having

laying with thine own hands slain the Person, thou most lovedst in the world, and  
whom thou hast taken so much pains to find? O thou, most unhappy of those wret-  
ches, that live banish'd from all Felicity, how is it possible, that seeing, with thine  
own Eyes, the Death of him, caus'd by thine own Act, who was more dear to thee,  
than thy self, thou shouldst any longer continue in this World, out of which thou  
hast driven him! Ah Queen of Regrets! thou greatly deceiv'st me, when, at my  
entrance into this place of Tribulation, thou assur'dst me, that at the time my Hope  
should be wholly lost, my heart should have Repose, seeing him, whom I desir'd to  
find. But (alas!) this promise of thine is quite overthrown, and I cannot well ima-  
gin, what displeasure I have ever done thee, that thou shouldst purchase me so into-  
lerable a Discontent! One Remedy there is, which thou cannot deprive me of,  
which is, the death that I will give my self, to follow, and bear him company, in so  
severe cruelty, as has parted from these hands, stain'd with the blood of my Friend.

When Lucella had long time brack'd to her, and perceiv'd the looks of the death of  
a Friend, her Blood was in such a Commotion, that she could no longer bear what she  
thought, to that she went up to her, who was endeavouring to pluck out the Sword,  
for to murder herself: Where seeing the Knight's feet he cou't his length, she call'd  
forth so loud a Cry, that the Lion, who was asleep, awak'd, and fell a roaring in the  
most dreadful manner, that ever was heard, so that Lucella, with the fright, was fly-  
ing away, when the Dwarf caught hold of her Gown, by which, with his sharp claws,  
he so violently pluck'd her to him, that she was ready to fall down backwards. The  
poor Lady was then in certain expectation of death; nevertheless, whether this Cou-  
rage, or thro' excess of fear, she had recourse to the Sword, that she saw in the Body  
of her Lover, which she so strongly pull'd at, that she got it out of his Body, not  
without great Difficulty: for the burning Wood instantly flew open with such impetu-  
osity, that the Inhabitants, ten Leagues round, assur'dly believ'd the Ruine of the  
Place, and of the whole Island. And the Flame so evidently rais'd this the Walls  
and Strait-caves, that the King and Queen, who were asleep, awak'd, but not without  
being frighted: Wherefore this Brightness rais'd away like a Whirlwind, leaving the  
Place so dark, and full of smoke, that for above a quarter of an hour, there was ap-  
pearing to be discern'd, but Obscurity and Darkness: During which, the Knight, upon  
Gradassia and Lucella thought dead, rose up well and lusty, and yet more amaz'd to  
see them both stretch upon the Ground, not stirring either Foot or hand. Now  
take my word for't, he said else for the Displeasure, his Affairs had receiv'd. For  
seeing her in such Condition, he was ready to despair, and make himself away, when  
saying her in his Arms, to give her a farewell kiss, no sooner were their two  
Mouths join'd together, but that her vital Spirits return'd to their Natural Place,  
that coming again to her self, and knowing him to be alive, whom she esteem'd as  
dead, she said to him.

Ah, ah! my dear Friend! Do I dream, or did I not just now see you wounded  
thro' the Body? I take GOD to witness, that I verily thought your Life at an end.

Madam and I will be, there is nothing more true, than that from you alone I hold my Life, and that you only have Power to give it me, or take it from me, when you please, as being the one whom all my Good, all my Happiness, and all my Fortune depends.

As he finish'd his words, Gradashlea, who had likewise been in a swoon, rose up, and taking the Knight of the burning Sword well, and in his ear, cry'd out a loud: O Infanta Esdras! Now certainly I esteem all the Affliction, thou hast pass'd thro' well employ'd, since the Promise, which heretofore the Queen of Argives made thee, is truly accomplish'd.

Then raising her Arms about the Knight's neck, He said: O my sole Friend, Alibart of Cyrene, how many ill nights, and worse days have I endur'd, to recover you: but thanks to the gods, now that I hold you embrac'd, this Torment of mine is wholly turn'd into pleasure and repose.

During these Carresses, the Knight of the Burning Sword could not imagin, whence they proceeded, having never seen Gradashlea: nevertheless he thought, that perhaps he knew his Father and Mother, and that his name was Livart, as he call'd him. But Lucella, who found her self concern'd, was not so satisfy'd, perceiving her self, that she alone, and none else, ought to have share in her Love, who, loving Gradashlea, had thus conceal'd himself from her. And to say the truth, the precedent lamentations and Regrets, gave her a great Misgiving, which was much augmented, when she saw him let himself be embrac'd, without contradicting it, tho' his Intention tended to another end, being only desirous to know of Gradashlea, where she had been; to know him so, as he made a show of; and for this reason he said to her: In good faith, Madam, I believe, that you take me for another: for I never in my life, had any Acquaintance with you, as I know of.

How? answer'd she: Are not you then Alibart, Son to the most renowned Emperor Esplanian, and the Empress Leonina? He, whom I deliver'd out of the Prison of the Infanta Helia, for saving whose life, I was almost put to death? And you tell me, that you never had any Acquaintance with me? Certainly, if you call to mind Gradashlea, Daughter to the King of the Giants Island, you will soon change your Opinion: for I am she, and no other, who have for your sake remain'd thirteen years in this Place, enchanted; as you found me; with as much Bitterness, and Grief, as ever any sorrowful, and wretched Woman suffer'd. Nevertheless, all this Affliction is so well overcome, that I am at present the most joyful, and contented on the Earth.

In good faith, said the Knight, you may put me in mind of what you please, but I as little know the Emperor and the Empress, you speak on, as I do you: Nor can I tell, who are my Father and Mother, which is indeed, the greatest Trouble, and Displeasure, I could have in this World.

Gradashlea then more attentively view'd him, than she had hitherto done, and as well by the Emblems of the Sword Pommel, lying on the Floor, as by the light

and Gems, coming forth from the open Chamber, knew, that she was indeed mistaken: wherefore she retir'd in, keep great Confusion.

At this very Instant came the King, accompany'd by the Queen, and Frandamel-la, wondering to see the Knight between Gradashlea and his Daughter. And as he was opening his mouth, to ask them, how they came there together, he saw the Sword at his feet, which he knew by its shining Pommel, and taking it up of a sudden, said: By my Head, this is not the first time, I have handled thee, and I know, that thou belongest to the best Knight in the World.

Ah Sir, and who was he? said the Knight.

You shall know, said the King, but not now. We must first see the Wonders of this Place.

Then he advanc'd towards the Burning Door, which was immediately chang'd into Crystal, and they all entered without any danger into the Chamber of Treasure, where there was a safe worthy Retiral.

There appear'd in the Air two Bands, holding a golden Crown, enrich with many great Rubies, Pearls, and Diamonds, which they plac'd upon the Head of Lucella, and then disappear'd at the sound of a voice, which cry'd out: Receive, fair Lady, this Reward, in testimony of having put an End to the strangest Adventure, that ever was, or shall be prepar'd for Lady, or Gentlewoman.

This being said, four tall Statues of Alabaster, which in the four Corners of the Chamber represent'd four Ladies, holding each of them an Harp, began to play so melodious a Tune, that the King and the rest thought, they heard the Joys of Paradise: and indeed to consider the Place well, there seem'd also to be in it some Divinity: for the Walls were of pure Crystal, under which appear'd, painted in Gold and Azure, many Histories of the glorious Feats of Arms, perform'd by several Famous Personages, which had been from the Time of Deucalion till then: The Ceiling and the Floor, being all of Mosack Work, wrought in Chrysolite and Porphyr, render'd the Place so admirable, that it might be properly said to have been the Abode, not of Vulcan, or Neptune, who built the Walls of Ilium; but of Pallas, who had employ'd in it all her Industry. In the midst of this Room was also a Monument of Jacinth, to which there was on every side an Ascent of five steps of gray Marble, and upon it the Representation of a great King, completely Arm'd, except his Head, which was cleft in two with a blow of a Sword: This rest'd on a Pillow of Cloth of Gold, which a Knight held between his Arms, the King having in one hand a little Key of Emerald, and in the other a Padlock, made of a great Carbuncle, which lock'd up the Sepulchre, environ'd with Seven and Thirty Kings of Wall's Gold, behind whom a little higher stood twelve Pygmies of Azure stone, holding Silver Trampets, as if they were ready to sound. And that it might be better known, whose Body it was, that lay in this Magnificence, there was at his feet a Tablet of Agat, on which in the Chaldean Tongue, was graven the following Inscription.

This is the Representation of *Zarazel*, Soldier of *Babylon*, who, being at the Siege of *Constantinople* with King *Armas*, was slain with the blow of a Sword by the hand of King *Amadis*, as is seen by his Figure. And the Kings, that are about him, being in number seven and thirty, represent so many Princes, subject to them, who all dyed in his Company, fighting like valiant and hardy men, as they were. Now to perpetuate his Memory, his Sister *Zirfea*, Queen of *Argenes*, has caus'd the Ashes of his Body to be put in a Vessel of Gold, here underneath, giving by the Magnificence of his Burial a Testimony of the Affection, she bear him; when living: and yet the more to honour him in his death, has given him in keeping the Key of this unparallel'd Treasure, which shall be well defended, till such time as the most perfect accomplish'd Knight in the World shall enter in here, accompany'd by the fairest Lady, then living: who by Vertue of the secret Love, they shall bear one another, shall seize on the Key, and open the Padlock.

In good faith, said the King to the Knight of the burning Sword, this Prophecy is, I think, address'd to you, and none else.

Ah Sir, answer'd he, all asham'd, you have power to stile me, as you please; but I am indeed of opinion, that my Lady your Daughter, who has begun to break the Enchantments, take the Key, to accomplish the rest.

Well then, said the King, at worst she can but fail.

Then he commanded Lucella to cry: But she excus'd her self, affectionately desiring *Gradasilea* to make the first Proof, and she would afterwards second her, if it were necessary. Now *Gradasilea* was exquisitely fair, which made her assuredly think, that, if the Adventure was to be ended by Beauty, she should go a great way in it. For this cause she readily consented to *Lucella's* desire, so that approaching the Statue, which held the Key, she did her utmost to seize it, and take it from him; but so far was she from it, that she could not so much as stir it, which made her blush, and retire, to give Place to *Lucella*: so whom, as she observ'd, the Statue stretch'd out his Arm, and presented her, what she desired, at which the Knight of the burning Sword greatly rejoic'd, more esteeming the Honour of his Lady, than if himself had obtain'd all the Glory in the World.

Then *Lucella* opened the Padlock, with which the Tomb was clos'd; and took off the covering as easily, as if it had been of Cork, or Fir: and immediately the Armies of *Azure* began to sound their Trumpets so loud, that they were heard all over the Palace, at the Sound whereof, there rose out of the Tomb, the Emperor of *Trebisond*, *Lisvart* of *Greece*, *Perion* of *Gaul*, and the Prince *Olorius* of *Spain*, who had till then been Enchant'd, and laid asleep under that Place, without the knowledge of any one but the Queen *Zirfea*.

Certainly I cannot well tell who was most amaz'd: Whether the King of *Sicily*, and his Company to see these four Persons thus resurrected; or the Emperor, and his, to find themselves in so unknown a Place, and amongst Knights arm'd, and ready for fight: So that, if the Emperor, being without Arms, fear'd, they should be assaulted; those of the other side thinking them to be Phantoms, were not over-

well

well asham'd, when *Gradasilea* knew *Lisvart*, yet doubting, that she was in a dream, she durst not at first approach him, but fixt her Eyes upon him, as he did upon her, yet without speaking one Word for a pretty while.

Now these four Knights had been so bewitch'd of their Understanding by *Zirfea*, that without knowing any thing of one another, they were brought from *Trebisond*, and put in so strait a Place, by such means, as you shall presently hear.

## CHAP. XXV.

Now *Zirfea* enchanted the Emperor of *Trebisond*, *Lisvart*, *Perion*, and *Olorius*, in the Castle of the Isle of *Argenes*: Where she afterwards stay'd *Gradasilea*, being in quest of *Lisvart*.

The History of *Lisvart* of *Greece*, cristed at large in the sixth Book of *Amadis* of *Gaul*, records, that at the Siege of *Constantinople*, where King *Amato* was in person, himself with the greatest part of the Pagan Princes, had an End put to their Days by the high Chivalry of King *Amadis* of *Gaul*, his Son *Elplandian*, and others, whose names being here is register'd in the said volumes.

Now amongst those that were thus slain by this King of Great Britain, was *Zarazel*, Soldier of *Babylon*, who was a Sister, nam'd *Zirfea*; a Woman of great Skill in Magic, which she had in her younger years learnt of the Infanta *Melia*. In this art she became so expert, that disdaining the Court of the Sultan her Brother, she retir'd into the Isle of *Argenes*, where the better to augment her Science, she did many incredible things, in the Castle of Treasure, as we have already observ'd it in our story: From which she could not, by any Treaties, or Letters, sent her by the Sultan her Brother, be with-drawn, whilst he liv'd.

Now *Zirfea* wait'd several times to him, that he should by no means go to the Siege of *Constantinople*, assuring him, that he would infallibly be slain there, with all, who should accompany him. But he made slight of this advertisement, thinking, that it proceeded from her fear of losing him, which she prefer'd before the Honor, and Glory, he might get there; so that he went, and was there slain, as you have been told. Which *Zirfea*, his only Heir, being advertis'd the instant he set forward for *Babylon*, hoping to gain possession of the Country, where she found one, that he thought had left there for Governor, who at that time *Zirfea* of *Argenes* had already receiv'd the Obedience of the Subjects. And for this cause he commanded her to be gone, and to stir the Realm, or else he would put her to death.

This *Gradasilea* found to her very hard of digestion; but seeing there was no Remedy, she packt up her Baggage, taking with her (so) all her Inheritance, the Ship of *Zarazel* like the Fleet of *Argenes*, where being arriv'd, she sacrific'd to the Gods Mars, causing the Ship to be carefully gather'd up, and rais'd in the City of *Argenes*, raising him the Sepulchre, we have already told you of. And so the end of

of it.

Death, which so nearly touch'd her, might not countervail'd, the deeply, and solemnly bow'd, to procure all the Damage and Displeasure he possibly could, to King Amadis, and the other Christians; he accordingly us'd all her Endeavour to put in execution this Resolve: Wherefore being one day advertis'd that Livart of Greece, and Perion of Gaul were in Trebifond, he put to Sea, and as he was sailing, invented for their Surprizal the Decree, recorded in the said Arch Book of Amadis of Gaul, laying her Project to well, that in fine he not only brought away them, but also the Emperor and Olorius, all which he would have instantly put to death, had he not foreseen by her Magicke, that from them should proceed one, by whom her Lineage should in time to come be greatly illustrated, tho' he neither knew when, nor how.

For this only cause were the four Knights prefer'd; and put into a Ship, where the was afterwards enchain'd of Olorius; with whom she had such Commerce, that her Belly began to swell, she being with child; yet being no more willing to pardon him, than she did, being arriv'd in her Isle of Argenes, she enchanted them, and put them all under the Solons Tomb; unknown to any one, even to their own selves: Then he conjur'd the Chambers, and clos'd the Doors by the fire which continually burnt there.

Now it hapned some time after, that Gradaflea, understanding the loss of Livart, put her self in quest of him: And having travers'd many strange Countreies, without learning any News of him, she came at last to Zirfea, and from the entire Decid'd the Occasion of her Trabel, very earnestly desiring her, that she would please to deliver her out of this Pain.

Zirfea promis'd her, she would; and de facto having fastid her some days, brought her to see the burning Doogs, before which was plac'd Livart's Sword: She then ask'd her, if she knew it.

Alas! Yes answer'd Gradaflea: For GOD's sake tell me, what is become of him whose it was.

I will tell you, reply'd Zirfea, you shall keep it till his Return: For it is reasonable, since you are so much his, that you should have the Enjoyment of it.

When she took it out of the Place, where it lay, and put it in Gradaflea's Hands, conjuring her in this manner: Your aforesaid shall be in this very Place; till such time as being in despair of ever seeing him any more, you shall percerd him to your great Joy, and Pleasure.

The Queen having utter'd these Words, the Infants was so strongly enchanted, that she remain'd still there at the Decid'd of Lucella, by whom the Conjurations, were brought to an end: Which yet Zirfea did not relent, but made a caveat, that very difficulty would meet there at the same time, the least Nighty, and the fairest Lady in the world, at least that should mutually beg each other such perfect Love, as she had establish'd by her Magicke.

And to make the Enchantment into the Place yet more strange, and difficult, she built a little lower the Person, where were the seven Saturs, holding their Wijnings, and other Singularities. Then she found the means, to procure the highest of all possible

Proverbs, to whom she gave the keeping of the five first Chambers, expressly praying, and commanding them, that no person, of what Estate or Condition, either, should arrive in Argenes, without being stay'd and taken Prisoner, whence it hapned, that several pass'd by these many days.

Having thus order'd all these things, being surpris'd with the Pangs of Child-birth, she brought forth a Daughter of an exquisite Beauty, whom she nam'd Axiana: This Daughter being arriv'd at the Age to be lov'd, and lov'd, as well for the great Gifts, with which Nature had imbellish'd her, as for the good behaviour and gentle Education, with which she was endow'd, Zirfea caus'd her to embark, teaching her the means to recover Lucencio, whom she brought with her, for the Reason we shall tell you in one of our following Chapters.

At Axiana's Return, Zirfea left her the Government of the whole Island, to go after an Affair, which import'd her, and where she was to make a long Abode, which being afterwards came to the knowledge of the Sage Alquif, and Urganda the Unknown, from whom no earthly thing could be conceal'd, they seeing the Knight of the Burning Sword, and Lucella in the Isle of Silanchy, with the perfection of their mutual Love, believ'd there could be no better Time to disenchant the Emperor of Trebifond, and the others, that were so much Regrett'd. And for this purpose they made the Enchantment of the two Old Persons, wrestling on the Rock, which sank into the Sea, as Alpatraz and his Company were then sailing by, who were afterwards by the Storm and Tempest driven into the Isle of Argenes, where the things, we have told you were already accomplish'd, when the fair Axiana, with her Company, came back from Hymany, as you shall understand.

# CHAP. XXVI.

How the Emperor of Trebifond, Livart, Perion, Olorius, and Gradaflea, being freed out of the Enchantment, in which they had been held so many Years, had several Discourses with Alpatraz, and the Knight of the Burning Sword.

I Azarus, coming forth of the Gate, where he was rais'd by JESUS CHRIST, was not more afraid to be himself again living in the World, than was the Emperor of Trebifond, and the three Knights, who had so long been Enchanted with him, in the Chamber of Treasure; and that without one's knowing any thing of the matter: so that for sometime they look'd upon each other, without being able to utter the least word, till at length the Emperor, lifting up his hands and Eyes to Heaven, began to say aloud.

O Sovereign GOD! who by your infinite goodness have created all things of nothing, and who at no time forget those, that are yours, not having regard to the Merits of their Works; but extending over them your ineffable Bounty and Compassion; and that principally, to the end, We, poor Sinners, may know the great

Power of your Divine Majesty: How can we ever give you thanks for so great Mercy, as you have shown us, unless you, O Lord, enable us to do it? O Emperor of Trebizond, thou oughtst certainly to esteem the long Abode, thou hast made in this place, well employ'd, and no way to complain of Fortune; since she has given thee such noble Company.

Then embracing now Lifvart, anon Perion, and now again Olorius, he said to them: Ah! my dear Friends: The love, you have hitherto borne me; is at present well manifested: since you have not in this miserable Prison ever abandon'd me. Assure your selves, that as long as my Soul shall remain in this old Body, I shall hold my self greatly oblig'd, and indebted to you.

Sir, answer'd Lifvart, I know not who laid us in so sound asleep: but on my Faith, I no more remember the time, we have been here, than if it had never been: and we must say, that she, who took us in Trebizond, desir'd to make us take along Repose, thinking (I believe) that we were yet weary and toil'd with the past Wars. But be it as it may; let us, if you please, go thank these Knights for our liberty.

Then he said his Eyes upon Lucella, whose Beauty caus'd in him a Remembrance of the Princess Onoloria, so that his Heart began to beat, when presently he knew Gradashlea: but not the King or Queen at the first sight. He did indeed think, he had seen them, but could not tell when or where, no more than could any of the rest, towards whom the King with his Company advanc'd, knowing, that they were a little astonish'd at their so sudden and wonderful taking.

But Gradashlea, whom Love in that respect commended more than any of the rest, being assur'd by the Emperors Discourse, that Lifvart, whom he had so long sought and expected, was indeed there, came to him, and calling her self at his feet, said: Ah! my only Lord and Friend, if you were thro' my means sometime in Prison, I have since over paid the use of it, having endur'd the most strange and unhappy life, that ever poor Gentlewoman suffer'd, even to this very day, when by the means of this fair Princess I see the thing, I most desire in the world, which is your Person, so much regretted by great and little, and which being so accomplish'd in all Virtue, you will, I hope, have compassion of me, and no more fail me, than I did you, when you had most need of my assistance.

Lifvart, who knew the danger, she had put her self in, to save his life, and how much he was on that occasion oblig'd to her, tho' he had suffer'd more, than ever any Knight did, thro' the false Report, made of him and her to the Infanta of Trebizond, answer'd her, without thinking on the Oath, at which she aim'd: My dear Friend, I am so many ways indebted to you, that I would gladly employ my self in the things, which concern you, as if it were for mine own person; else I might (with reason) be nam'd the most ingrateful man, that ever was born of a Woman. And I assure you, that the Prison, in which you have, as you say, been detain'd, and the pain, you have endur'd, is as grievous to me, as if my self had undergone it.

Whilst they were in these Terms, the Emperor and the rest took Acquaintance of one another: and the Knight of the burning Sword, said to the Emperor: Sir, altho'

I am

I am not of your Religion, I shall not however forbear to assure you, that, in what place soever I am, you shall have in me an affectionate Servant, for the Good I have often heard of you.

In good faith, Knight, answer'd he, seeing the Beauty and Goodness, that is in you, and the Offers, you make me, I cannot choose but be sorry, that you are not a Christian for the salvation of your soul: we being all so much bound to you, that we ought in reason to love and honour you for ever.

Sir, said the King of Sicily, you are indeed more bound to him, than you think for. Certainly I believe it, answer'd the Emperor, Embracing him, and kissing his Cheek.

Then the Knight of the burning Sword, seeing Lifvart leave Gradashlea, with whom he had been long discoursing, and by whom he knew, who he was, went to salute him, saying to him: To you, Sir Knight, more than to any other, is due all the Honour that can be given to the bravest man on Earth: for such have we esteem'd you even to the day of your Absence, during which your Prowess and high Feats have been publish'd in all places, so that you are, and will be an Admiration, not only to the present, but future Ages: which makes me devoutly thank our Gods, for having granted me the Favor to be born, during the Age, wherein I might see you, and, which is one of the greatest Felicities, I could obtain of their Divinity, have the hopes sometime to try my self against you, who are the Mirror of all Chivalry, with whom I desire to combat, not for any Glory, I expect by it, except in being able to vaunt my having been so far honor'd, that the flower of all Goodness has vouchsaf'd to let his Hand to Arms, and exercise his Valor against me. Nevertheless, knowing the Time to be now so little fit, I shall put it off to some other, when we shall meet; postponing all Danger, that may befall me by it: For otherwise, had I ended the strangest Adventures, without having Combated you, I should think my self not to have finish'd, but only to have begun, what might turn to my Praise, since the End and Beginning of Knighthood is in you; and by you must be terminated: so that, whatever good Countenance Fortune hath hitherto shewn me, yet have I great Reason to blame her; since she has call'd me upon the Consummation and End of the Height, to which Arms can ascend, you having left nothing behind, to illustrate those, who came after you, obscuring by the Sun-beams of your Prowess, what ever can for the future be attempted.

Whilst he was making this Harangue, Lifvart view'd him, as one, whom Nature would have taught him to know: for the Father was speaking to the Son; and the Son to the Father; and yet both the one and the other was Ignorant of this Part of their Blood. They had indeed a certain Instinct, which caus'd them to hear each other a more than common Love and Respect: Nevertheless, when Lifvart, who was a no less a person, than stout and valiant Knight, heard himself at the same time both prais'd, and challeng'd to fight, desiring to satisfy him, that speak'd to him with as much Magnanimity, as Courtesy, he made him this Answer: Knight, I thank you for the good Testimony, you give me; yet will all their Praises return



to your Glory by the Combat, you so much desire to have with me; when an convenient Opportunity shall offer: which, if you think fit, shall not be any farther delayed, provided I can recover Arms and Equipage necessary, or if you will put it off to another time, let it be as you please: For I accept and grant it you, at the day and hour, you shall assign, and of this prefix you my Pledge.

Then he threw down a Globe, he had in his hand, and the Knight of the Burning Sword kept forward to take it up. But King Alpatraci taught him hold by the Arm, saying to him: My dear Friend, I beseech you, that, in this time of Pleasure, there be no mention of any thing, which may cause our Discontent: You will hereafter find a fitter opportunity: in the mean time I entreat you both for my sake to defer it.

Let it be, as you please, Sir, answer'd the Knight of the Burning Sword.

Then they both, without throwing any Alteration betwixt the Kings Pleasure, nor without good hopes, when Convenience should serve, to let each other know by experience the Promises, that was in them, turning themselves at that time to other Discourses, and to behold the Singularities of the Chamber, out of which at last they went. And they were no longer loth, but the Doors shut of themselves, not being open'd of a long time, but so Transparent, indeed, and Diaphanous, that whatever was within, might be seen thro' them. Thence they went down to the Heron, which, when they had view'd, and read the Inscriptions that were there, Alpatraci, who had yet Livarts Sword, presented it to him, who was not a little glad of it: for he thought it had been lost. The King then told him, how he found it, and before their Departure thence, they all related what had befallen them, even to Lucella her self.

In good faith, said Livart then to the King, if I have heretofore done you any service, in delivering you from the Conjurations of *Medea*, my Lady your Daughter has so well recompens'd me, that I shall be her Servant as long as I live.

How so long did they amuse themselves in contemplating the Particularities of the Place, that the Dawning of the Day began to appear: wherefore they went down into the Chamber, in which the King had slept, where they found some of the Cattle, whom the Knight had awak'd, when the aforementioned Images sounded their Trumpets: amongst which a Merchant stepping forward, told the Knight of the Burning Sword, that Gradamart, he, whom he had sought for at the last Tower, desir'd to see him before he dy'd: For, said the Merchant, he is very weak, by reason of the blood; he lost last night, and has so great an esteem for you, that he will think his soul much at ease, if you do him the favour to visit him.

Gradamlea, hearing the Name of Gradamart, and doubting, as the Truth was, that it was her Brother, of whom the Messenger speak'd our pityous: O Augustine! what can this be! Is it the Son to the King of the Giants' Island, whom this Misfortune has befallen.

Yes Madam, answer'd the Merchant, 'tis the same.

Alas!

Alas! said she, I well know that Fortune is not yet weary of tormenting me. Alas! it is the same old Brother, who, as you say, lies a dying. For Gods sake, Friend, conduct me where he is; and perhaps his Death and mine will without delay accompany each other.

Let us all go, said the King, he deserves we should do him honour.

Then went they all to him, whom they found lying on a Bed, having a great many Wounds, but all fatal ones, except that in his Leg, which could not be stanch'd: wherefore Gradamlea, more dead than living, fell down between his Arms, where she continu'd a long time without being able to utter one word, so much was her heart oppress'd: But if she were thus troubled, Gradamart was not less comforted, and so well pleas'd, that, notwithstanding his Pain and Weakness, he rais'd himself up a little, and kissing, and embracing his Sister, began to say to her: Ah! my dear Sister! How oft have you been desired by me! In Truth, my Heart, which was ready to dye, feels it self in a manner revived, seeing you so near your Brother, who so dearly loves you. O immortal Gods! your great Names be prais'd: for it has pleas'd you to permit me, before I leave the World, this day to embrace her, whom (if I dye) I more regret, than mine Life.

Gradamlea, leaving her Brother, still speak with much strength, took heart again, and having recover'd her Speech, made him thus answer: My dearest Brother, your Life and Death are at their Disposal: but if they have ordain'd the Removal of you out of this World, I desire you, before I see your Eyes clos'd, to put an end to my days with your Hands, that our Spirits may accompany each other before them, and never be separated, whether in Hell or in the Elysian Fields, as it shall please them to ordain.

Then he renew'd her Lamentations: that Livart, mov'd with Compassion, took her back from Gradamart, whom her Speech exceedingly disturb'd, and so comforted her, that seeing her self entertain'd by the Person, whom he most lov'd in the World, she assur'd her Sorrow.

In the mean time the Knight of the Burning Sword drew near to Gradamart, who, taking notice his having sent for him, said to him: Sir Knight, the Cause, which embolden'd me to entreat a Visit from you before my Death, is the Esteem I have of you above any other; I know: as well for the Promises that is in you, as for the Countey, you us'd yesterday towards me, giving me my life, when you might have taken it away upon the Place. And in this you will shew the Conformity, there is, between your Virtue and your Valour; no less knowing to pardon the vanquish'd, than to vanquish the proudest most and robust. And for this cause, whether I dye, or whether my days be reliev'd for a longer time, I shall be for ever yours, desiring above all things your Friendship, whom I will obey and serve, wherever and whenever it shall please you to command me: letting the whole World, by this understand, that Vertue can do more, than all the Force and Valour of the greatest Champions: for by Vertue you have conquer'd my Will, over which, none, but the Gods, have power.



The Knight of the Burning Sword, considering the Honour, which Gradamart did him, would in Complaisance grant him, what he wish'd for great Instance desired, which was his Friendship. In doing of which he made use of the like gracious Speeches and Expressions, as the other had done, saying to him: By my Head, Sir Gradamart, if the Glory of Victorious Combats ought to be presented to him, whose just Due it is, I ought in reason to offer you my Sword; for you have gain'd so much upon me, that I am henceforth wholly yours, very well knowing, that Vertue alone is indeed more powerful, than all the forces of men.

Having said this, he drew his Sword out of the Scabbard, and setting his Knee to the Ground, presented it to him. But Gradamart, who was not able to rise, that he might return this Honour, join'd his Hands, and stretching out his Arms, said to him: For God's sake, Knight, never do me this injury, after having so much oblig'd me, but honouring me, as you have begun, let us, if you please, embrace, and let our Friendship be henceforth irrevocable.

This the other so willingly granted him, that it continu'd a long time after, as by the sequel of this our History you may understand. Thence all the rest under themselves known to Gradamart, every one offering himself to him, when desired, was brought thence that Aziana would presently be there. This made them all run to their Arms, and throng'd bar up the Gates.

Whilst they were thus making themselves ready, one brought Livart the Scabbard of his Sword, which had been found amongst the other Harnels in the Armoury, where Zirfea had laid it up, of which he was so glad, that he would not have chang'd it for the best City of Asia.

Now the King of Sicily kept still with Livart, with whom talking from one Discourse to another, he return'd to him all, that he had understood of the Knight of the burning Sword, even to his Conquering of the Defended Mountain, which Augmented his Desire to fight with him; if ever he found an Opportunity.

But if this were his Intention, the others Inclinations were not at all different, tho' he then thought of nothing but keeping Company with Gradamart, who in the mean time acquainted him with the manner of his Coming into the Isle of Arcades.

Understand then, said he, that my Sister, having been above two Years absent from the Country of the King my Father, I, being troubled, that I could not see her, went in quest of her, and having Travell'd over many strange Countreys, I was at last inform'd, that the best Way to have speedy and certain News of her, would be to address my self to the Queen of this Island, to whom I repair'd, and having got Admission, punctually related to her the Occasion of my Arrival. She, promis'd me, that, if I would grant her one Gift, she would make me recover her. The Gift I willingly granted her, as loving my Sister no less than my self. The Queen then pray'd me to keep the sixth Tower of this Castle, during the Space of six Years, with such Arms as I should best like, at the Expiration of which Time I should have of her, what I would. Now I had all my life been addicted to fencing with Sword and Cloak, at which I thought my self more excellent, than any, that could do so; where-

wherefore chose that manner of fighting, in which I have vanquish'd many, till yesterday, when Fortune treated me, you know how.

In good faith, answer'd the Knight of the burning Sword, the Queen made you pay dear for the Desire you had to see your Sister, and I wonder how she fell into such ill hands.

Then Gradamart, who was present, related to them from point to point all her Adventures. In such manner, as he had declar'd it to you in the foregoing Chapter. They all being then thus inform'd, the Enchanters, who had so unfortunately inclos'd the Emperor, and the rest, ambrosia to any body, even to Aziana her self.

It was now about Noon, and neither the Emperor, nor any of his Company, had yet eaten any thing: Wherefore Gradamart, who knew better than any of the rest, how Zirfea was to be plac'd to call for a Supper, whom he commanded to make ready Dinner, and conduct them into the next Hall, keeping still his Sister, and the Knight of the burning Sword, that sat together with him. The Servant speedily and diligently did, as he was commanded, and they went to take their Repast.

When they were risen from Table, the Emperor and the rest came again to see him, whom they found discharging of the Disasters, that were shir'd up, some having been there a long time, and others not many days, according as Fortune had brought them thither. He commanded them immediately to be fetch'd, being to the number of fifty, all who in a very dangerous chain'd with great Chains, and having Shackles on their Hands, and fetters in their Feet, so that they endur'd a Life, more miserable than a thousand Deaths together. When therefore the Cooker made them ascend by a Ladder, he set out a repast, they thinking, that they were going to receive their last Supper, and earnestly desir'd him to tell them, in what manner they were to pass their lives: Since it cannot (said they) be so cruel, as not to be more agreeable to us, than this long and hard Prison.

My Friends, answer'd the Cooker, you will be better us'd than you expect, follow me.

He then guided them to Gradamart's Chamber, into which six of them entered first, dragging along their great Iron Chains. Being come in, they put their Knees to the Ground, and prostrated themselves, saluting the Company, by whom they were presently known, one of them being Adamiel Prince of Naples, the rest, the two Brothers Sycias and Abies of Ireland, Sons to King Cildadan, Vailades, Son to Don Bruno the Count of Alastre, and Alarco, who being in quest of the Emperor, and the other Knights, after they had pass'd through many Adversities, too tedious to tell you, fell into the Hands of Zirfea, who imprison'd them with the rest, the day before.

The Emperor and the rest then embrac'd them, rejoicing, and wondering both at their bad and good Fortune. Neither was there any Prisoner, who did not recount, how all had befallen him, the Misery, and great Painings, they had so long endur'd: In fine, they pass'd all day with this Assurance, concluding together, that they, who fear, strive, and honour him, shall never be forgotten by him.

## CHAP. XXVII

How one single Knight fought against six, before the Castle of the Isle of Argente, and what befel them.



Now then being brought, that the Infanta Ariana dwelt near her Castle, the Company, with the other Knights entered such Consideration, what was best to be done. Some were of Opinion, to run upon her, and surprise her with her Company. But Perion of Gaul, one of the most courteous and gentle Persons, then living, advis'd the contrary, saying, it would be better to lend one of them, who might acquaint her, with what was befall the Queens of her Fortresses; but that notwithstanding, if she pleas'd to lodge there, she should be treat'd with all the Honor and Reuerence, her Greatness and Beauty merited.

For, said he I shall always commend the treating an Enemy with respect, principally when he is in greatest Adversity, letting every one understand, that Honour is inseparable from a Noble and generous Heart, shewing it self no less in the depth of Misfortune and Infelicity, than in the height of Prosperity and Happiness: So that, tho' Fortune may often enough bring to nothing earthly Goods, which are subject

10

to other Inconstancy, yet has he no Power over the Merit and Vertues of the Person, which reside in the Soul.

To this Resolution every one agreed, and as they were considering, who was fittest to carry the Message to Ariana, the King of Sicily remonstated to them; that none could be more proper, than Frandamella: For, said he, Ariana receiving this disagreeing News by a Woman, the Fury, which may surprize her, cannot bring along with it such speedy Vengeance, as it might against one of us; but will be mitigated, seeing with whom it shall have to do: So that all will go the better.

For this reason was the Messenger sent, who, being amply instructed for her Embassy, and having an Equire to guide her, set forth on her way towards the Infanta, that was come to dwell in an house of pleasure she had, situated by the Sea-side. But Frandamella was soon perceiv'd to turn back in great haste, and ascend the Castle stairs, till she came into the Chamber, where all the Knights were still discoursing together, when she thus bespake: My Lords, if you please to see the Combat of one Knight against six, come to the first Tower, where I have left them, and you shall there have that Diversion.

Livart Perion, and Olorious, hearing the News, ran thither armed, as they were: as did also the Knight of the Burning Sword; and being arriv'd, where Frandamella had directed them, found the six Knights assaulting him, that was alone, who was a valiant and courageous Knight, mounted on a sturdy steed, and so valiantly behav'd himself, that he had already wounded the other in several places. Now he was arm'd in black Armour, without any Device, save that on his Shield there was in a field Or a Castle Gules, and he so beat'n himself, that they, who beheld him, could not say other worse of him, but that he was a gallant man: for he had in an instant slain one right side of the stoutest; yet the four that were left, dispos'd at this loss, spar'd him so little, that it was to be wonder'd, how he was able to resist them. He nevertheless shew'd them such play, striking on the right hand, and the left, so thick and hard, that he soon dispatch'd likewise the third. Wherefore their Companions, growing more Courageous, fell in upon him, and by strength of Arms thro' him whether he would or no: out of his Saddle upon the Gales: but he carried two of them along with him, holding them so closely embrac'd, that they could no way offend him: which was all that the Besiegers could do. The last seeing this, hastily fell face to ground, thinking to relieve his Companions, and murder the other, whiche he had questionless done, had he not been hinder'd by three, that were looking on, who call'd out to him to Retire, or they would certainly fall upon him.

The Battell, much augment at this Encase, and doubting worse, suddenly took horse again, retreating with him toward the way he came. At the mean time, those three were then linkt together, so long strove and struggled, sometimes upper, sometimes under, that they were forc'd by want of Breath to let go their hold, and get up again, yet not ceasing their Fight, which they began again with their Swords, as if they had done nothing all the day. At length it came to pass, that after many

Charges

Charges, given and receiv'd, the Assassins had the worse, being brought to that Condition by the single Knight, that they now did no more but heed his blows.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

How the Knight, which fled, return'd to his Companions, bringing with him Laurentio, who fought against the Knight of the Burning Sword.

THE two Knights being thus handied, and as it were ready to lay down their Arms, he, that had fled, was seen to return, accompanied by another, mounted on a great Black Horse, and clad in Green Armour, powdered all over with Quivers and Arrows of Gold, and bearing in his Shields a Ladies hand, holding a Bow, with an Arrow ready fir. He was no sooner come thither, but he alighted, and embracing his Shield, drew his Sword out of the Scabbard, which was all over cover'd with Pearls, Rubies, and Diamonds: But the Knight of the burning Sword touching, he would fall upon him in the black Arrow, (whom he judg'd within himself to be one of the bravest men in the World) covering himself with his Shield, and holding his Sword in his hand firm forth, and said to the new Comer: 'Tis with me Knight, 'tis with me, you have to do; and not with him, who is already tir'd by having so gallantly performed his Duty. Nor would it be reasonable, that you, who are fresh, and unlabour'd, should assail him so much to your Advantage.

How? answer'd he, Will you then hinder me from revenging my People, whom he has slain? Since you are so void of fence, as thus to engage your self in another Quarrel, stay, and you shall have the Chastisement you deserve.

This being said, they began to charge each other with so much Fierceness, and Malignancy, that the Spectators said, they had never beheld a better Combat: of which Person, Livart, and Olorius, were not a little glad, that they might know by the Event, whether he of the burning Sword was so good a Knight, as he was esteem'd to be.

Whilst these things were doing, he in the black Armour had slain one of the two, with whom he was fighting, and was now ready to dispatch the last, who by casting himself at his feet, and begging his Pardon, preserv'd his Life. But the other, who fled to fetch Succour, minded him not, but let himself against the Knight of the burning Sword, thinking that, if he were defeated, the other in the black Armour would be more easily master'd. But as he was courting his Lance, to run against him, Olorius, catching hold of the Straps of his Shield, pull'd him with so much violence, that he brought him to the Ground, where he so treated him with the Point of his Sword, that the Pieces of his Helmet breaking, his head was disarm'd. He then cry'd out for Mercy: but Olorius answer'd him: Rascal, you shall dye: for the World cannot but be the worse for your abiding in it: and wish that sitting up

his fist, he gave him such a blow on the ear, with his Canister, as put an End to his Life.

Already had the two others fought so long, that every one wonder'd at it, and yet neither of them appear'd in the least weary'd, but still continu'd better and better: wherefore Livart desir'd Frandamella to go fetch the Emperoz, and those, that stay'd with him, assuring them, they should see, what would give them Pleasure. The Emperoz ran to 'em, and told 'em, all he had seen of the Combatants: whereof they made best thither, where they found the two Knights still as aforesaid, as if they had but just begun.

The same Moment arriv'd there also Axiana, who had stay'd behind, having a great Attendance of Ladies, Gentlewomen, Squires, and others. She was exceedingly fair, and of an excellent Person, being mounted on a white Palfrey, adorn'd with Tappings of flower'd Cloth of Gold, hanging down on every side. But when she saw the cruel Combat between the two Knights, and so great a Troop, amongst whom she discern'd these at Liberty, whom she was wont to keep Prisoners, never was Roman more astonish'd: for she had not yet understood any thing of her loss, which could not (that she know'd it) have so much troubled her, as did the Danger, to which the pervert'd him in the Green Armour, whom she lov'd better than her self, to be: at which thing she was so distressed, and almost bade her self, she was ready to sink down in a swoon. But shame binding it, she alighted off her Horse, because her Knight was fighting on foot.

Then Livart approach'd, and making her a very low Reverence, ask'd her, whether she pleas'd to have a Chair brought her out of the Castle, that she might place her self more at her ease.

She, seeing him so fair, humble, and well to be lov'd, thus answer'd him: Knight, if my Ease would be any greater for being sat, I would not refuse this offer; but it is so disturb'd by seeing the Danger of these two Combatants, that it would be impossible to be more: I nevertheless heartily thank you, and desire you to tell me, who you are.

Madam, answer'd Livart, who ever I am, you have in me, a Soldier, to serve and honor you, as I use to do all such fair Ladies, as you are.

Ah! said the Infanta, The Day will come, when I shall (perhaps) have a better Opportunity to thank you for this Civility.

They had continu'd their discourse longer, had not the Emper, she saw her Friends in, employ'd her Thoughts on somewhat else. Nevertheless, neither of the two Knights could gain any thing over the other: but they so laboriously maintain'd themselves, that for the Space of two long hours it was not known, to whom the greater Glory was to be attributed; they growing only so weary, that they were forc'd to take breath, and rest themselves a little. I may well say a little: for the Green Knight, seeing the fair Axiana full of Trouble, and her Countenance pale, and without colour, thro' the great Perplexity, she was in, was so mov'd, that parrying, what was left of his Shield, he rebat'd his Enemy with marvellous Fierceness. For

was the other much behind him, so embracing himself, that the Grass, on which they stood, grew red again; and the Spectators certainly thought, that they would both there leave their Lives, their Animosity still increasing; so that they laid each other by the Arms, striving to gain that by Strength of Body, which they could not obtain by their Swords. Nevertheless it was impossible for either of them to get any Advantage over the other; but after much and long struggling, with all imaginable Industry, they return'd to their Swords, with which they laid so desperately about them, that they had scarce any Arms left, with which they might either defend themselves: So that their bare flesh was seen, the Blood streaming down on all sides, and their Arms ready to drop off by pieces, if they fought any longer.

When Axiana, no farther able to hear her Friends Danger, began to wailing her hands, and cross her Arms, like a Woman, pierc'd with sorrows. Alas! the green Knight seeing, took such Courage, that (thinking to cleave his Enemies Head) he lift up his Sword with both hands, to which the other oppos'd his Shields; and yet the Blow was such, that parting in two, what it met, the Point fell with such force on his helmet, that his Eyes sparkled, and he stagger'd, ready to fall to the ground. Nevertheless he soon recover'd, and to revenge himself, held such fury at him, who had so much hurt his Arm, that driving the stops of his helmet, he pull'd it to violently to him, that he got possession of it, and then it behind him in great fright. At which the Green Knight being amaz'd, as knowing, he want he should have of it, throw'd himself thence forward more fearful, than he had till that time been: For he knew not, with what to cover himself, nor how any longer to resist the other, who press'd him to ride, that every one shudder'd between a his pursuing to be aveng'd, and that the Clattery would certainly be the Knight's of the burning Sword.

Al! ha! poe! Axiana! where it not better, you would end some pains to loose your them? Alas! why do you delay? You see your Friend at the last point of Danger, and yet you remedy it not. And to say true, he was so troubled, and full of Bitterness, that he could not utter so much as one word.

At which Livert mow'd with Wits, could not forbear saying to her: I wonder, Madam, why you consent thus to the Death of two such Knights, in your Presence: Indeed you will do very ill, if you permit them to fight any longer. For God's sake then, since you can remedy it, separate them, and desire them at your request to become Friends: And if they will not consent for love, give order, that you be obey'd by force; or else the Loss of them will be an incomparable wound to all Knight-hood; they being such valliant men, as every one may see.

Alas! he cry'd sit on the Earth, that torment'd her, nor could he as that time have made her any discourse, more agreeable to her. And therefore following Livert's Counsel, he took Heart, and went straight to the Combatants, who (in respect to her) retir'd at her approach.

When taking her Face cover'd with Tears, she began to say to them: I desire you, Knights, that you will for my sake desist, and make Peace together: Which, I beseech you will not refuse me, since I beg it of you with such Affection. And besides, where

where Frowls and Valours is so apparent, Courtesy cannot hurt a way, which you will favourably excuse on me, who am such, as my Presence may relieve.

The Knight of the Burning Sword, hearing her speak so sweetly, was willing to let every one know, that he was no less affable, than valliant: Wherefore he replies answer'd her: Madam, I will obey you, if he, with whom I have to do, will consent to it.

I undertake, said Axiana, he shall do it: for he his mine, and will no way contradict, what I shall command him.

Since it is so, Madam, answer'd the Knight of the burning Sword, I beseech you to tell me his Name, that I may henceforth know him, who has made me suffer more than any other, I ever fought with.

That I will do for your sake, said she; and you shall see him presently bare-faced, to the end you may the better know him.

Then taking off his helmet, he said: Now see, if you shall know him again, and then I will tell you his Name.

In good faith, Madam, answer'd he, I should never have thought to find so great Valour in so fair and young a Gentleman: And to say the Truth, he was one of the most excellent Descentages, that could be form'd.

Then Axiana, continuing her discourse, said: His Name is Lucencio; but we must desire to be excus'd from giving you account of his Parentage: since neither he nor I know any thing of it.

As I live, Madam, answer'd the Knight, of the Burning Sword, it would be then very uncleanly for us now, between whom there is so great a Conformity, to fight one against the other: For I know my Father and Mother as little, as he does his, and this makes me think, that perhaps we may be Kinmen.

It was, though spoken at random, was her Truth, than he was aware: For they were both Cousins, he being Born to Eilvart of Greece, and Lucencio to Pasion of Gaul, the Fathers and the Children, being all four descended together, from a single Tree, no of a long time past, knowing one another. And as this nothing that belongs to our History, you shall know how Axiana brought Lucencio into this Part of Argenes.

You will remember, I believe, the Dutchess of Savoy's Arrival at Constantinople, caus'd by a Tempest, which drove her Ship on the Coast of Thrace, as he was conducting thither a Gentleman into Great Britain, there to receive the Duke of Anighood, and in what manner Lucencio undertook to go and assist the Knight, who had took the vessel from the Constantinian, as you were told at large in the beginning of this Book: Now Axiana was she, by whom he recover'd what he sought for, and to whom he promis'd also a Gift, for the Accomplishment of which, he enter'd into her vessel, sailing with her, till they came into the Isle of Argenes, where going ashore, Lucencio was by Axiana, requir'd to keep the Chamber of Counsel of the Castle, in which was the Chamber of Treasure; and this she did by the Counsel of her Mother Ziska, who gave her the Discourse and Means of finding him, yet

without telling her any thing of his Lineage. She perceiv'd her indeed, that his Company would be very agreeable to her. And in this she deceiv'd her not: for from their first Interview they so mutually loved each other, that Axiana granted him, what the most esteem'd, provided he merited it by his Valour, of which he should make proof, by keeping the Tower two whole Years. And he was now at the end of them, when Fortune brought into the Island the Knight of the Burning Sword, with whom he fought after returning from Spitting, to whiff Axiana, to keep him from Melancholly, after took him, Sir of his Knights met him in the black Arms, and fell upon him, hoping to take him, and imprison him, according to the Custom. But the Infanta said behind with Lucendo; but he, that fled from his Companions at their need, hasten'd them; and they were both afterwards created, as you have heard. He has, however, retain'd the Chief of our History, by returning to him, whom we had left at the beginning; but the Gates being now dispos'd to bring him again upon the stage, to clear his credit with his green Amor and Shield, on which was painted the Bow, the Quiver, and the Arrow, to testify the Passion of his afflicted heart, loving (as he did) the Queen of Argades last Daughter, to whom the Emperor, to let her understand the pleasure he receiv'd by the Agreement of the two Knights, said very respectfully: Indeed Madam, you this day oblige many worthy persons, by ending the Quarrel between such Knights, as yours, and him of the burning sword. And we must confess, that the great Beauty, with which Nature has endow'd you, has more prevail'd over them, than all we together should have done.

And because she had never seen the Emperor, Lisart acquainted her, who he was. And she had hitherto thought him lost, and could not imagine, in what manner it that he, as any of the rest, came into Argades: She herself's wondering at this time her wonder to a more suitable Discourse, she with very great Respect said to him: Sir, I beseech you to pardon me for not having at first made you the Reception you merit, for, had I known you, I would certainly have paid you the Respect, due to your Quality, not considering the ill will, I naturally ought to bear you, who partly caus'd the death of my nearest Relations. But since they cannot be recall'd to life, reflecting, that rather through their own Unhappiness, than other wise, the Fortune of War treated them in this manner, I will attribute nothing to you, imputing you (at least) to tell me, how the Guards of this place have so easily suffer'd your Abode here, and who has oblig'd them to set at liberty those, whom I held in my Prisons.

Madam, answer'd he, your Guards are defeated, and slain, in revenge of the pernicious Custom, too long maintained by them under you, these three Knights and my self having been miserably enchanted, and laid to sleep in the place, where the Queen your Mother has detain'd us, and also all these poor captive Strangers in Dungeons in very great misery.

This Discourse could not but be very displeasing to her, tho' she then shew'd her self rather constant, than banquish't with passion, saying to the Emperor: How? Are my

my people then defeated? and is my place lost? VVell! Fortune however shall never have the power to make Axiana lose the Magnanimity of Courage, which is natural to her, as being descended of so noble a Race: for knowing her inconsistency, and the Moveableness of her wheel, I know well, she cannot continue, or stand firm: and therefore I desire you to give me leave, at least, to retire with this Knight of mine; my VVomen and Servants shall, if you please, stay in this Castle, which the Gods will at some other time put again into my hands: and in the mean while, I shall learn in time to digest, what my heart thinks, and my Tongue conceals.

The Emperor, hearing her speak so discreetly, and without astonishment, greatly commended her in himself, and thus answer'd her: Madam, if you please to keep us company, Night now approaching, we will do you all the Honour we can; but if you like better to take some other way, you may freely do it, and the result, that will follow you.

Sir, reply'd she, you shew your self so gracious to me, that I must give you thanks for so great Civility: Nevertheless the gods forbid, I should grant my Enemy the Favour, which is in my power to deny him: I will go then (since you permit it) with a Resolution never to re-enter this Castle, till it be mine again, as it was.

Then the Emperor's Palace to be brought, on which the great Knight plac'd her, being very glad to see the Emperor of Trifolond, of whom he was a detester. He, nevertheless fearing to displease Axiana, he wisely conceal'd his Thoughts, and followed the Infanta, who with her Company return'd the way she came. And arriving at her House of pleasure, where he had din'd, she incontinently caus'd her Knight to be disarm'd, for he was wounded in several places: that the said Madam, that carry'd the Falcon, when he could be so Rang and the same near the first Gate, as you have said before, thought's her, that he would soon put him out of hand, so expect he was in such things.

How the Knight in the black Arms was known by the Emperor, and therewith the Discourses; they had together.

Scarcely was Axiana gone, when the Knight in the black Arms, came to stop his Day to the Emperor, and putting his knee to the ground, would have kiss'd his Majesty: to which the Emperor would not any way consent, but lifting him up, said: Knight, pray, let me know your Name, that I may give you a fitting Reception and Entertainment.

He answer'd he, I will obey your Majesty, in whatever you please to command.



me: but for God's sake tell me, whether Perion of Gaul, and Ulbars of Greece, who were taken with you, are yet living?

Living are they indeed, and these they are both, said the Emperor, showing them to him, who immediately went to salute them, and embracing them both, cry'd out aloud: Now have I before me, what I have most desir'd to see! Ah! my Lords, how great a pleasure doth your presence give me.

If we knew, who you are, said Perion, we should perhaps be partakers of your joy.

My Lords, answer'd he, my Name is Balan, Son of Galeotes, whose Father, and my Grand-Father was Djabal, Lord of the Island of the Vermillion Tower. My Mother is Madafima, Daughter to Don Galvanes, Lord of the Island of Chongaze, and I protest unto you, on my Faith, that I have no less desire to employ my self in your service, than my Predecessors had, whom you know, hoping that the Amity you bare them, will not be less to me, who am their issue.

Sir Balan, said Livart, you are very welcome: But tell us, what Adventure has brought you hither; and wherefore those, whom you have vanquish'd, assail'd you thus?

You shall know that answer'd the Emperor, all in good time, but now let us retire: For the Night comes on, and I believe, both he, and the Knight of the burning Sword, have more need of Rest, than of longer Discourse.

This said, they went back to the Castle, whither being come, the Knight of the burning Sword desired, that he might have a Bed made ready in the same Chamber with Gradamart. Then were his Countours fearful, and found to be more deep and dangerous than those of Balan, who, being with-drawn, could not take any rest, nor so much as the Moon beheld retired, as for a sorrow, which continually led'd his Heart, to sigh for his not being but lament and sigh, with the cause of which, his melancholly, I am going to acquaint you.

It is recorded in the History of Amadis de Gaul, how Amadis married Bravor, Son to the Giant Balan, with the Daughter of Varioletta; and that of him were descended Galeotes, of whom mention is made in the fifth Volume of that History. This Galeotes being at London, had News of his Fathers Death, but before his Departure, the King caus'd him to marry Madafima, Daughter to Galvanes, whom he took along with him to the Island of the Vermillion Tower, where they were receiv'd by his Subjects, who did him Homage, as their True and Natural Lord. The Year following Madafima was brought to bed of a Son, whom from his great Grandfather they nam'd Balan, and this is he, of whom we now speak. He then being come to the Age of Eighteen Years, as Galeotes and his Wife were one Day together with their Son, recreating themselves on the Sea-shore, and as was usual with Fortune, the Giant Gandafic, Lord of the Sagittary Island, sailing along the Coast, Arm'd and Equip'd like a Pirate, as he was, went always to rob his self, where he surpris'd Galeotes and his Company, whom he carry'd away Prisoners: for they had neither Arms, nor time to get any; nor yet to retire into their Castle,

Castle, of which the Giant made himself Master by surprise. Then Balan, young, and full of Courage, seeing this Misfortune befallen, and his Father and Mother Prisoners, was ready to dye for spite: and so he had not yet receiv'd the Order of Knighthood, he could not forbear saying to Gandafic.

As GOD shall save me, Sir Knight, if the Right, you have usurp'd in this Country, were to be determin'd by Combat between you and me, I should not question, but to make you know, that you have Cowardly and Unjustly entred into it; and would send your head to King Amadis, whose Vassals we are, and whom, by treating us in this manner, you affront.

The King of the Sagittary Island, was not a little displeas'd at this his Speech, which put him in such a Rage, that he commanded Galeotes and Madafima to be taken and whip with the Ropes Ketins in their Sogs Presence, to whom he said: Heav'n, Balan, I leave thee at Liberty to go where thou list, and receive Knighthood, swearing to thee by the great God Jupiter, that I will stay for thee, and fight with thee, as soon as thou shalt Return. And that thou mayest have more Reason to make hast, there shall not, by my Fathers soul, pass a day, but these, whom thou hast seen so well scourged, shall be yet more severely handled: in despite of thee, and thy King Amadis, that he and all others may know that I can chastise such fools, as believe in any Gods but mine.

Then he commanded a Bark to be provided, into which Balan entred, very glad of the means, he had to prosecute his Revenge; but no less discontented for the Torment, in which he left Galeotes and Madafima. To remedy which, he sail'd straight into great Britain, and landed at the Port next to the Bay, where King Amadis was, daily beholding the great Actions, done by the Dutchess of Savoy's Knight. Balan acquainted the King with all, that had befallen Galeotes, who was much troubled at it, but, to comfort him, said, that by the Grace of GOD, he would provide to remedy it. Thus eight Days pass'd, during which the Dutchess Knight bequeath'd himself to ballantly, that Balan besought the King, he might receive from him the Order of Knighthood. This so pleas'd Amadis, that before the end of the Week the Dutchess Knight gave Balan the Order, tho' not though in white harness, according to the Custom, but in black Armour, with the Shield, he fore described to you, signifying the Loss of his Country, and the Impoverishment of his Parents. The new Knight then, having thank'd the King, and him, from whom he receiv'd that honour, entred into his Bark, hoping in a little time to recover his Empire. But it fell out quite contrary to his expectations; for the second day after there arose such a Tempest, that from time to time he expected the loss of himself and his Vessel together, which being dyen to it, was at last cast upon the Isle of Argenes, where he went ashore. And to know what Country it was, he took Horse, and riding towards the Castle, where was then the Emperor of Trebizond, as you have been told, he was met by six of Axianas Knights who assail'd him, to take him and imprison him according to the Custom. But he so gallantly defended himself, that the Event was such, as you have heard.



## CHAP. XXX.

How the Infanta Axiana, being arriv'd at her House of Pleasure, sent to fetch the Knight of the Burning Sword and Gradamart, that they might be better lookt to, than where they were, having no Chirurgeon, to dress their Wounds.

To continue then the Discourse of our History, you shall understand, that on the morrow, Balan retired at large the state of his affairs to Perion and Livart. For such every one was greatly mov'd to compassion, promising him Aid and Succour, principally the Knight of the burning Sword, who desir'd to be his friend and Companion: So that they pass'd afterwards many jestures together, as you shall understand in the sequel of this Discourse. Now it hapned, that the next day, as the Emperour, with the Ladies, and the rest of the Knights, were walking upon the Bridge near the first Tower, they perceiv'd coming towards them two Damisels in very good Equipage, accompanying a Litter, cover'd with Velvet, carry'd by two smiling Gules. Being come a little nearer the Knights, they stopp'd to ask, which amongst them was the Emperour of Trebisond.

Damisels, answer'd the Emperour, I am he: What is your Pleasure?

Sir, said one of the Damisels, the Infanta Axiana my Mistress intreats you to send her in this Litter the Knight, that fought yesterday, assuring you, that he shall be every way better treated than he can be in this place, where amongst other Remedies, there wants a Chirurgeon, as she very well knows: And this Courtesy she will do him in acknowledgement of that, he shew'd her yesterday. And doubt not Sir, of his being very kindly entertain'd: For my Lady determines to honor him for his Virtue: Therefore consider, what Answer to make.

Damsel, reply'd the Emperour, I should be greatly satisfy'd to serve your Mistress: But as to the Request she makes me, I assure you, I have no farther Power over the Knight, than what himself will give to my Entreaty. I shall indeed, and willingly, persuade him to obey her, and if you will go along with me, you shall hear, what I will say to him.

Sir, said Balan, not to give you that trouble, I will, if you please, do the message: And I believe, he will readily hearken to it, seeing the Condition, he is in.

Go then, answer'd the Emperour, and bring us Word, as soon as possibly you can.

Then Balan departed, and went to the Knight of the Burning Sword, who was in his Bed by Gradamart, Gradamart hearing them company, and entirely related to him Axiana's Message, telling him the Desire, he had to treat him, and that two of her Damisels had brought him a Litter in very good Equipage.

My

My dear Friend, answer'd he, Axiana does so much for me, that I know not how, during my whole life, I may be able to acknowledge this her Favour: yet will I not forsake my Companion Gradamart: So that if she will have one, she must have both together.

Well then, said Balan, I will go and give them this Answer, and return to acquaint you with their Reply.

Then going forth of the Chamber, he came to the Place, where the Emperour expecting his Return, was discoursing with the Damisels to whom Balan declar'd the Intention of the Knight of the burning Sword: Which, when they had heard, they answer'd, that Axiana had in like manner commanded them to make the same Request to Gradamart, if he were living: For she lov'd him, and much doubted of his being in a worse Condition.

When Lucella understood, that her friend was to come, she chang'd her Colour above ten times in less than a moments space, one while pale, presently red, now green, then inconsistent, dissembling nevertheless, as much as was possible, the amorous Passion, which caus'd such an Alteration in her: And with the best assurance, she said, she return'd to accompany the Queen, and the Damisels, into the Chamber of the wounded Knights, who were without delay carry'd by four Servants, and put into the Litter.

Now the Messengers had not yet taken notice of Lucella's Beauty, which they no sooner beheld, but they durst to affirm, that Nature had never produc'd any thing, more excellent, or more worthy of Admiration. And immediately they took their Leave of the Company, the two Knights promising the Ladies to make a speedy Return, if it pleas'd Heaven to be assisting to their Cure.

Removing then, they went gently on, for fear of disturbing the Wounds of the Knights, yet nevertheless they came before Sun-set to Axiana's Palace, which was wonderfully built: For the whole Building was of Jasper, Porphyry, white, gray, and black Marble, with a vast Number of Towers and Curtains, along which were many gilded Pipes, cerebiring the Walkers from four great Parts of the House in a Square, the Walls of which, within and without were enrich'd with the most curious work, that Apelles ever wrought, either in Imagery or Paintings. To this Palace was adjoining a Park, containing in compass six great Leagues, full of so many Curiosities, that I know not, whether the Palace of Apollon could shew any thing beyond them: For Zircia had employ'd all her Skill to render it perfectly curious, having beautify'd with whatever Art or Nature could afford, as you shall hereafter understand. And tho' the two wounded Knights were in so much Pain, that Rest was much more convenient for them, than their Amusing themselves, either in beholding or discoursing about Buildings; yet having heard the Damisels by the way relate the Perfection of the Place, they took to great Pleasure in viewing its Curious, that they scarce thought of entering in, when Axiana, inform'd of their Arrival, by a Page, came to receive them with such a Countenance, as

shew'd her more content and satisfy'd, than if she had regain'd her Castle, and Chamber of Treasure, she had lost.

Which the Knight of the Burning Sword perceiving, said to her: Madam, you have been so mindful of our Healths, that should we dye a thousand times in your Service; yet can we never recompence favour we receive from you: But the as the Sun is naturally bright, and cannot be otherwise; so you being descended of the house, you are, and so well educated, cannot shew your self other than wise, prudent, fair, and virtuous, using Sweetness and Courtesy, as that, with which you are born, and which naturally, accompanies you to render you the most accomplish'd Ladies.

Sir Knight, answer'd she, you give me great and undeserv'd Praises, for that which I could not have omitted, without offending against the three principal Points, requisite to a Person of my Condition. The first of which is, to acknowledge in time of Adversity the Pleasure one has receiv'd from ones Enemy, letting every one know, that he, who, when afflicted, can requite a Favor, has also the Means to avenge himself of the Injuries suffer'd, during his Misfortune. The second, to shew ones self at all times civil and compassionate, as occasion requires. And the third, never so to trouble ones Mind, for any Discontents or Crosses, which may happen; but that Reason and Discretion still keep the upper hand. And these three Points are evidently necessary to all generous Persons, for the preserving their Greatness always firm and unchangeable: For undecaying Virtue renders a person much more noble and exalted, than all the corruptible Goods of Fortune, which are always subject to her Passions and Inconstancy; and but too often bestow'd on such, as never deserv'd them. But 'tis quite otherwise with Virtue; for she alone obtains it, who does Acts worthy the gaining it: And for it alone, ought men to be esteem'd, and honour'd, yea, and reputed Richer, than if they possess'd all the Treasures of the world; Because the true and never fading Riches, is the Renown of good and heroic Actions, perform'd by the virtuous Person.

The Knight of the Burning Sword, hearing her speak with such a Grace, conceiv'd a very great Esteem for her: But she was Daughter of one of the distressed Ladies in Aun, and of Prince Olorius of Spain, a most wise and prudent Knight, from whom it would have been difficult for her to have degenerated. And to speak true, when we consider the tenderness of her Age join'd with her Discretion, Nature shew'd in her a sweeter piece, admirably well deserving the highest Commendations. Wherefore he resolv'd to do her all the honor, he could, and she very courteously embrac'd him. Then were he and Gradamart brought into a fair Chamber, where, being laid in two feathered Beds, they were visited by the old Knight, whom we formerly mention'd, who, thro' his great skill, and long Experience, had their Lives, as he had done of many other valiant men, who held themselves therefore very much oblig'd to him.

How the Knight of the Burning Sword caus'd Ariana's Castle to be restored to her, and the Discourse the King of Sicily, and she had together.

Four whole days did the Knight of the burning Sword and Gradamart continue under the old Spanish Bands, without any discerning of Amusement in them, till towards the end of the Week, when the Feaver left them; and their Wounds began to heal. Ariana in the mean time treated them in the best manner, she could imagin, and sent to desire the King of Sicily, that he would come and visit them. Which he very readily did, Gradamart also hearing him Company.

They then being come to the Infanta's House, whilst Gradamart was entertaining her Brother Gradamart, the King of Sicily discours'd with the Knight of the burning Sword, who falling from one matter to another, the Knight began to say to him: Sir, tho' the little Service I have hitherto done you, is so far from deserving any Recompence, that it merits not the least Thanks; nevertheless, considering your Goodness, Liberality, and courteous Disposition, as you also, I believe, have already some Assurance, how much I am yours, and into what danger I would put my Person for any thing, that might redound to your Service; I have taken the boldness to make you the Request, you will hear. You know, Sir, in what manner the Chamber of Treasure was Conquer'd, and the Guards slain; at which (as 'tis to be thought) the Infanta Ariana receiv'd a double Discontent: And nevertheless for my desisting at her Request from the Combat against her Knight Ariensio, which was a great a Benefit to my self, as to him, she has taken such care of my Health, that, laying aside all the ill Will, she might reasonably bear me, she has so prefer'd Virtue, that 'twere impossible for the greatest Prince in the World to be more honour'd, or better treated: Which has constrain'd me, Sir, humbly to beseech you, that you will be pleas'd to give me, what we have won from her, to the end I may make her a Present of it, acknowledging in some manner the great Civility she has shewn me.

The King, who hear'd nothing more than to please and satisfy him, being very glad of this Overture, thus answer'd him: My dear Friend, I could wish you had askt also of me the three best Cities of my Kingdoms, that I might have had an Opportunity of shewing you how sensible I am of the Obligations you have laid on me, who owe you even my Life: as for what you now request of me; you alone have the Absolute Right to dispose of it, at your pleasure, having purchas'd it with your blood; it seems therefore injurious to me, to ask me that which is already your own, and in which I have no part: but if you please to accept of any thing that belongs to me, you shall freely have it, how dear soever it is to me.

The Knight of the burning Sword very humbly thank'd him. This Discourse was scarce ended, when the Infanta, who had been to visit her Friend Lucencio, came in. The King immediately went to salute her, with his Knee, in a manner, to the Ground, and she, who was of an Accomplish'd Behaviour, receiv'd him very humbly. Then they sat down in two Chairs, near to the Knight, who, addressing himself to her, thus began his Discourse: Madam, you have already done me such Favors, that 'tis impossible for so poor a Knight, as I am, ever to return you a suitable Thanks: I have, nevertheless, by my Entreaties, so far prevail'd with the King, that he has, of his Liberality, been pleas'd to bestow on me the Place, you lost some few days since, to the end I may restore it into your hands, which I very willingly do: entreating you, that of your wonted Goodness, you will pardon me the death of your people, who (undoubtedly) ended their daies, more thro' the ill Custom of the place, they kept, than for any Desire I had to do you a discourtesy. Therefore, Madam, with Thanks to the King, you will please to accept this present, and to esteem me, as one, who would hazard his life, and whatever else is dear to him, for your Service.

Tho' Axiana was exceedingly surpris'd at her so easy recovering, what she despatched of, yet controlling the Excess of her Joy, she modestly thus answer'd him: Indeed, good Knight, the Offer you so liberally make me, and the Displeasure I have receiv'd in losing what you have gain'd from me and mine, put me in great confusion; because, considering in what manner my place has been conquer'd, and then restor'd, and put into my hands, my honour seems not however to be satisfied, unless the Death of my men were reveng'd as severely as the greatness of the Offence deserves; not so much in respect of them, as of my person, against which, the principal Injury has been committed, and which ought to have a suitable satisfaction. And on the other side, the Favour, Benefit, and Honour I receive from the King and you, summons me to forget all past Offences, not so much for the value of the thing you present me, as to take away the Opinion, that might be conceived, not only of my ingratitude, but that the cause of my Refusal proceeds from a Despair of ever being able to return you the like: Which, the Gods forbid should befall Axiana, and much less, that she should shew in the State and Rank she bears any mean spiritedness, which is a Fault, that never she or any of her Lineage were guilty of. And therefore conforming the Time to my Fortune, my Thanks for the Restitution you make me, shall be such, that I wait for some time to requite you, not as for a Benefit bestow'd on the Queen of Argens Daughter, but as a bounty, proceeding from such noble Persons to me, who expected it not. In the mean time you shall have, for a pledge, my good Will, with whatever else is in my power.

Ah! Madam, said the King, I will no longer contend with you, well knowing, that your Courtesy can overcome a much better speaker than I am: but let it suffice you, that all those, who see you, fall into a Desire of doing you service,

vice, which Desire brings with it so much force, that every Knight who serves you, thinks himself well recompens'd, if his service is agreeable to you.

Now Axiana had not perceptibly Gradanilea, who, to hear what they said, left her Brother, and came to wait on her. Then they saluted each other very courteously. They had not however any long Discourse together: for Night drew on, and the King of Sicily would return, whence he had parted in the morning. Which Axiana knowing, besought him, and Gradanilea also, not to tinger the May, but to bring thither the next day the Queen and Lucella, with all the rest, whom she would entertain in the best manner, she could: and upon this they gave her the good Night. And coming down into the Court, they took horse, and went back to the Castle of the Chamber of Treasure, where they were very well receiv'd, especially by the Ladies, who desiring to know in what disposition the two wounded Knights were, the King was oblig'd to relate to them, more than once, all he had seen and heard. And in the mean time, the Knight of the burning Sword and Lucencio, sometimes visited each other, whence they began together such a Friendship, as lasted ever after.

### CHAP. XXXII.

How the Emperor of Trebisond, the King of Sicily, and all the others, as well Knights, as Ladies, and Gentlewoman, that were in the Castle of the Chamber of Treasure, went to see Axiana: And of the Wonders she shew'd them.

So well did the old Knight order those he had undertaken to cure, that he let them on their Legs sound and lusty: At which the Infanta Axiana much rejoicing, and desirous to treat the Emperor and his Company, requested the Knight of the Burning Sword, and Gradanilea, to go, and desire their Company at her house, where she design'd to feast them. Which being heard by the Knights, they one day very early in the morning took horse, and having put on Scarlet Cloaks, which she had given them, with no other Arms but their Swords, they went on to the Castle, where they were very well receiv'd. Then the two Knights told those of the Castle Axiana's desire, to which they resolv'd to see forth immediately. Sending therefore for their horses, they rode to the Infanta's house, who being acquainted, that

that they were allotted in the lower Court, to take to receive them with pleasing Countenance, as was fittest to the Satisfaction of all the Company.



Now as the saluted them one after the other, seeing the great Beauty of Lucella, of which she had been told, she could not forbear saying to her: In my Conscience, Madam, you are the compleatest Beauty I ever saw in my life and I no more wonder, that the Adventure of my Castel is ended, the Gods having bestow'd on you so great Excellence.

Lisvart, who heard this Discourse, and the Praises, which Axiana gave the Princess, desiring in some sort to acknowledge the Pleasure, he receiv'd by it, spake thus to her: By my Faith Madam, you have in my opinion no cause to complain of them: For if they have given this Infant any Beauty, you also have so good a share of it; that, on come not far behind her.

And to speak Truth, after Lucella, one could not easily have found anyone, that equal'd her; and yet she could not forbear smiling and blushing together. She would not have been content any longer, but changing the Discourse, brought them into the Hall, where the Tables were cover'd for dinner, and they were so abundantly serv'd with all sorts of Delicacies, that 'twas to be admir'd.

Dinner being over, and they having discours'd a little of such things, as most de-

lighted them. Axiana, willing to shew them the Beauties and choicest Rareties of her House, address'd her self to the Queen, saying: You Madam, and this excellent Company, having so far honour'd Axiana, 'tis reasonable she should endeavour, in some sort, to acknowledge it by giving you the Pleasure of certain singularities which are here, and which several have sometimes thought to be strange. Will it please you therefore to see them.

Yes indeed answer'd the Queen, 'tis what we request of you.

Then they arose from their Places, and not to tire themselves over much, sent for their Horses, on which being mounted, they enter'd first into a great Park, part of which was curiously planted with Rows of Orange-trees, Lemon-trees, Syzies, Pomegranates, Apples, Lawrels, Ventrisk, Pines, Fir-trees, Palm-trees, Olive-trees, and several others, wonderfully pleasant. A little higher, on a small rising, was a Thicket of Cedars & Plain-trees, whither repair'd all sorts of Animals, wild and tame. And at the foot ran a Rivulet, proceeding from many pleasant Fountains, which water'd the Place, where 'twas convenient; in the midst of which there was an high Pillar of Amber, that cast forth such abundance of Water, as made a spacious Lake. Then going on the left hand, they enter'd into a long Walk, set on each side with Olms, Lime-trees, and Sycomores, which so shaded it, that the Sun in the height of Summer could not have offended the Eye of any one, and to rest ones self, there were, on the sides of it, Arbores of Woodbines and Box, entermix'd with Laurels and Laylacks. And in the midst was a Round of an hundred yards over, where were Pallas, Juno, and Venus of white Marble, who look on Paris, sleeping on a Rock of Chrysal, whence issu'd another fountain, in which they all took so much Pleasure, that they had not any thoughts of Returning, when there arose to obscure a dark cloud a Cloud, that they all lost sight of each other, and suddenly heard a serpent hiss, and hear his Wings, so that the whole Park resounded the Noise. Alas, poor Ladies, were you not then afraid. Yes certainly were you, and in such manner, that you thought immediately to dye: For the last mention'd Fountain was chang'd into so great a Fire, that the flames seem'd by little and little to have less'd on the whole Park, those who beheld this wonder, expecting nothing but a miserable and desperate end, and cursing Axiana, who had so suddenly brought them thither, to take, as they thought, vengeance for the displeasure, she had receiv'd of them. And the more to increase their Fear, they heard, on the great Lake, such a Noise & Thunder, that they thought, Heaven and Earth would come together, when they receiv'd nothing from thence towards them a great and terrible Serpent, casting fire and flame thro' his Eyes, Nostrils and Throat: And upon him the Infanta Axiana, holding in her hand a naked Sword, with which she gave the Beast such a Blow he threw his Cars, that thro' the Scars of the Pain, he leap'd into the Basin of the Fountain, where he began so to hiss himself, that the Knights, Ladies, and Gentlewoman, were wash'd with the Water, which spouted up, and fell from their Horses to the Ground, yet without receiving any further Hurt. Then the Darkness banishing, and the heavens becoming clear and bright, they all found themselves in the

midst of the Wood, and Axiana amongst them, having Livart's Sword, and without any more feeling any thing, that might trouble them.

Wherefore the Knights, knowing their condition, and vast fear, fell a laughing: so did not the Ladies, but trembled like the Leaves on the Tree, when fair Axiana foster Axiana gave them, who would have brought them forther: But Lucella very hardly told her, she would not for any thing in the world go on, unless she promis'd to free her from these Plantations. She was indeed more like one dead than living, and utter'd these Words with such a Sigh, as increased the Laughter.

Wherefore Axiana gave her Livart's Sword, saying to her: Madam, the better to secure you, take this Staff, which has such Virtue, that no Enchantment can hurt the Person, who bears it: And for this cause did I request the Lord, whose it is, to lend it me at our entrance into this Park. Which he did, and I deliver it to you, to defend your self & the rest, if you are assaulted with the like fear, as you have been.

Certainly answer'd Livart, I should willingly choose such Defence from her, and so, that I am ready to confess, that she and such like have more Power over me than any one, who should be arm'd, and in a will to fight me.

Well then, said Lucella, on this word I receive it, and will defend you, if Occasion offers.

They thus setting one at the other, the Knight of the burning Sword, who thought, that Livart made this Assertion, and that he was in love with Lucella, entered into so strong a Jealousy, that he would gladly have found a Pretence to have sought him privately: But neither Place nor Opportunity being dispos'd for it, he kept in his heart this ill Will, to make him sometime repent it, tho' this Suspicion was very unskillfully conceiv'd. For all the good Entertainment, he made this Lady, was only in remembrance of the fair Onoloria, whom she resembled, and for whom he liv'd day and night.

### CHAP. XXXIII.

How Alquisa arriv'd in the Isle of Argenes: And of the Departure of the Emperor and the others, to return into their Country.

Every one being, as you have heard, recover'd of their fright, they all rode horse again to visit the Remainder of the Park, going on, till they came to the Sea-shore, by which it was on that side enclos'd, where, they discover'd a far off a great Ship, making towards them with wonderful swiftness: Wherefore they stop'd, expecting to know who was in it. And when the Vessel was within two Bow-shoot of the Shore, they that were in it, put forth a Boat, which two Mariners began to row, bringing with them nine Dancells, holding each of them an Harp, the Sound of which, echo'd by the water, was wonderfully sweet. A little after they came ashore, and Alquisa, who was one of the nine, was known by almost all the Knights, even

even by him of the Burning Sword: for he remembered it was he, who forc'd him to leave off the Combat against Esplandian in the Defended Mountain.

For this cause every one was pleas'd to see her, and the Emperor embrac'd her, as did also the Knight of the Burning Sword, who said to her: My great Friend, give me leave to kiss you.

She, who well enough understood, what he aim'd at, humbly salutes him, answer'd: Sir Knight, you know the great Debit I have to do you service, and how much I am yours.

Livart and Perion, wondering at this Acquaintance, knew not what to think of it: Nevertheless they took at that time no notice, but after they had receiv'd her, as she desir'd, she said to them: My Lords, my Father, and Urganda salute you in all humility, and send you word, by me, that for your Good you enter without Delay into this Ship, since 'tis requir'd, you be henceforth seen by those, who have desir'd you, and are in very great Pain for your Absence. Therefore consider if you will believe their Counsel, for they love you, and desire your profit, as you have often enough experimented.

The Emperor (who had been of Opinion, he should never see the Day of Treason to return into Trebifond) considering, that Alquisa and Urganda sent them not such a Message without occasion, answer'd before them all: My great Friend, I think, that none of us would disobey Persons to whom we are so much bound. As for me, I am ready, without returning to the Place, from whence we departed this Morning.

As timely said the others.

Now Lucencio very well remembered the Promise, he had made to the wild woman, whom he found in the Forest, when he was hunting, as you were told in the beginning of this Volume, nevertheless he would not, at that time speak of it to Livart or Perion, hoping, that the Queen of Argenes, being return'd, he should get from her, and go to find them in Trebifond, whence he would bring them to her, who ask'd so much after them.

And on this Point the Emperor, and the other Knights, Ladies and Gentlemen, took leave of Axiana, offering her, whatsoever was in their Power: For which she heartily thank'd them, and she recommending them to the Protection of her Gods, they entered into Alquisa's Vessel, which a little after put off from Land, the Emperor thinking to go straight to Trebifond. But he was for this time mistaken, as you shall understand in the pursuit of our History.

## CHAP. XXXIV.

How *Malfaden*, Daughter to the Giant of the great *Sicliades*, came to ask help of King *Amadis*, who went with her, to revenge her of the Giant *Malfaren*.

**I**n the beginning of this History, you have been told, how King *Amadis* took a singular Delight, in seeing the fears of Arms, every day perform'd by the Duties of Savoy's Knight, who kept the Bay, whereto he had caus'd his Tents and Pavilions to be brought, so, that he lay'd there four whole Months: during which 'tis incredible, what a Number of Shields were lost by several gallant Men, according to the Custom, establish'd at the Passage. At which, the King conceived such a Love for the Knight, that, to draw him to his Service, and continual Residence about his Person, he bestow'd him great Honour and Sign of Love.

Now it hapned one day amongst others, that his Huntsmen brought him Word of a great Wild Boar, which they had found in a Thicket near the Sea-side. The King, who lov'd Hunting, commanded presently the Hunts to be spread, and with his Grey-hounds, Hounds, and other great Dogs brought him to a Bay, and at last kill'd him with a Boar-Spear. And because he found himself weary, he went to refresh himself on the Sand, where he had not been long, when he saw a Boat, brought to the Shore by two Mariners, and with them a Damself, carrying on her Shoulders two Giants Heads, one a Man's, the other a Woman's. She, of whom I speak to you, grew so much sorrow, that a piteous heart would have been mov'd to compassion.

The King, and those who were with him, drew near to hear the Cause of this Sorrow, and what Adventure brought this Woman thither. But she prevented them, asking them with Tears in her Eyes, if they could direct her to King *Amadis*, the Rampart and Refuge of such desolate Persons, as she was.

The King hearing, that she desir'd to speak with him, answer'd mildly: Damself, I am he, what would you have with me?

At this word the Giantess prostrated her self at his feet, and increasing her tears and sighs said to him: Alas! if in the time, when you were a Knight Errant, you sought strange Adventures, to repair Wrongs and Outrages, especially such, as were done to Widows and Orphans, now that you are King, Reason obliges you not to leave this so good, holy, and just Custom. For GOD bestows not his Favours and great Benefits on such, as you are, but for the Preservation of Justice, and Assistance of the Poor, who are all stript of Relief, as I am.

My Friend, answer'd the King, you say true, and certainly I will do so, if I can, whenever I shall have Opportunity: Wherefore delay not to acquaint me with your Grief, assuring you, that I will remedy it as far as I am able.

O good Prince, said she, with this hope I am come to you, and most humbly beseech you to grant me a gift, which 'tis necessary you should do, if you intend to revenge me of the wrong that is done me.

I grant it you, answer'd the King.

Understand, Sir, said she, that the Gift you have given me, is, that you alone, being Arm'd, enter presently into my Boat, to the end you may revenge me of the wicked Person that has slain my Father and Mother, whose Heads these are: and the Remainder, Sir, I will tell you at leisure, as we are sailing.

In good faith, answer'd the King, it shall not be my fault, if your Will is not executed: for I will follow you, where-ever you desire.

Certainly, said the Damself, this Confidence I have always had in your Vertue and Goodaels, therefore send for your Arms, and let us go.

The King call'd the Count *Gandalin*, and commanded him to fetch them without saying a word to the Queen, or any other, till such time as he was departed. The Count obey'd his Command, tho' very unwillingly: but knowing his Masters disposition, who would rather dye, than break his word, he went on. Now was it long, ere he return'd, and the King arm'd himself, bidding King *Arban* acquaint the Queen, with what he had seen, and desire her in his Name not to be troubled for him. Then he went into the Boat, and, without knowing whether he went, began to sail, leaving his People in a wonderful fear of losing him.

And because you may, Readers, think it strange, that this good King, who was fourscore years old, could yet undertake the Execution of such an Adventure, you must understand, that in his time the most magnanimous Knight, and of the greatest Courage, that could be found. Now were the days of Men so short then, as they are now: for they liv'd some Two hundred, nay some Three hundred Years and longer. And which is more, the Virtue of the Matter, wherewith Uraganda the Unknown walkt him in the Palace of *Apolidon*, when she enchanted him, was very Advantageous to him in this Affair.

But to return to our Story, King *Arban*, having follow'd King *Amadis* with his Spee, till he was out of sight, came to the Queen, and acquainted her with the King's Command, at which she became so troubled, that fetching a deep sigh, she began to say: Good GOD, the King's great Heart is an Enemy to his Person, and to me, seeing the Dangers it exposes him to at every turn! Alas! is it not time for him now to rest, and leave such youthful matters to be undertaken by so great a Number of good Knights, who desire nothing else?

Madam, answer'd *Angricote*, you say true: but what? the King, who is born to gain to himself alone the Honour of all, desires thus to do, and to leave nothing behind for us, thinking, by the great Benefits, he bestows on us, sufficiently to satisfy us for the Service and good Will, we bear him.

Many others endeavour'd to comfort Queen *Oriana*, to whom they alludg'd so many Reasons, that at last she took some of them in payment, knowing no better



**Remedy**: wherefore she resolv'd to return to London. Leaving therefore the Knight of the Ray, and the Dutcheſs of Savoy in the Protection of our Lord, ſhe departed the next morning betimes.

## CHAP. XXXV.

How Malfadea the Gianteſs related her Miſfortune to King Amadis: and of the Diſcourſe, they had together.

**K**ing Amadis, being thus gone off from the Coaſt of great Britain, and ſeeing his Guide a little ſorry'd, requere'd her to acquaint him with the occaſion of her Parents Death, and her Diſcontent.

**This** ſhe willingly granted, ſaying to him: Your Maſteſty will be pleas'd to underſtand, that my Father was Lord of the great Siclades, ſo call'd for being longer and larger than any other of the four and fifty Iſlands. And tho' he was a Giant, yet had he many good and virtuous Cuſtoms: he was very juſt, compaſſionate, and a Practiſer of friendly Hoſpitality towards his Neighbours. One of which, who was a wicked and traiterous Diſſembler, abuſing this my Fathers Courteſy and good Nature, pretended to be ſo much his Friend, that he lov'd him above all others.

He, of whom I ſpeak, and who is nam'd Paſſarion, came not above fifteen days ſince, with a Couſin of his into the great Siclades, where they were very well receiv'd. Now the next day after dinner, this Villain aſk'd my Father, that he might have my Company to walk in the Garden. My Father, innocent of the Rascals Malice, commanded me to go along with him: and Paſſarion and I were ſome time together without his ſpeaking any thing that might diſpleaſe me: but at laſt he pray'd me to grant him my Love.

I then, being much amaz'd, frankly answer'd him, that I would rather dye, than do this Injury to my Lineage, ſetting before his Eyes the good Entertainment, and great Reception, my Father had given him, to which he ought to have regard.

*Say you ſo?* ſaid he. *Yet muſt you obey me, whether you will or no: nevertheleſs I pray you, it may be by Amity, and not by force.*

*Certainly,* answer'd I then to him, *I would firſt kill my ſelf with mine own hands.*

Notwithſtanding this, my Refuſal hindred him not from attempting to deſile me by force, which made me cry out ſo loud, that my Father, who was then diſcourſing with Paſſarions Couſin, came to my Aſſiſtance, aſking me the cauſe of my Cry.

*Alas,* ſaid I, *this Villain would have diſhonour'd me by force.*

My Father, not without cauſe, provok'd hereat, ſtoop'd down to take up a ſtick, which lay at his Feet, and before he could get up again, the Traytor, drawing a Scymeter, which hung at his ſide, gave him ſuch a Blow on the neck, that he ſeparated his head from his Body.

Then

Then I poor wretch began in ſuch fort to howl and lament, that my ſorrowful Mother came to me, who finding my Father thus murder'd, and the Scymeter in the hands of his murderer, ſlew at him, and like a furious Lioneſs, which ſees her Whelps taken away, began to bite, ſcratch, and to do him all the miſchief, a Weak man, overwhelmed with Deſpair, could in ſuch a caſe do. And ſhe had without doubt kill'd him, but that the other, taking his part, firſt threw my Mother on the Ground, and then drawing his Sword, murder'd her.

Then Paſſarion took me by the hair, telling me, that, to make me ſuffer the more he would not kill me, as he had done the reſt, but would force me on the Bodies of my murder'd Parents, that I might receive the greater injury: and thus he executed his damnd and unhappy Will, what Reſiſtance or Threat ſcever I made him.

Then he kick'd me on the Belly, ſaying to me: *Go, wretched Creature, ſeek, who may honour thee more, or reſtore thee the Eſtate, thou expecteſt to enjoy for the future.*

And leaving me alone, he, and his Couſin return'd to the Caſtle, where having moſt inhumanly butcher'd many poor Servants, they took poſſeſſion of it, and keep it ſtill.

Which I ſeeing, took the Heads, you may here behold, and enter'd into this Boat, attended by this Servant of mine, who has brought me to you for Refuge: and ſo indeed I commanded him, having often heard it affirm'd, that you never fail'd your Aſſiſtance to any poor deſolate Woman.

In this manner, Sir, all has paſt, and this is the unhappy end of thoſe, from whom I had my Life.

Then he ſet a weeping ſo bitterly, that it ſeem'd, as if he would have melted into Tears. At which the Kings hearer was in ſuch manner touch'd with Compaſſion, that he could ſcarce forbear weeping: wherefore he ſaid to her: This certainly is the greateſt and moſt Villainous Treason, that could be imagin'd, and which I have good hopes not to leave unpuniſh'd.

Alas, Sir, answer'd ſhe, I beſeech GOD to healding to you herein.

Thus went King Amadis and Malfadea diſcourſing with ſo good a Wind, that the Thirtieth Day after they arriv'd within Twenty Miles of the great Siclades. Which the Mariners ſer the King underſtand, aſſuring him, they ſhould come to Harbor the next day being eight a Clock.

Well then, answer'd the King, we ſhall ſee whether Paſſarion or I ſhall have the faireſt Miſtreſs.

## CHAP. XXXVI.

How the Emperor of Trebisond, the King of Sicily, and their Company, sailing by Night, there pass'd by them a Boat, in which was a Knight, and a Lady that wept bitterly.

**W**E not long since told you, in what manner the Emperor and his Company put to Sea at their departure from the Isle of Argenes, at which there was not any of them, but was greatly pleas'd, hoping to go first to Trebisond: but they counted without their Host; and indeed very great Dammage would have been caus'd by it: to prevent which Alquifa was sent to them, as you will understand in the following Chapter.

This Company then sailing the space of a whole Month, without knowing whither, or which way they went, the Skiff being guided of it self without any Pilot or Governour, (for so had the wise Alquifa gain'd) it one night hapned, that the Knight of the burning Sword, not being able to sleep for thinking on his Love, heard the Sighs of a Woman, lamenting, as he thought, and bitterly weeping: wherefore he awakned his Companion Gradamart, to whom he bore a singular friendship, and askt him, whether he had heard this Complaint: for, said he, it seems to me to be some of our Damsels.

I have well heard the Complaint, answer'd Gradamart, but it comes from farther off, and to shew 'tis so, the Water carries away the noise by little and little. God never help me then, said the Knight of the burning Sword, if I do not go to know, what it means.

And do you think, answer'd Gradamart, that I will stay behind?

Then they got hastily up, and wrapping themselves in their Cloaks, came upon the Deck, where they enquir'd of the Mariners, if they had seen any one pass that way, who wept or made any noise?

Yes, answer'd some of them, 'twas a Damsel, whom a Knight carries away in a Boat, with two Oars.

As God shall help me, said the Knight of the burning Sword, he forces her then, and 'twould ill become me to have so long born Arms, and not to remedy it; and 'tis probable, I heard not this noise without the Will of the Heavenly Powers, who would have me to look after it. And therefore, Sir Gradamart, I desire you to help me again my self: for I would not for any thing in the world delay to follow them in our Skiff, with one or two of our Mariners.

Now, answer'd Gradamart, do you think my Friendship to you so little, that I would let you go thus alone? On my soul, tho' you so far disdain'd me, yet will I not forsake you, without having share in the good or evil, that may befall you by it.

When the Knight of the burning Sword heard him speak with such affection, desiring, that he had displeas'd him, he embrac'd him, and said to him: Pardon me, my dear

dear Friend, for I swear to you by our great Gods, that no other thing made me use this Language to you, but the fear of over toiling you: for I have more pleasure in your Company, than in any other I can keep. And therefore I promise you, that I will not henceforth transgress your Commands, but dispose of me as you shall please.

Then Gradamart made a sign to the Mariners to let down the Skiff into the Sea, and in the mean time they went to draw themselves the most secretly they could, fearing, lest the King, or some other, might discover their Enterprise. Being arm'd, they went forth of the great Ship, taking only two Men to guide them, whom they commanded to steer their Course that way, they had heard the voice complain: charging the others on their Lives to say nothing of their Departure, till the next morning, when they should, in their Prayers, beseech the Emperor to stay for their two days, if it were possible.

Then the Skiff began to sail, and those of the Ship did, as he had commanded them: for day being come, the King of Sicily, thinking to go and visit the Knight of the burning Sword, and not finding him, where he was wont to rest, knew from the Mariners, in what manner Gradamart and he, was departed, at which he was very much displeas'd, yet was also Lucella, till he knew what they had request'd of the Emperor, which was to stay for them.

But a Tempest, arising at break of day, contradicted it: so that 'twas impossible for them to bring the Ship to Anchor, but they were forc'd to remove, whether they would or no, and follow Fortune, Alquifa persuading them, that all this was disdain'd by Mystery, add that the Knight of the burning Sword and Gradamart would be found again in time. And in the mean while, we will return to the King of great Britain, who was sailing with Malfidea.

## CHAP. XXXVII.

How King Anabais went ashore in the great Sicilades, and fought against Malfaron: And of the Danger, he was in, from which he was deliver'd by the Knight of the burning Sword, and Gradamart, who came thither in good time for him.

**G**Radamart and the Knight of the burning Sword, caus'd their two Mariners to row with all the speed they could, that they might overtake him, who carry'd away the Damsel, as you have been told, whom they discover'd about break of day, at which they receiv'd great Satisfaction, hoping he should never escape from them. And following him with great haste, when it had been now day a full hour, they saw him go ashore on a neighbouring Island, and one of those, who guided the Boat, enter into a strong Castle, whence he soon return'd to the Knight, who stay'd for him on the Sand.

Then they lay a while together, and a little after perceiv'd coming towards them a Giant completely arm'd, and with him another Giant, and some Hundred of Peasants: Wherefore the Knight embay'd his Shield, and lay down his Helm, took his Sword in his hand, and march'd straight to the Giant, who put himself in like readiness to fight. Then they began to furiously to charge each other, and the sparks of Steel flew from their Swords, as from a Furnace, blown with a South-Wind. And thus they held on, cutting each others Swords, and murthering their Arms, so that the best of them was in a manner naked, the Knight of the Boat having himself so brave, Courageous, and Nimble, that he often made his Enemy lose his Blow, and treated him so ill, that the Blood ran out in many places from his flesh.

At which the Giant grew very fearful, and seeing his own near approach with a loud voice: Cousin, Cousin, and you my men, revenge me of this Devil: For if he were Mortal, he could never have done, what you have seen.

Ah Villain, said the Knight, dost thou think thus to preserve thy Life? By my head, all the help of these Traitors shall not save thee from my hands.

Seeing this, he began to press him more close, than he had done all the day, and the Giant did nothing but party to his Blows, expecting him when he was all gone to fetch their Arms at the Castle. And thus they badly ventur'd, and fell upon the Knight of the Boat, whom they encompass on all sides.

Now a little before the Knight of the burning Sword and Gradamart, who had from afar, seen the beginning of the fight, began to take to one another: Behold, how much we were deceiv'd: He, who, we thought, carry'd away the Damself by force is come to revenge her of some injury, she has receiv'd from this Giant: Let us approach, and see, how 'twill go.

Then they commanded their Warriors to draw to the shore, and the nearer they approach'd, the more they wonder'd, who he was, that fought so valiantly, and, as they might plainly see, manag'd his Enemy at his pleasure. But they perceiv'd the Assistance come, and assail him on all sides: Nevertheless the Knight so well defended himself, seeing his Death before his Eyes, that he seem'd, as if he had not struck a Blow all the day, tho' he had to do with two Giants and twenty others, as well Servants, as Esquires, by whom he was so molest'd, that 'twas a Wonder, how he could bear up against them.

Gradamart and the Knight of the burning Sword who were in their Skiff making towards the Shore, dyemear the Boat, in which the Damself was remaining, who, tying her Hands, and raising her Hair, made the deluded Ramageon in the world, rushing and hanning fortune, which was so contrary and injurious to her. Then the Knight of the burning sword ask'd her, why she lamented in that manner.

Alas! Sir answer'd she, if there is in you any goodness, for GOD's sake succor this good Knight, who has, for my right, undertaken this hard Combat against the most

most cruel and traitorous Giant, that ever was born of Woman, who, violating his Faith and Promise: has dishonorably equis King Amadis to be assaulted, whom you may see in the danger he is for my sake.

When the Knight of the burning Sword heard the Damself say, that he, who fought against him, was the King of Great Britain, he greatly wonder'd, and spake thus to Gradamart: Indeed, I believe, that whatever Fame has heretofore publish'd of him, is true, and yet it is nothing in respect of what I see with my two Eyes: Wherefore I will never consent to his being thus surpris'd by these Villains, but will help him to my power, tho' I am sure he hates me more than any man living. And nevertheless, I think my self happy, that I am come in time to let him know, that (setting hatred aside) I am more a Lover of Virtue than Enmity: It being a more commendable thing to vanquish ones self, than all others: Therefore my Companion, I beseech you, let us chastise these Traitors: For Knight-hood is principally ordain'd for such occasions.

Then they went upon the Sands, and embracing their Shields, fiercely assailed those, who held the King thus belated, the Knight of the burning sword crying: Begone, Villains, be gone, you shall all dye for having thus laid hands on the best King in the World.

And at the same time, he gave such a Blow with his Sword, to the first he met, that he cleav'd his Iron Cap, and his head, even to the Shoulders. Then thinking himself into the Crowd, he struck on the right and left with such force, that when he stamp'd hit, had no need of a Chirurgien. Gradamart on the other side, did not much less, as, who was of a Giant's size, an hardy and valiant Knight, and he would gladly let King Amadis know, that for love of Liliart of Greece, with whom his Sister was so much in Love, he willingly employ'd his Weapon in his Service.

Now Amadis was at that time very much wounded, nevertheless, finding himself assisted, and by such gallant men, had his heart so rais'd, that he recover'd new strength, and smote Mascaron to home, that he separated his head from his shoulders, crying with a loud voice: This day, Traitor, thy Life and thy great Dishonours shall come to an end together.

In the mean time, Gradamart was fighting with the other Giant, who perceiving his Cousin Mascaron in so piteous a condition, began to lose heart, and recede back, step by step, at as he might escape being kill'd: but the Knight of the burning sword, finding him in his way, gave him a great a blow on the Shoulder, that he cut off his right Arm in such manner, as one might see his Liver, whereon he fell immediately dead. The rest of the Assassins were so surpris'd at this, that they began themselves to their heels, flying as fast as they could towards the Forest, and posted them little, for at last they lost their Lives, some few being excepted, who fled to Peru.

Then the Giantess Malfada, knowing the Clitorea to be turn'd in her labour, and seeing the head of her Enemy on the field, ran to take it, and began to tear it with

her Earth, as the hungry Wolf does the tender Lamb, that he has stoin from the Shepherds: At which the King began to laugh, saying, he never thought, there could have been so great an Heart in a Womans Body.

Sir, answer'd the Knight of the Burning Sword, she will compleat her Vengeance, and shew by effect, that such Constraints are often familiar to her, and such, as she.

Truly said the King, you may well name it Extremity. But my Friends, I beseech you, take off your Helmets, that I may know you: For you have done so much for me, that I hold my Life only from you.

Sir, answer'd the Knight of the burning Sword, it will please you to give us leave, because we can make no longer stay with you.

Ah! ah, my Friends! said the King, embracing them, Will you leave me then so soon, without telling me your Names? By all, that I hold of GOD, it will be a very great Displeasure to me.

Sir, answer'd the Knight of the burning Sword, to obey you, you shall see us bare-fac'd, tho' you will know as little, as before: Nor did I think to do you service in this place; but our Minds change with the time, and the gods often dispose quite otherwise, than Men propose. For the rest, I assure you that thy longer stay here would be damageable to several: Therefore you will at this time excuse us, if you please.

King Amadis, who, during these Discourses, beheld them attentively, had his Heart wholly mov'd; for he began to think his Grand Son Lisvart, whom he resembled, and suspected immediately by the Marks, which had been given him, that 'twas undoubtedly he, who had conquer'd the Defended Mountain, and fought in his Presence with the Marchers of Savoy a Knight: Wherefore having more Desire to know the Truth, he said to him: Knight, I heartily thank you for the Benefit, I have receiv'd by you, and the more, because the Enmity, which you say, you bare me, did not divert you from doing so good an Act. As for me, if you are he, whom I imagine, and whom I have hated more than all the men in the world, I will now swear to you, that for the Esteem, I have of your Person, the Ill Will is wholly forgotten on my Side, which you shall see by experience, when you please.

Sir, Answer'd the Knight of the burning Sword, I know not, whether I am he, whom you presume, but I should think my self very happy to be the Friend and Servant of so good a Prince, as your Majesty; for Testimony whereof, and in assurance, that we will continue yours, you shall presently know, who we are, and some News, which will give you yet more Desire to wish us well. My Companion is Gradamar, Son to the King of the Giants Island, and I am a poor Soldier, call'd the Knight of the burning Sword: to tell you more of my being I cannot; for I know it not my self. The News, I have to tell you, is, that your Children,

dren, Perion of Gaul and Lisvart of Greece are hard by with the Emperor of Trebizend, where we left them in a Ship, near which you pass'd last night: and we came after you, thinking by the Moans of this Damel, that you carry'd her away by force against her Will.

The King, who thought his Children dead, hearing, that they were in good health and so near him, was surpris'd with such extream Pleasure, that lifting up his hands to Heaven, he call'd himself on his knees, and cry'd out: O Sovereign God! how great and admirable are your Judgments! and what assistance do you lend those, who unfeignedly call on you, to the end your ineffable Greatness may be known in all places! I give you Praise, O Lord all possible Praise and Thanks: For 'tis not long since I thought my self at the end of my life, and having deliver'd me from death by the hand of him, I hated most in the world, have also by the same Person immediately let me know the best News that can befall me.

Then he arose up again, stretching forth his Arms, went to embrace the Knight of the burning Sword, saying to him: Ah! my Child, certainly I cannot call you otherwise seeing Reason obliges me to love and esteem you more than any Knight living, I beseech you to pardon me the little Reception, I have hitherto given you: For your Verrae deserves well, that you be honor'd amongst all the worthy men, I know. I beseech Almighty GOD to grant me the favour, that I may one day acknowledge to you this so great Good, you have done me, and you will yet, if you please, do me another Courtesy, VVhich is, that these Seamen shall return to the Emperor and my Children, to acquaint them, with what is befall me, and in the mean time you shall bearme Company: For I believe that when they shall understand, the wounds, I have receiv'd, make it impossible for me to come to them, they will not fail to set sail this way.

Sir, answer'd the Knight of the burning Sword, I my self will be the Messenger of such good News, and will bring them more easily than those whom you will send.

VVell, said the King, go then in the Protection of our Lord, whom I beseech to be your Guide, and I will retire into this Place, till your Return.

Then Malcadas drew near all bloody with the Careles, he had made his Enemies dead, who thanking the Knights with great Affection for their good Assistance, said to King Amadis to be brought into her Castle, where she desired his Wounds, applying to them such Ointments and Remedies, as were necessary: for he was well skill'd in that Art. And on this Point Gradamar and his Companions, having Advice of the King, return'd into their Ship, hoping soon to see him again.

## CHAP. XXXVIII.

How the Knight of the Burning Sword and Gradamart, sailing on the Sea, arriv'd by Fortune in the Isle of the Hermion Tower, where Canbalfe was combated, and defeated, and Calceotes and Gradamart, the Father and Mother of Balan, deliver'd out of Prison.

After the Knight of the burning Sword, and Gradamart, had taken leave of King Amadis, and were return'd to Sea, they commanded their Mariners to steer their Course to the Place, where they had left their Company: And this they did, saying to be quickly there, and relate to them, what they knew of King Amadis who exposed them, as you have been told. But no more finding either the Ship, or any Man, of whom they might enquire, what was become of it, the Knight of the burning Sword was ready to dye for displeasure, tho' Gradamart comforted him as much, as possibly he could, knowing, whence this his Discontent proceeded. They resolv'd then, as best, to return to King Amadis, and take their way together to Great Britain, where perhaps they might have News of what they so much desir'd: For, said Gradamart, 'twould be difficult for such Persons, as the Emperor, and the King of Sicily, to be long conceal'd, without being discover'd.

For this cause they acquainted the Seamen with their Intention, who, reflecting their Vessel began to sail with a favourable Wind, which lasted but a little while, for there arose suddenly such a Tempest, that they were often in Danger of being cast away, and were forc'd to abandon their Boats and Oars to the good Pleasure of Fortune, which bore them four whole days without sight of Land, or of any thing, that might give them the least hopes in the World to Escape. But on the fifth morning their Bark came to the fore of an Island, into which they made a Descent, giving thanks to their gods for this Relief, tho' they knew not the Countrey, where they perceiv'd, nor far from them, a Castle, built of Stone, as red as Blood, and presently the Knight of the Burning Sword call'd to mind, that Balan bear such an one for his Prison: wherefore he said to Gradamart:

Never trust me, dear Friend, if we are not arriv'd in the Island of the Hermion Tower, and if this Place is not the Castle, where the Father and Mother of Balan are detain'd Prisoners, which greatly moves me to go see Canbalfe, and desire him for courtesy to deliver them, and the Lady also to whom it belongs.

These are words, answer'd Gradamart, I have heard Canbalfe so much blam'd, that Virtue has no part in him: Nor will he do any thing but by force.

And as they were thus Discourting, they saw come towards them, an Esquire, riding on a Pegasus, who, without saluting them, said to them: Knights, Canbalfe, King of the Sagittary Island, greatly wonders, what has mov'd you to set Foot

in

in this Countrey, which is his, without acquainting him, and sends you word by me, that you come willingly to his Prison, or otherwise, he will put you to the cruellest Death, as can imagine: however, if perhaps Balan, Son of Calceotes is one of you, he would have him understand, that he is very glad of it, not for any Good he desires him, but in hopes to take off his Head, and send it with his Fathers and Gradamart, to that wicked King Amadis, with whom he so braggingly threaten'd him. But he thinks, that the person, I speak of, has no leisure to return, for fear such an Happiness should befall him, seeing 'tis so long, since he promis'd to come back and fight him.

The Knight of the burning Sword was exceedingly mov'd at the hearing himself threaten'd with a Prison, and angrily answer'd the Esquire: Friend, return to thy Master, and tell him, that he shews himself, by thy Message, a more foolish and proud King, than we are rash, for having entered into the Countrey, which he shall shortly lose, and where we know that he has nothing of right. Tell him also, that the coming of Balan will make him as sorry, as he brags he should be glad: And for to give him certain assurance of it, I am Balan, who could come no sooner to fight him, not for any fear of him, but for want of Time and Opportunity convenient. And therefore let him perform to me, what he is oblig'd to, and I will likewise on my part keep my promise with him, which is to present his Head to King Amadis, a Prince more Vertuous and Debonnair, than he is Traitorous and wicked.

The Esquire, having heard him, began to shake his head, and smiling, to say to him: In meekery: In good faith I well know now, that your Brain is weaker, and more disturb'd, than I thought for: Nevertheless, your being a Fool, is no Argument to hinder your being chaf'd as you deserve. But stay, I am going to fetch one that will teach you henceforth to speak more dutifully, and respectfully, than you have done of the Person of such a Prince as King Canbalfe my Master.

Then he turn'd his Horse, and setting Spurs to his Horse, went back the way he came, leaving Gradamart very much displeas'd, that the Knight of the burning Sword had alone granted him to great a Matter: For he knew he expected that Canbalfe was one of the cruellest and strongest Giants in the world, and for this cause he said to his Companion: As GOD help me, since you concern your self so much in the Affairs of others, you ought much more to take some care of your own, and I wonder how you have so lightly undertaken this Combat, without giving me some part in the Danger or Honour that may come of it: Since I much better resemble Balan, both in Stature and Countenance than you do, and should be pleas'd that Canbalfe should thank me so, and that you your self would assert to him, by your doing this I shall know that you are willing to recompence the love I bear you: or otherwise not.

Ah! my great Friend, answer'd the Knight of the burning Sword, the farther we go, the more (methinks) is our Mutual Love manifested, wherefore there is

in

now no need to make any Proof of it: And as for the care, you say, I take of others Affairs, indeed they are not others, but our own: seeing you sufficiently know the good Will that Balan bears us, which obliges us to defend, what concerns him, as it were our own: Yet will I not excuse the wrong, I have done you in not asking your Counsel; before I answer'd the Esquire: But the Indignation, he put me in by his Threats, and the high Words, he gave us, made me thus forget my self, for which, I beseech you to pardon me.

At this, they were debating these matters, the Equite went to carry the King the Answer of the two Knights, at which he was like to run mad for spite: Then he hastily demanded his Arms, and Arm'd himself, ordering his Serkantes to take especial heed, that Balan did not fly: for, said he, I will have him born with those I keep Prisoners.

And immediately he commanded a great Fire to be kindled without the Castle, over against which he caus'd Galeotes and Madafima to be bound: Now they knowing nothing of the Combat, which was to be fought, but thought they should surely dye, when they perceiv'd the two Knights, that expected Gandalfs, who seeing these poor Captives in such misery, having their flesh torn, and all bloody with the Torments they daily suffer'd from the Kells and Scourges, could not forbear weeping especially for the Hoan they made, calling for the Assistance of their Son, whose Arrival in time they never expected.

Then came Gandalf, to whom the Knight of the burning Sword address'd himself, saying to him: King, 'tis just that before our fight, thou swear to me, that, if the Victory be on my side, none of thine shall do me any hurt.

Ah! wretched Creature answer'd he, dost thou think to fall into this hazard? No, no, I will take care to keep thee from it: and to the end thou mayst not doubt of it, I swear to thee by the great god Jupiter, that if I can possibly avoid it, I will not kill thee in this Combat, but will take thee alive, to give thee afterwards at leisure a thousand Deaths one after another: Therefore from this time look to thy self.

At this word the Knight of the burning Sword advanc'd, and the two Champions entered into so wonderful a Combat, that at the two first Blows, had not their Helmets been strong and well Steel'd, they had broken each others Heads: But at length, the Knight of the burning Sword, being exceeding light and dextrous, avoided the Edge of his Enemies Sword, whom he so endamag'd, that finally the wound was on his side: yet did he not sto himself therefore the least dishearten'd, but knowing, that the longer they lasted, the Knight was still sicker, and himself more out of breath, thought to raise him about the Body, and endeavour with all his force to strike him: Hebertsels the other, who took heed to it, kept aside, and with a back blow, wounded him grievously in the right Arm, yet did Gandalf so pursue his Enterprise, that, whether the Knight of the burning Sword would or no, he was constrain'd to struggle with him, arm to arm: Being therefore pray'd for, the Knight began'd himself to wish, that they were both overtaken, tumbling one upon the other,

sometimes

sometimes upper, sometimes under, not having means to offend each other with their Swords: But to what purpose is it to defer the particularly all these Stratagems; and so many Blows? being finally both tir'd, and out of breath, they got up again, and, as if they had yet receiv'd no Damage, began afresh to assault each other with greater violence: In the mean time Gradamart approach'd Galeotes and Madafima, who were bound naked to a Post, as you have been told, and untied them, remonstrating to them, that this Combat was undertaken for their Liberty, and that they should therefore pray to God for the Victory of the good Knight: for besides, said he, that your Affairs would go ill, if he should miscarry, 'twould be very great Damage that he should dye.

They, who had to this time been ignorant of the Detention of the Combat, lifted up their Hands to Heaven, and weeping bitterly, made devout Prayers and Orisons: In the mean time the two Combatants, who us'd their utmost endeavours to defeat each other, were constrain'd again to take breath, and go back: Hebertsels this rest lasted little: for the Knight of the burning Sword, seeing his Shield broken, and his Arms in several places dy'd with his blood, was so animated, that having down his head he recharg'd Gandalfs, pressing him to with his Sword; that his heart began to fail him, and grow heavy in his Ventrals, so that he, who was dull, and limping of Nature, lost as it were the means of lifting up his Arms, either to defend or revenge himself: At which exceedingly discontent, he turn'd to his Gods, and conjuring and cursing them at every moment; he lifted up his great Cutlats with both his hands, hoping still, that the blow would be advantageous: But the Knight kept aside, and parry'd his Shield before it, into which it entered above a great hands breadth, of which nevertheless he had well recharg'd himself, had not his Sword turn'd in his hand with so much misfortune, that it struck so fiercely with the flat instead of the edge, that it broke into three pieces: If Gandalf was then glad, you, my Lords, who have heretofore seen such Pastime, may easily Judge, as also of the pleasure that Gradamart had at it, who, considering the Danger of his Companion, and the little means he had to help himself thenceforward, was des'd with such fury, that forgetting the common Right, observ'd in such Acts, he drew hastily his Sword, and would run to Gandalf, when the Knight, full of Courage, and greatly displeas'd put himself between them, crying to him: Ah! my Lord Gradamart, do not kill me, thinking to give me Life: for I had much rather dye, than you should do any thing, that may defame you.

Gradamart, hearing himself nam'd, stop'd, as if he had been awak'd out of a long sleep, and knowing his fault, retir'd to give place to the Champ: who began with such Advantage to prosecute the Knight of the Burning Sword, who was nevertheless no way astonish'd, but with the little Shield, that was left him, parry'd sometimes to the blows of the other, or so devoutly kept aside, that he would not be injured: Hebertsels considering, that at the length he should be overcome, he bow'd down his head, and slipping under Gandalfs, push'd him in such manner, that he fell backwards to the ground with such force, that his Sword flew out of his hand, which

the



the Knight is nimble, that before Candaise had meant to put the spear in his foot on his Chest, and thrust his Arms into it.

### CHAP. XXXIX.

How the Knight of the burning Sword sent King Amadis the head of Candaise, by the Damsel Macetta, and permitted the Body to be carried into the Beggary of Balan, to be buried.

The Giant then being dead, as you have heard, Gradanart came to the Knight of the burning Sword, and weeping for great Joy said to him: Alas, my Corampanion, in what Discontent was I ere while for the Misfortune, that befell you: I beseech you, dear Sir, tell me, if you are much wounded.

Not to death, answered the Knight, at least, in my Opinion.

And as he said this, Calcores and Madasima came and threw themselves at his feet, saying: O good Knight! We are now so poor and weak, that we have nothing in our power to present you: but may God vouchsafe, by his grace, to reward so great a Benefit, as we this day receive thro' your Means.

My Friends, anst'rd he, raising them up, give thanks to your son Balan, for whom I would do more, and let us go and refresh our selves; for I think, you have as much need as I.

Then they entered into the Forests, where the Servants of Calcores, who had been long kept Prisoners by the Giant, were immediately released. And because the Knight of the burning Sword was wounded in several places, he was discomf'd, as his wound testified by an honourable Old man, who was very well skill'd in the Art of Chirurgery: wheresoever, whilst he was in cure, he resolv'd to find Candaise's head, so King Amadis, and to acquaint him in what manner they had sought it.

This Charge was committed to Macetta, one of Madasima's Women, whom the Knight of the burning Sword fully instructed, in what she had to do: And if you shall not, said he, find the King, address your self to the Queen from Balan, who, to keep his word sends her this present. But if the King is there, present him with the most humble Respects of my Companions Gradanart and my self, beseeching him from us to pardon our fault in not returning to him according to our promise. Which 'twas impossible for us to do, the Storm driving us, whether we would or no, into this Island.

How, said Calcores, have you then found King Amadis out of Great Britain: I beseech you, Sir Knight, relate us this Adventure.

Which he willingly did, wherat Calcores and Madasima thank'd him with all their hearts. And the same day the Damsel embark'd, carrying in a Box Candaise's head, very glad of having an Opportunity to acquaint the Queen with the good News of the King, if he were yet absent, and so let Balan understand the Deliberance of his Parents,

Parents, for whose Tugues he was much afflicted: and the Knight of the burning Sword, perceiving his being thus separated from Lucella by the Fortune, you have understood.

### CHAP. XL.

How the Emperor of Great Britain, and his Company came to the coast of Great Britain, where they landed, and went to the Kay, kept by the Dutches of Babory Knight, with whom Perion of Gaul had a Combat, which was separated by the Dutches of Babory, the Knight of the Kay known.



The Ship, in which the Emperor was, accompany'd as you have heard, continu'd at Sea, after the Departure of the Knight of the burning Sword, for the Space of three Weeks, without daring, or their knowing, towards what Countrey it shou'd: But at the end of that time, one Monday early in the Morning, it came to lurge along a Coast near a great Forest. The Emperor and his Company were very glad to have an Opportunity of going ashore, and refreshing themselves, particularly for the Refreshing they had of sweet Water: For that of their Cisterns was almost consumed, and their Horses to be let ashore, themselves also landing, and commanding them, whom they appointed to look to their Cisterns, not to part thence, till they had taken from them. Then the Knights arm'd themselves, and combating their Enemies, well

accounted, and maskt, that they might not be known, entering into the thickets of the Wood. In this Company were the Emperor, the King of Sicily, Livart, Perion, Olorius, the Prince Elinus, Adariel, Suycius, and Abies of Ireland; Maria Mother to the Duke of Ortilens, and the Count of Alastrum, who all, desiring to find some Body, that might tell them what Country they were in, followed a beaten Path, in which they had not Travel'd long, when they saw coming to them a Damsel, riding on a black Hackney, who say'd to behold them pass, and in their passing, saluted them, saying to them: Perhaps, my good Lords, you are going to try your selves against the Devil that keeps a Kay here-by, for the sake of a Damsel, who accompanies him, and there are already six Months, that he has perform'd this enterprize, in which he has behav'd himself so valiantly, that his Renown is spread through all this Country, so that there is no longer any Knight who dares Attempt to fight him, he has vanquish'd so many.

When the King of Sicily heard her speak, he said to the Emperor: My Lord, assure your self that we are in Great Britain, and the Knight, of whom she talks so much, is he, of whom I have heretofore told you.

'Tis true, said the Damsel, that you are in Great Britain: and I advise you to take another way, if you will not be molested.

At this Counsel all the Knights felt a laughing, resolving nevertheless to pass on. Wherefore they recommended them to the keeping of our Lord, leading them very Joyful for their Arrival so opportunely in a Country, where they had not only to be well receiv'd by King Amadis, but also to have the pleasure of seeing the Jests, held by the Knight, Master of the Dutchels, against whom Perion desiring to try himself, besought the Emperor and the rest to let him have the first Counte, which was granted him. And passing on, they came to a cross way, where they were join'd by a Lady, mounted on a very handsome Palfrey. She was cloth'd in black Silk, and had her face so cover'd, that there was nothing but her Eyes to be seen, she was accompanied by ten Knights, completely arm'd, and four very fair Damisels. She saluted them courteously, and they return'd her salutation, asking her, whether she was going?

My Lords, answer'd she, we are going to see the Wonders done by a Knight, who keeps a Kay hard by, and whose Renown is such, that I am come expressly from my Country to see him.

In truth, said the Emperor, we will then accompany you thither: for some of ours desire to try themselves against him.

In good time, answer'd the Lady, I am very glad of it, we shall see, whether 'tis true that is said of him.

As they were discoursing thus, they went out of the Forrest, and perceiv'd in the Plain, two Rich Towers, set up in a Circle of Trees, against one of which there were many Banners streaming, and under the shade was a Chair of State, in which was sitting a very fair Damisel, and near her a Knight completely arm'd, who seeing this Company

coming approach, set her immediately on a stout Stag, which two Esquires held by the Reins; which done, she rode directly to the Emperor and his Company, and said to them: Sirs, the Dutchels of Saboz, my Mistress, sends you word, if you resolve to pass the Kay, it must be on the same conditions, that all others do: which she declar'd to them.

Perion, who was the first to enter into play, took the word before all the rest, and answer'd her: Damisel, we are come on no other occasion, and therefore 'tis not needful to say any more of it: wherefore return to your Mistress, and tell her, that we will keep the Law which is establish'd.

So much the better, said she, and, suddenly turning her Horse, went back.

In the mean time the Knight of the Key, knowing that Perion was making himself ready to fight, charg'd a great Lance, and covering himself with his Shield, march'd slowly to meet him: but approaching the Career, they ran to stiff one against the other, that their Staves flew in thunders, themselves meeting with Shields, Bodies and Heads, so that they both came to the Ground, and their Horses under them. Nevertheless they got up again, and putting their hands to their Swords, began to assault each other so outrageously, that they well shew'd themselves to be no Wretches in that work. For this first Assault continued above two hours without their taking breath, or without its being known, who had the better of the twofold: and their Shields were so hack'd, and their Arms so endamaged, that not being able to resist any longer the edge of their Swords, the pure blood was seen to trickle down from their Bodies to the Grass.

The Dutchels who personally beheld her Knight, chang'd colour every moment, because the longer Perion continu'd the more brisk and courageous he appear'd, making himself so much braved by his Enemy, that he thought he never found any Man, except the Knight of the Burning Sword, that put him to much to it: and for this cause praying within himself, he said: O GOD, who hast so long kept my Honour, abandon me not, I beseech thee, to this devil, who will dishonour me if he can. A devil certainly he is, though he has the shape of a Man: for if he had been other, he could not have treated me so rudely: wherefore, permit me not, O Lord, in five days, which remain to accomplish my Oath in the keeping this Pass, to fall into any shame, or danger of my body.

Now Perion thought no less on his side: Nevertheless he would rather have shew'd never to have been dishonoured, than to be so unhappily vanquish'd, and that in Great Britain: the thoughts of which so enrag'd him, that he redoubled his blows, whereof the Dutchels Knight made little Account: nor could any Advantage be discern'd more on the one side than on the other, tho' they were both so dy'd with blood, that their harness, before bright, was become red, which very much displeased Livart, who thought, 'twould be impossible, Perion should not have an ill Issue of it. And by this time he lookt on him with a pitious eye, which Perion perceiv'd: and thinking, that he accus'd him of faint-heartedness, he put

with shame, mix'd with Anger, he lift up his Arm, and thinking to strike his Enemy with all his force on the head, his Sword cutted so far into his Armouries Shield, that it cleav'd it, the point only reaching to his Forehead, where it wounded in such manner, that he stagger'd two or three Paces backward. This, when the Dutche's saw, the chang'd Colour, which was perceiv'd by her Knight, who, desirous to recover his Reputation, and rejoice her, who was almost dead at the sight of his misfortune, drew at Perion, giving him such a blow on the helmet, that, if it had not been one of the best in the world, it had been infallibly gone. But by misfortune, his Sword brake, leaving nothing in his hand but the hilt: yet through the great fierceness of the blow, the Barre of Perions Helmet brake, so that his head remain'd unarm'd, and he was faine to clap one hand on the Ground to keep himself from falling. But rising himself up, he took his Sword in both hands, and was ready to give his Enemy the like, when the Dutche's, whom they had in the way, returned by to hit a Company, alighted from her Horse, and catching hold of Perion, stop him, saying: Ah! ah! my Lord, it is enough! for GOD's sake, forbear: for he, whom you are going to kill, is your Son Don Florelus, and she that holds you is his Mother.

Perion, much astonish'd at her Words, suddenly knew her to be the Dutche's of Austria, who came to seek him in Trebison, to defend her Land, which he had conquer'd for her, as you have been told in the story Book of Amadis of Gaul, whether he then receiv'd great Joy. And nevertheless, as if he had been in the Presence of his Lady Griseliera, he could not forbear to blush, fearing she would be discontented at it: But finding Florelus to be so good a Knight, that there was not known any Difference between them, he perswaded himself, she would easily forgive him this Fault, Florelus then understanding, by his Mother's Discourse, that he was Son of Perion, was the joyfullest man in the world: He had indeed formerly told him of it, but he had never seen him, and therefore receiv'd as soon as his Enterprize was finish'd, to go and seek him where-ever he might be. Whitherfore seeing himself deliver'd from this Captivity, and the Offence, he had committed, he threw his Helmet on the Ground, and kneeling down to kiss his Hands, said to him with Tears in his Eyes: Alas! My Lord, pardon me this Fault, for which I am certainly very chasteis'd, tho' I esteem my Wounds as nothing, and less the Resistance, I have made against you: For if there is any Goodness in me, it proceeds from you, who are my Father.

Perion, being unexpectably glad, took him up, and kissing, and Embracing him, answer'd him thus: In good Faith Son, where there is no Offence, there is no need of Pardon: And moreover 'tis I, that have failed in having thro' Gayety of Heart, foolishly undertaken that which I might well have left alone: But if I have done it, I heartily repent it, since by the great Prowess, which is in you, every one may know, that the worst of the Combat was on my side. And therefore 'tis reasonable, that my Shield and Name should accompany the Rest you have conquer'd, and that my Perion should henceforth be employ'd in the Service

of the Dutche's, which you have. Go now, and pay your Respects to the Emperor of Trebison, your Cousin Liegeant, and the other Knights, to make them all Partakers of our Joy.

My Lord, said the Dutche's of Austria, never was woman more discontented, than I have been for a time: For he left me, and my Country, without taking leave of me, to go, as I have since understood, into Savoy, whither I was already on my way to follow him, when News was brought me, that he was in these parts, where I have found him opportunely, both for you and him.

Madam, answer'd Florelus, I beseech you to pardon me.

And as he would have made his Excuses, the Emperor and the other Knights, having heard and seen things, as they pass'd between the Father, Mother, and Son, were alighted, and intending no longer to conceal themselves, came to them: the Emperor saluting the Dutche's of Austria, and saying to her: Madam, you have reason to be contented with your Voyage, for without your so seasonable Arrival, the flower of your friends had this day been in wonderful danger.

The Dutche's made him a very love Reverence, then the Emperor embrac'd Florelus, as did also Lisvar, the King of Sicily, and all the Rest.

I leave you to imagine the Joy and Mixture the Dutche's of Savoy receiv'd by this Knowledge, especially when she had understood, that her Friend was don't Perion, to whom she had left herself, and carrying in her Arms, wrap up in a Scarf, the Rich Sword, Shield, and Helmet, which were as you have been told, to be the Reward of him that should vanquish at the Bay, she presented them to him, saying: Sir, receive these Arms, which are justly due to you, having done so well against our Knight.

Madam, answer'd she, it well becomes you, who are a most courteous and beautiful Princess, to say as you do: and 'tis my duty to return you my most humble thanks, and to deliver you also my Shield, according to the Custom, to be enroll'd with those, who are Oblig'd to serve you.

Then he took it from off his Back, and offer'd it to her. But she humbling herself before him, said to him: Sir, your Shield is your own, and that's others also, with the Knight that conquer'd them.

And I yet more at your Command, answer'd Perion.

When the Queen of Sicily and Lucella, who had hitherto kept themselves on horseback, approach, being just alighted, to have part of it is pleasure. They were receiv'd by the two Dutche's with very great Respect, principally Lucella by Florelus's Mistress, who, wondering at her extreme Beauty, said within her self, that she had never seen any Woman, who came near her. Then they went into the Duches of Savoy's Tent, where the two Knights, Father and Son, were disarm'd, and Chirurgions came to visit them. And because their Cure took up a long time, the Emperor sent for Balan from the Ship, where he remain'd sorrowful, and discontented.

intend, for the Impediment of his Parents; of whom, if it please Heav'n, he shall soon have such News as will rejoice him.

## CHAP. XLI.

How Alquifa went to acquaint Queen Diana with the News, that Perion and Lisbart were in her Country.

**W**hen Alquifa, who had seen the End of their Combat, and the beginning of their Peace, understood that Iorelus was Son to King Perion, he thought he would go and carry the first News of it to King Amadis: and his Queen: and therefore without saying a word to any of her Company, he stole away, and set forward straight for London. But in the way, he was assur'd, that the King had not of a long time been in the Country, which had so discontented Oriana, that she did nothing night and day but weep. Yet Alquifa did not therefore forbear to proceed on her Journey, but about Sun-set, reach'd the Town. Then she went up straight to the Palace, and because she was cloth'd in a strange sort of Rags, several followed her, till she met the Warden of Denmark, who knew her, and with stretch'd forth Arms went to receive her, saying to her: Ah, my dear Friend Alquifa, you are very welcome: what good Adventure brings you now into these parts?

You shall know, said she, when you have introduc'd me to the Queen, who will be pleas'd with the News I bring her.

Then she took her by the hand, and entering into the Queens Chamber, they found her at Prayers, having in that manner spent all her time since the Loss of the King. The Queen, who knew Alquifa, thinking that she came not without occasion, felt a great Curiosity in her heart: wherefore she rose up, and having gave her a sitting Reception, enquir'd by little, from what Country she came, and whether she had heard any thing of Perion and Lisbart, who were given for lost: Which, said she, so much troubles me, that I am ready to dye.

Madam, answer'd she, I have not seen your Majesty, since their being in these parts, where I assure you, they still are, being this day arriv'd, where they have found an increase of kindred.

Ah good GOD! said the Lady, is it possible, that my Children are alive, and in Great Britain? Ah, my dear Friend, tell me where, and who this new kinsman is, you speak of?

Madam, answer'd she, the Knight, who has so long kept the Pass at the Key for love of the Dutchess of Savoy, was this day found to be Son to Perion, and the Dutchess of Austria, who is arriv'd in this Country by the greatest Adventure in the world: for, had it not been for her, the Father and Son were in danger of Death.

Then

When she related to her the Combat that had been between them, from the beginning to the end: and also how the Emperour of Trebissond, the King of Sicily, the Queen, the Infanta Luella, Prince Olorius, and several others were in the Dutchesss Tent, with Lisbart and Perion.

Alas! said the Queen, this is good News. I beseech GOD to grant me the Grace, that I may soon hear the like of the King.

The Poole of this ran immediately through the whole Palace, so that it came to the Cars of Arban King of North-wales, Angriod's Extravaur, and several other good Knights, all which came to the Queen, who made themselves partakers of her Pleasure: nor did Alquifa forget to tell them, in what a wonderful manner the Emperour and his Company had been disenchanted by the Knight of the burning Sword. Certainly, said the Queen, I did not think, he would ever have done me so great a Favour.

In good faith, Madam, answer'd Alquifa, he is so virtuous, and so good conditioned, that nothing but happiness is to be expected from him.

And will he not come to see us? said the Queen.

No, Madam, answer'd Alquifa: for he was separated from us by a strange Adventure.

Ah GOD! reply'd the Queen, how am I displeas'd at it! For, though at first he gave us much trouble, yet will I not fail to honour him, since he has done, what you assure us.

Madam, said Alquifa, you will, as I think, soon have the others here, among whom is the King of Sicilys daughter, who is the fairest and discreetest Princess, you ever saw, and by whom these Enchantments were in part brought to an End.

Madam, said King Arban, it is then my opinion, that I go (if you please) to them to morrow, and treat them in your Name to come to London: for I am sure, the King would be much displeas'd, if the Emperour and the King of Sicily should not be received, as the greatness of their Quality deserves.

I beseech you do so, answer'd the Queen, and take with you such persons from hence, as you shall think good. Tell them from me, that the Kings Absence shall not hinder me from giving them the best Reception I can: and recommend me affectionately to their good Graces, especially to the Queen of Sicily, and the Infanta her Daughter. Tell my Children also, that they by no means delay to come and see me; and bring all the rest with them.

King Arban then parted the next day, and with a good Company of Knights and Esquires went to the Bay, where he found the Emperour with the rest, beating Water, to whom he related the Queens Message, insisting and requesting them in the best manner he could.

Certainly, said the Emperour, we would in no wise fail to good a Princess; but I doubt our Sick Men will not be able to remove, they are so exceedingly wounded. But let us go see them, and we shall know their Opinion.

Then

Then they went into the Pavilion, where Perion and Florelus were. Perion, who presently knew King Arban, stretching forth his Arms, embrac'd him, and ask'd him, whether the King and Queen were in good health.

My Lord, answer'd he, I can give you no account of the King, who is absent; but the Queen desires you and Livart to come and see her, as soon as possible you can, and to bring with you these Lords and Ladies.

To day, said Perion, it cannot be; but to morrow it may, and in the mean time I will cause a Litter to be made, to carry this wounded Knight and me. You will therefore return to her, with our Excuses and Recommendations; to her good Grace.

Therefore King Arban, after he had discours'd some time with him, and taking leave of the Emperor, return'd back to London, where he acquainted the Queen with the Answer of these Lords, that they would be with her the next day at Dinner. And for this cause, he commanded her richest Hangings to be put up, and her Palace to be adorn'd in the most Magnificent manner possible.

## CHAP. XLII.

Now the Emperor of Trebizond, and his Company came to London, to visit Queen Oriana: and of the Discourse, they had together.

**A**fter King Arban had left the Emperor and the rest at the Bay, the Dutchess of Savoy, knowing that they were all to part for London, gave Order for the making a Litter to carry Florelus and Perion. So they pass'd the Remainder of that day in all pleasure, and the next day every one of them took leave, except the two wounded Men, who were carry'd in Mens Arms, that they might not be too much shock'd by the war. And behind them came the Dutchess of Savoy in a great Chariot, cover'd with Cloth of Gold. At her Side hung the rich Sword and Shield, and roundabout her were the Shields of the vanquish'd Knights, and their Names underneath, for a Testimony of Florelus's Victory, and Triumph, which to please Perion, that he sent her his, paying her to put it in the rank with the others, or else he should be displeas'd.

She, who durst not refuse it, took it, and laid to the Squire, that brought it: My Friend, tell my Lord Perion, that I will obey him, since 'tis his pleasure; but I will put it in the place, it deserves.

Then she went for a Lance, to the head of which she caus'd the Shield to be fasten'd, and raised it up to the top of the Chariot, sending her own rich one, with the Sword, to hang at Perions Litter, who would not at first permit it, and in such Equipage, they enter'd into the City of London, there going forth to meet them King Arban, Angriote d' Estravaux, with several Dukes, Counts, Barons, Knights and Esquires. Great was the Reception they gave each other, and the Honour, that was

done

done them at their Entrance into the Town. The Emperor led the Queen of Sicily, Olorius of Spain, the Infanta Lucella, and Livart Gradahlea, with which she was more content, than if Great Britain it self had lain to her by Surrecession. Balan entertain'd the Dutchess of Austria, but he was so melancholly, that he thought on nothing but having his leave to go and fight King Gandalfe: and in such order they alighted at the Palace, where the King of Sicily took the Dutchess of Savoy under the Arms for the sake of Florelus, whom he lov'd, and greatly esteem'd from the day they try'd themselves together, every one of the others led his, as you have been told.

Then came the Queen Oriana, clad in black Cloth, for the Absence of King Amadis, and at the Entrance of the Hall, gave them a very great and sumptuous Reception. With her were so many fair Ladies, and Damfels, and so richly adorn'd, that they seem'd rather Goddesses descend'd on the Earth, than Mortal Women. The Reverences then, Welcomes, Kisses, and Embraces on the one side and the other, being thus begun and ended, Queen Oriana address'd her self to the Infanta Lucella, and said to her:

Madam, as I have been given to understand, I have at this day by your Means my two Sons: You are more than welcome.

Madam, answer'd she, your Majesty is to give thanks only to one, who is at this time absent from this Company: Seeing the Goodness and high Prowess, that is in him, was the Cause of their being disenchant'd.

GOD, said the Queen grant me the Favor, that I may one day see him in the Presence of the King: For I am sure, he will honor him, as he deserves: And as for me, I shall all my Life be thankful to you both, for what you have done.

During this Discourse, Oriana took such Delight in beholding the very great beauty of Lucella, that she could not take her Eye from off her, when Livart came to pay her his Regards, presenting to her Gradahlea, whom he had formerly seen at Constantinople. 'T would be little to the purpose to acquaint you with the Discourse they had together, let it suffice, that they were all highly satisfied with the good Reception, and honour, that was given them. And because Perion and Florelus had been conducted into their Chamber, without entering into the Hall, she went to visit them, and embracing them one after the other, she said to them.

Alas! my Children, over dear has this first knowledge cost you, I could heartily wish it were GOD's Pleasure, that you were in better health, than I see you. And you Son Florelus, what an Injury have you done your Mother in concealing your self so many days? Indeed you have much offended me.

Madam, answer'd he, I beseech you to pardon me: For my keeping my self thus conceal'd, was the more to honor the King, and your Majesty, to whom I durst not own a Relation; not having done any thing, that might render me worthy of such an Alliance: Especially considering the Goodness and Prowess of my Father, so much esteem'd amongst the best Knights in the world.

On my Faith, said the Queen, my Friend, you are such, that my Son Perion ought to praise GOD, and think himself happy for having so compleat a Person to his Son.

Indeed, so I do, Madam, answer'd Perion.

And because the Tables were covered, and Dinner ready, she left them in the keeping of their Chirurgions, and went to the Emperor, and the rest in the great Hall, where they were magnificently, and in abundance served with all sorts of Delicacies,

### CHAP. XLIII.

How Macetta arriv'd in the Court of King Amadis, with the head of King Gandalf, and of the News she brought thither, which made Balan remove, and take his way to the Island of the Vermillion Tower, where the Knight of the Burning Sword and Gladamart then were.

**T**his Noble Company being at Table, making the best Cheer they could devise, except Balan, who thought on nothing but going to fight his Enemy, and deliver his Father and Mother from the cruel Prison, in which they were detain'd, there entered into the Hall a Damself, carrying in her hands the head of a Giant, which she held by the hair. This Woman was soon known by Balan: for 'twas Macetta, to whom the Knight of the burning Sword had delivered King Gandalf's Head, to present it to King Amadis. Balan, not having understood the good Fortune detain'd in the Island of the Vermillion Tower, but doubting, lest through his long Absence, the Tyrant had slain Calceotes, and that these were the signs of it, found his Heart began to beat, when Macetta ask'd aloud, which of them was King Amadis.

Damself, answered the Emperor, he is not here at this time, for which we are much troubled.

It may well be, said Macetta, that he is not yet arrived, but his return will not be much longer delayed: and in the meantime I pray you to shew me, which of these Ladies is Queen Oriana, to whom, in the Kings Absence, I am commanded to address my self.

My friend, answered the Queen, I am she: would you have any thing with me?

Madam, answered the Damself, the Knight of the burning Sword, the most accomplished of all men this day living, sends you this Head of the King of the Sagittary Island, to acquit Balan, son of Calceotes, of the promise, he had made. And so let you understand how all goes, this Valiant Knight, desirous to amend the Wrong and great Outrage, which this wicked King Gandalf did to Calceotes and Gladamart, whose Servant I am, had the most cruel and wonderful fight with him, that ever was seen: but in the end, GOD, the true Justice, has given the Victory

to the Just, who has so well abated the pride of the Tyrant, as you may see, and they are now at liberty, whom he has so long detained Prisoners, all which in great humility kiss your hands.

This News indeed very much pleased all that heard it, who more and more praised the Powers of the Knight of the burning Sword, and amongst the rest Balan, who in his heart, besought Almighty GOD, to give him an opportunity sometimes to acknowledge to him the favour, he had done him.

Then the Queen answered Macetta: In good faith, Damself, the King and I are bound to the good Knight, whom I heartily wish in this Company: for Balan is now delivered from the great pain, and his promise well performed.

Damself, said the King of Sicily, can you tell me any thing of a Knight, who carried away by force a Damself, to follow whom the Knight you speak of left our Vessel.

Yes indeed Sir, answered she, that Knight forced neither Lady nor Damself, but went with her, you mention, to fight a Traytor who had killed her Father and Mother. And you may be pleased to understand, that it was King Amadis, who was never in such danger, had it not been for the Assistance given him by the Knight of the Burning Sword and Gladamart, who arrived there very Opportunely.

Then she began to relate all that had passed, which gave both wonder and joy to the whole Assembly, who, to be brief, concluded that the Knight of the burning Sword might well be filed the most Excellent Person in the World: at which Lucella was not in the least discontented, thinking her self exceedingly happy to be loved by him, as she assuredly knew he was. But when Queen Oriana heard that the King was in the great Sicilades, he dispatched the same day Count Gandalf with a stout Ship, to go and see for him. And the Head of Gandalf was at the Request of Balan set up over the principal Gate of the Palace, to be seen by every one. This done, Balan, having taken leave of the Emperor, and the whole Assembly, he embarked with Macetta, going straight to the Island of the Vermillion Tower, not without being both requested by Lucella, to present an infinity of humble Recommendations to the Knight of the burning Sword, and to desire him, that, to accomplish the Promise made to the King her Father, he would come to them with all the speed he possibly could, assuring him, he should be well received, and as one, whom he much longed to see. Macetta willingly took this, and very well performed it at her Arrival, which was some days after. During which, Oriana besought the Emperor and the rest to stay till the Return of King Amadis, whom she highly expected: which they granted her, at least for a Month. But Fortune called him else where, as you shall understand.



## CHAP. XLIV.

How the Giant Lersan of the Rock came to the great Siclades, where King Amadis gave him to Wife Malfadea, and then turn'd back for Great Britain.

Four days did King Amadis stay in the great Siclades after the Departure of Gramart and the Knight of the burning Sword, expecting them from hour to hour, but seeing he had no News of them, he became much troubled, nevertheless he was well satisfied that it proceeded not from any Fault of theirs, but from the Sea, which was swollen with the Winds and Tempests that arose on it. Now Malfadea looked so carefully to him, that he began to amend, and his wounds to close and consolidate: so that within three Weeks he was wholly cured, and ready to bear Arms and take his Journey. And it was in a Resolution to return, when there Arrived in the Port a Ship, in which there sailed several Knights, who accompanied a young Giant, a Valiant Man, named Lersan of the Rock, to called for a strong Castle: he held an Island, situated on the Top of an high Rock. Now Lersan had been adberred of the Terafon, committed by Malfaron, and for the Love he bare Malfadea, undertook to revenge her injury, and restore her to her Country: and to do this, he swore never to rest till he had defeated Malfaron, and those that belong'd to him. For the performance whereof having prepared himself, he came into the great Siclades, with a good Troop of young Knights, and other Persons. Which being come to the knowledge of King Amadis, he sent one of Malfadeas People, to see what he wanted. And by this Lersan of the Rock understood the Traitors Death, which gave him no small Pleasure, though his Joy would yet have been greater, had he himself Arrived time enough to execute this Revenge for her: wherefore he gave the Messenger this Answer.

Friend, recommend me affectionately to your Mistress, and tell her that I parted from my Country, to chastise Galtaron: and nevertheless, since another has prevented me, request her, that I may at least see her before my Removal, which will partly be a satisfaction to me, for the pains I have taken for her sake.

The Messenger returned, and did as he was commanded, at which Amadis and Malfadea were so pleased, that they sent back to tell him he should be very welcome. Then he set forth towards them in good Order, and they gave him a suitable Reception. Lersan would gladly have known the Knight that fought Malfaron, and therefore enquired of Malfadea whether he were still in the Country.

The King, who was present, answered that 'twas he, and desired to know why he asked for him.

Sir Knight, said Lersan, for no other Reason, but to serve and honour you: for besides the favour you have done my Lady, by undertaking so much in her Quarrel, I have understood that you have restor'd into her hands this land, which belongs to her, for which I give you very great Thanks, and beseech you, that for your sake, and for

for the Love, I have born her all my Life, you will pray her to love me, and receive me for her Husband.

Amadis, not knowing the Damfels Mind, could not tell, what to answer: But he took up the Discourse, saying: Indeed my Lord Lersan, I have long known the Affection, you bear me, so that if the King commands me, he and you shall be obey'd.

Since you both consent, answer'd Amadis, I will not contradict it, let us go to dinner, that we may have the better Courage to perfect, and give an End to this Beginning.

Then were the Tables cover'd, and they were serv'd with a Banquet of rich Victuals as could be gotten, during which the Discourse grew so hot, that before Night came on, the Contract was finish'd, and they lay together to the great Contentment of them both. And the King staid there till the first day of the next Week, when he embark'd, taking leave of the new marry'd Couple, who would have given him a great Train to conduct him: But he refus'd all, except the two Partners with whom he set sail, launching forth into the Deep.

## CHAP. XLV.

How King Amadis, sailing thro' the Mediterranean Sea, to enter into the Terafon, met Queen Burca, Wife to Hagaban, King of Saba, who was in quest of the Knight of the Burning Sword, to defend her against the false Accusation, which Hagaban, had made of their Loves.

King Amadis, being parted from the Port of the great Siclades in the Custance of his two Mariners, pass'd incontinently the Egean Sea, at the going out of which there join'd them a light Ship, wherein there was a Pavilion of Cloth of Gold, and under it a very rich Field-bed, on which reposed a Morish Queen having a Croton on her head, cloth'd besides only with coarse Gray, and appearing exceedingly discontented. At her feet sat two Damfels, leaning their Heads on this left Arm, like Women, oppress'd with Grief: And by her side, were two black Knights, so weak, that they were even double with Age, and notwithstanding arm'd with Arms of great Value. The King was in some sort amaz'd, yet he surrondly satir'd them, and one of them, returning his Salutation, said to him.

Good Champion, GOD give you a favourable Adventure: Can you tell us any News of a Person, nam'd the Knight of the Burning Sword?

The King in whom the Desire of knowing, what they would hate with him, increased more and more, answer'd: My Lords, he parted from me not many days since, and 'twould be difficult for me to tell you at this time, where he is, and more difficult, as I believe for you to find him. But so far as much as I greatly love and esteem him, if you please to acquaint me with the Business, you have with him, I will endeavour

endeavor to tell you farther, what I know of him. And if I can, there is nothing how grievous soever, that I will not in his stead undertake, to do him Pleasure and Service.

On this assurance, answer'd the old man, and also because you seem to me a valiant man, I will satisfy you. Understand, Sir Knight, that this Lady, whom you see lying here, is Queen of Saba, Wife to King Agabam, whose near Kinsmen we are. This King taking Pleasure to make use of white Persons, some of his gave him about ten or twelve years since a Child, call'd the Gentleman of the burning Sword, for the Representation of a Sword, which he has naturally printed on his Stomach, red as blood, with certain white Characters, which have not yet been understood by any one, as we know of. The King did him so much Honor, as to breed him up with his Son Fulutin, and gave them both Order of Knighthood, so that instead of Gentleman he is at this day nam'd the Knight of the burning Sword. We are now seeking him, and to find him, are parted from Saba in the Equipage you see. And to the end you may the better understand the Affair, this Knight of the burning Sword being yet in Saba a Gentleman, Son to one of the greatest Princes of Morona, acquainted the King, that he, of whom I speak, committed Treason against his Majesty abusing the Queen Berura, who is here present, at which the King exceedingly displeas'd, thought to ascertain this unworthy Act, by surprizing them together; but he was deceiv'd: For the Knight of the burning Sword was advertiz'd of it, and absented himself, so that since we have had no News of him And, for this cause the King commanded the Queen to be taken, and kept strictly, till such time as he had recover'd the Adulterer, to burn them in the same Fire. Nevertheless seeing, that this cruel sentence had been already many dayes delay'd, and that the other was no longer in his Countrey, he resolv'd to put it in Execution against the Queen.

But she offer'd to prove her innocence by a Knight, who should fight Mandan: For so was her Accuser nam'd. To which the King would in no wise have given Ear, had not we, who are his Uncles, and many other princes of his Blood, mov'd with Compassion, perswaded him to grant it: Which being come to Mandan's knowledge he came with a great Bravado to remonstrate, that he would not only defend his Assertion, but would bring a Cousin of his, that should maintain it to the Death, and that they two together would enter the Field against two others, such as the Queen could find. And having so said, he threw down his pledge, but, tho' the Queen has many great kindred, yet none advanc'd to take it up, nor for any doubt of her Innocence, but for the great Prowess, that is said to be in the two Assailants. Then was Prince Fulutin so sorry, that he took up the pledge and Offered himself alone to fight in person for the Justification of his Mother. Which they refus'd, saying, that they would never put hand to Sword against the only Son of their Sovereign Lord. This was the good Lady, disfigure in a manner of all Remedy,

medy, imploring with join'd hands the Kings Mercy, with six months time, to seek some stranger, that would defend her, since there was not any one in Saba and Morona, that offer'd himself. And tho' Agabam at first seem'd deaf, yet importun'd by us two, he in fine granted her Request, on condition we should accompany her whither he would have us, and at six month's end, on pain of Death bring her back again. Which we solemnly swore to do.

Then we caus'd this Ship to be equipp'd, and from the Pile entred into this Sea, where we have been already above these twelve weeks, enquiring with great Diligence for the Knight of the burning Sword, in whom lies all the Queens hopes: Because he alone knows better, how this Affair goes, than all other men besides. And this good Lady, well knowing his great Courage, makes no doubt, but as soon as he shall have News of it, he will leave all things to defend this Quartel. Now have you at length understood the Occasion of our Voyage: therefore we affectionately desire you, if you know any Remedy to teach it us: Otherwise if the gods provide not for us, this good Lady is in very great danger, both of her Honor and Life.

During the Discourse the Queen so wept and lamented, that the hardest Heart in the world would have been touch'd with Compassion, and it fell into King Amadis's Heart, that she was really innocent: Which made him suddenly think, that he had a very good occasion to requite the Knight of the burning Sword for the Assistance, he had receiv'd of him in the great Sicadesy, and for this cause he said to the old Man.

If the Queen will swear to me on her Soul, that she is fairly accus'd by Mandan, I will go with you, and fight him: For perhaps you will not in ten years find him, whom you seek, and in the mean time her Affairs would go very ill.

Ah! ah! Sir Knight answer'd the Queen: I swear to you by the high Name of Jupiter, that we never so much as thought of the Discourtesy, with which we are charg'd.

Madam, said Amadis I believe your Word, have therefore good Hopes in GOD: For he is just, and will do you Justice, if you are just.

Then were the two old Knights very joyful for having thus mortned their Journey, and so they found a Knight, that would fight Mandan, and maintain the Queens Right who very affectionately thanking him, as did also her two Uncles, besought him to come into their Ship.

I will do it answer'd he on the Protestation, you all three make me, that the Accusers Quarrel is false: 'tis also very requisite, that you have more hopes in your good Right, than in my strength; Otherwise thinking to preserve you, Madam, said he to the Queen, I should ruin you, and my self also.

Alas, Sir Knight, said she, I beseech you to believe that knowing the good Will you have to defend me, if my Cause were in the least dubious, I would not hazard your life for the Preservation of mine own, which is already so troublesome to me, that I esteem it less than nothing.

And in this belief answer'd Amadis, I will take the Charge of it: And desire you not to wonder at what I have remonstrated to you, seeing every Knight who enters into the Field of Battle, greatly fails, if he goes not with assurance, that the Right is on his side.

That I swear to you again, said the Queen.

'Tis sufficient answer'd Amadis, let us go when you please.

Then he went into the Ship, and discharging his Bark, chang'd his Name, calling himself to be call'd the Vermillion Knight, because his Arms were all red, being those which Alquist sent him, when he embark'd after his Discontentment, to go to the Siege of Constantinople. Thus those of Saba return'd back, discoursing together of the most agreeable Matters, they could, till they entered into the Mouth of the Nile, along which they sail'd, and went ashore at Terrocin; where the Queen call'd to Amadis,

Good Vermillion Knight, we are now in the Country, where I hope in our gods, in you, and in the good Right I have, that you will make the wicked, who accuse me, acknowledge their Treason: For 'tis not above a dayes Journey from hence to Saba, where we shall find the Court.

So much the better Madam, answer'd he.

Now the Citizens were incontinently advertis'd of their Princess's Return, and the King, he brought with her: Wherefore they went to receive her, and do her Honour: For he was greatly lov'd of them all for her Virtue. And for this Cause they presented her Boyles, and what was necessary for her going to the King. Before which, as soon as they were come into Saba, his two old Uncles presented Baruca, and the Orange Knight. Magadan, & the Lords of his Court wondering at the Queens's sudden Return, and yet more at him, who would fight the two Knights, that accus'd her, began to cast their Eyes on Maudan, to see, what Countenance he kept, when Baruca brake forth into this following Discourse to the King.

Sir, to shew you, that the Traytor, whom I see here present, has unjustly, falsely, and disloyally accus'd me of Adultery, I present you this Knight, who, if it please our gods, will to perform his Duty, that my Innocency shall be verifi'd, and the wicked Accuser punish'd according to his Desert.

Madam, answer'd the King, if your Knight does so much for you, you will be exceedingly oblig'd to him. Let him come forward then, and declare with his own Mouth, what he has undertaken.

King Magadan, said Amadis then, because I have understood, that the Accusation, which is brought against this Noble Lady, was invented with the greatest Malice in the world, I am ready to fight the Traytors, to and prove against them, by force of Arms, that they have falsly, and maliciously accus'd her, and that in all the Evil, they have said of her, and the Knight of the burning Sword, they have ly'd in their Reports.

As soon as he finish'd this Discourse, his Maudan step forward, and holding his Collar by the hand, answer'd with great Boldness: By my Head, poor Stranger,

ger, thou art mightily deceiv'd, thinking thus to save the Queen, who deserves to be burnt, that she may serve for an Example, not only to the noble Ladies of Saba, but to those of the whole Earth: For 'tis certain, and we will maintain it, that she has offended against the King by the Adultery, which the Wretch, who is fl'd, and she have committed together. And because thou art so forward, I tell thee, that thou thyself ly'st, and that you both deserve the Fire, or else to be drawn by four Horses thro' the street of this Town.

Ah Villain, answer'd he in a great Rage, if thou knowest as well how to fight, as to rail, thou must be a brave fellow: Nevertheless one thing persuades me, that thou art no such, since to second thee in so wicked an Act, thou tak'st as honest a man as thyself. Thus art you both nothing worth, and against both will I maintain the words, I have spoken before the King's Majesty, and so many Lords here present; and here is my Pledge to defend it in open Combat, and that presently, if it please the King.

Then he stretch'd forth the fore-part of his Armour; which Maudan took hold of, and pull'd so roughly to him, that King Amadis was ready to fall, at which he was so displeas'd, that putting his hand to his Sword, he was about to draw, had not the Consideration of the Place, where he was, with-held him, as also that King Magadan concern'd himself in it. And knowing, the wrong and injury, the other had done him, spake thus to Maudan in great Wrath:

How now? Is it fit for you to be so presumptuous in my Presence? By all our gods, if I take you in hand, I will make you repent it: Be gone, and never offer to contest so much any more in my sight. Let the Combat be to-morrow, as this stranger has requested, to whom I swear on the Faith and Word of a King, I will cause such exact Justice to be done, that he shall have no Cause to complain.

Then he rose up, and went very angrily into the Chamber with Eudorin, and the others, that were most intimate with him: In the mean time Maudan and his Collin returned home, the Vermillion Knight also retiring himself in the Company of those, who had brought him, with great Honour and good Entertainment, expecting the Time appointed for the Combat.

## CHAP. XLVI.

How King Amadis fought Maudan, and his Cousin Astarc, whom he defeated, and then embark to return into the North.



**N**OW the Story says, that Amadis armed himself betimes the next day, debou-  
ty beseeching GOD, that he would be pleased to preserve him from the Dan-  
ger, into which he was entering, as he had several times done, especially saving the  
Judgment of Buruca's Quarrel, whom, that he might the better defend, one of the  
Kings Uncles sent him by an Squire a very Stately Steed, on which he mounted.  
And to conduct him to the Field, there came Seniel, one of the Judges, whom King  
Magadan sent thither, accompanied by the Hundred Knights. So Seniel bare his  
Banner, and the two Old Dukes his Helmet and Shield. Thus they marcht to-  
gether in good Order to the Place, appointed for the Combat, which when they had rid  
whice round with the sound of Trummers and Clarions, they placed him at one end,  
under a Pavilion, expecting the two Assaultants. Maudan and Azaruc, who in like  
manner entered a little after into the Lists, without which, a little aside, there was a

great Fire kindled, and near to it the Queen, with some Gentlemen, appointed for  
her Guard, and behind her the Executioner, ready to perform his Office, if the Vi-  
cilian Knight should be vanquish'd. But Buruca had so good, and so assur'd a Con-  
fiance, that every one play'd for her, regarding her innocent, and wrongfully accus'd.  
To the which, the better to persuade them, she wore that day all the most precious  
Ornaments, she had. So he had on the Crown and Diadem, according to the Cu-  
stom of Seba, which arguments her Champions Courage, that he thought long,  
till the Herald gave notice for the beginning of the Combat. Which was done soon  
after, for by the Command of Magadan, Maudan and Azaruc being on the one side,  
accompanied with two Counts their Kinsmen, who serv'd them for Sureties, and the  
Vermilion Knight on the other, between the two old men, who had brought him thither;  
a King of Arms made Proclamation aloud, that none should be so daring, or  
presumptuous, for any Good, or Evil, that might befall the Combatants to give  
them any sign, by any Word, Action, or otherwise, either to incite, or discourage  
them: And this on pain of Death. Then he cry'd out with a loud voice these sever-  
al times in these following words: Let the good Combatants go and do their Duty.  
At this Cry the Sureties on both sides retir'd, and the Trummers began to sound.  
Then the two Chieftains set forward against the strange Knight, who ran directly a-  
gainst Maudan, whose Death he sought for the insolency, he had shewn at his present-  
ing him the Pledge of Battle, and met him so fiercely, that breaking his Staff even to  
the handle, a Truncheon stuck in his Shoulder-piece, and pierc'd him through with  
so much Pain, that he fell out of his Saddle to the Ground. Which Queen Buruca  
seeing, was very glad, tho' this Joy lasted her but little: For Azaruc, touching his  
Spear low, wounded Amadis's Horse in the Shoulder, so that he fell down, and his  
Master under him, who nevertheless got up again, before Azaruc had smit his Car-  
rier, and taking his Sword in his hand, went towards Maudan, who was already on  
his feet, and, as if he felt no Pain from the wound, he had receiv'd in his Arm, fiercel-  
ly pull'd out the Truncheon, and threw it far from him.  
Then the Knights fell cruelly on each other: But Azaruc, who was alone in  
his back, spur'd up, and thinking to beat down Amadis, and trample him under his  
hoofe-heels, came full justly against him. The King, who perceiv'd him, kept aside,  
and with great Advantage, as the Horse, that was in motion, ran'd on, struck him on  
the Ham, so that his Leg being laid, he fell down, yet not so suddenly, but Azaruc  
found Means speedily to quit his Struggle, and at last to assist his Companion, whom  
the Vermilion Knight fiercely pursu'd, and as one, who was no Apprentice at the  
Trade, beatr'd himself to courageously resist him, that every one began to  
judge, he would gain the Victory: Because they had not fought long, before he struck  
Azaruc on the Top of his Helmet, which with great force he so latt'r'd into his  
Brains, that he fell dead in the Place. That Maudan then with himself far from  
thence, I can assure you in his behalf: For his Heart began to fail him, so that he  
lightly lost all Countenance, wherefore Amadis cry'd to him: Now, Coward, halt

thy Benefits be manifested, and thou shalt receive the Reward of the Affronts, thou didst give in the Kings Presence.

Maudan, more amaz'd, than can be imagin'd, answer'd not a word, but without either defending himself, or resisting, did raise up his Arms and trod. But Amadis taking him by the Straps of his Shield, pluck'd him so roughly, that he brought him with his Horse to the Ground, and fell to scuffling him to render up the Hilt of his Sword, that Maudans Helmet coming off from his Head, the Vermillion Knight immediately put his Foot on his Throat, and lifting up his Arm, made an Oath to kill him, when Maudan cry'd out: Ah, ah, Vermillion Knight, have pity on me and spare my Life.

Rascal, answer'd he, if there were any hopes of Amendment in thee, I would do it: But thou being a Traitor as thou art, 'twould be a wrong to show thee Compassion. Nevertheless, if thou wilt confess to me before the King, and the Princess of his Court, the Truth of the matter, I will pass no further.

Maudan, fearful of Death, and regardless of Honor, promis'd to do it. And for this Cause Amadis call'd the Judges, to whom he declar'd, what you have heard, desiring them to send for the King, and the other Lords of Saba. Whilch they went immediately to tell Magadan, who came down from his Theatre, attended by Falurion, and many gallant Men, before whom the Queen being present, Maudan fell on his knees, begging Pity with lifted up hands, and to obtain it, addres'd his Discourse to the King, saying to him:

Sir you may see in me, how Fortune triumphs over such wicked persons, as I am: Nor has it indeed been ever known, but one sin draws on another, and a second many more, till at length they go blind these, who commit them, that thinking to go the high way, they fall into the Ditch, which themselves have digg'd, whence they cannot afterwards get out. This is at present manifest in me, who envying the Honor, you did the Knight of the Burning Sword, invented what I told you of him and the Queen, to drive him from your Court, and get into his Place.

Then he related all the Particulars of his Treason, not omitting the least Circumstance; after which he thus went on. Now I have been the Cause of much Mischief, and well know, that I deserve to be exemplarily punish'd: Nevertheless I beseech Your Majesty, that preferring Pity and Mercy before the Rigour of your Justice, You will be pleas'd to pardon me, letting every one thereby know, that, if my Sin is heinous, your Clemency and Goodness is no less extraordinary: Which, as it will greatly redound to Your Majesty's Honor, so also shall I and mine ever remain more bound to serve you, than any other of your Subjects, you having thus pardon'd and remitted my most grievous Offence.

Whilch the Traytor was making this fair Parangue, the King of Saba was so perplex'd, that he could not utter a word, considering the wrong and Injury, he had done the Queen thro' his own Lightness in believing, for which he should be eternal-

by himself: He retir'd to his Chamber, and commanded the Chamberlain to be his own Interpreter, and by a person of his own hand, call'd his Father, who for this cause departed the very same day. The next day return'd into his Place, whether Queen Burca was brought with as great Triumph, as if she had made a Second Entry. And being come before the King, she threw her self at his feet, saying to him.

Sir, since my Innocence is manifest, I beseech you to receive me into your Favor, as before, and remember another time not to believe so easily, nor to use your Power over the Accus'd, till his Defence has first been heard: Considering, how you have proceeded rigorously, not only against my Chastity, but also against my Honor, and that of the House, from which I am descended.

The King, who was then being with a great Remorse of Conscience, rais'd her up, lifting her with his Arms in his Eyes, and answer'd her: Madam, I well know, that I cannot indeed excuse my Offence, for which I beseech you to pardon me and to forget it, swearing to you by my Crown, that I will satisfy you and yours for it, as you shall think fit.

Ah, ah! Sir, said she, had it not been for the good Vermillion Knight, my Affairs had gone ill: For GOD's sake honor him, and let this, if you please, be the first satisfaction, you shall make me.

And as the Knight thus discours'd, her two Uncles brought Amadis, who entering into the Hall, Magadan and Burca went to receive him, and embracing him, the Queen said to him. Certainly, good Knight, I know not, how I shall ever be able to acknowledge, what you have done for me, having giving me both Life and Honor.

Madam, answer'd he, the good Right, you have, appears manifestly: For GOD, who is just, never permits injustice without Vengeance, tho' it be sometimes long in coming. Thus, you being innocent, had not I undertaken the Combat against the Traytors, some other would have come, and done what I have perform'd.

My great Friend, said the King, had I known you as well yesterday, as I do at present, I should have given you more Respect: But the Trouble, I was in at the wicked Words, I heard spoken of the Queen, made me forget all Courtesy, and even my own natural Disposition, which is to receive graciously all strangers, that come to my Court. Therefore I beseech you not to take in ill part this my Fault, but to excuse it, on Condition, I shall hence forth endeavor to amend it.

Ah, Sir, answer'd Amadis, You do me Wrong: I am a simple Knight, who should think himself happy, if he were able to do any Service to so great a King, as you are.

No, no, said Magadan, if you will stay with me, there is not any thing in my Power, that shall be refus'd you.

King Amadis very humbly thanks him: And because the King thought he was much wounded, he gave his Son Fulurim to bear him Company, and conducted him into one of the best Chambers of the Palace, where he disarm'd himself. And also he was old, as you may well helieve, yet did the Water, with which Urganda wash'd him in the Castle of Apolidon, keep him so fresh, that he seem'd more to be above forty: And he so much resembled the Knight of the burning Sword, that Fulurim could not forbear having his Eye on him, who was so like the Person, whose Absence he hourly more and more regretted. Amadis then being disarm'd, & without any wound, confining him to keep his Chamber, return'd into the Hall with the Kings Son. And because the Table was cover'd for Dinner, Magadan made him wash with him, and sit down by the Queen, who kept in kindly play'd him to tell what he had met the Knight of the burning Sword. Which he obey'd: And all those, who heard his great Proverbs, exceedingly wonder'd, so that Fulurim took a Resolution to go and seek him. Then Dinner being over, Amadis who thought it long, till he saw Queen Oriana knowing the Trouble, he was in for his Absence, resolv'd to request the King to give him a Whell, fit for his Return to the Place, where Queen Bureca had found him. And tho' he with great Earnestness urg'd his Request, yet could he not obtain it till four dayes after, during which he was greatly teased. And in the mean time a Ship was equipp'd for him, in which Fulurim thought also to embark, and go seek his Companion; but the King would not at that time permit him: And for this cause he besought Amadis to leave him his red Armour, which he would wear for his sake, and in remembrance of the best Knight in the World. Amadis refus'd him not, and Fulurim gave him another Suit, all white, and much richer. Then with his leave he put forth into the Nile, and from thence into the Mediterranean Sea, by a Wind fit for his Return into the Desert, whence he came.

GOD then be his Guide. And to embellish our History, and give it some Martirry, you shall understand, how in the mean time went the Affairs of the Emperors Arquisil, of whom there is so much Mention in the Book of Amadis of Gaul.

#### CHAP. XLVII

How the Emperor Arquisil being in the City of Mentz, there arriv'd at the Court Zragus, Son to the King of Theffaly, whom Phaulfus, Son to the Duke of Buillon, slew thro' his Jealousy of the Infanta Esclariana.

ARquisil, Emperour of Rome, sojourning in his good City of Mentz, with the Emperess Leonorina, Dinerpious, and his wife Brisenna, Daughter of King Amadis, thinking on nothing but Feasting and rejoicing in the best manner, they could, the Court being then fill'd with Princes, as well Parties, foreigners, the

most part of which were come expressly to see Esclariana, Daughter to Prince Denerpius, and Brisenna, the same of whose Beauty and Gracelike Arts into all Countreys, wholly in a manner resembling the Excellence that was heretofore in her Grandmother Queen Oriana. Which coming to the Care of Acayus, Prince of Theffaly, he would be of the Party, hoping to ask her of the Emperour for his Wife. And for this cause he parted from his Country, & took a fair and great Train came to Mentz: Where Arquisil receiv'd him courteously and honorably, as well to the Take of his Father the King of Theffaly, as because he was a fair, young, and good condition'd Prince. Acayus was greatly pleas'd with it, and much more, when he had seen and discours'd with Esclariana, whom he found means to acquaint with the occasion of his Arrival at Court, promising her, if she thought good, to request the Emperours, and the King of Theffaly's Consent to the Marriage of him and her. The Infanta, not us'd to such Discourses, blush'd at first, thanking him nevertheless for the Honor, he did her, and as a discreet, and well advis'd Lady, excus'd her self from making any further Answer.

Now there happen'd to be present, when Acayus and Esclariana were discoursing together, another young Prince, nam'd Manafes, Son to the Duke of Buillon, who, pretending to the same Happiness, Acayus did, felt in his Soule great Discontent at the good looks, they gave each other, and thence entered into such Jealousy, that it produc'd afterwards a great deal of Spoile, as you shall understand. This Son to the Duke of Buillon was a young, lusty, and good Knight, as one shall see, but Esclariana knowing, that he came from a Race of Traytors, made no Account of him, what Love and Herberte sorber he offer'd her, or the took notice of: So that he would not, to be Compell'd of the whole world, have had him for her Husband. And what incens'd him more was, that he had found Means to understand part of the Discourse which Acayus had made the Princess, at which he was so inflam'd, that he resolv'd to be revenged of his Rival, and by killing him to get wholly rid of him. And what much contributed thereto: Understand, that the Emperour had, on occasion of so great a Court, caus'd a List to be set up for running, and Scaffold round about: Wherefore Acayus put himself in the best Equipage, he could, hoping in favour of his Friends, to do feats of Arms, and best himself such, as he was. And to the end, he might the better know him, one day amongst others he came to the Palace, where the Tables were cover'd for Dinner. Great and sumptuous was the Service, during which Acayus could not be satisfied with having his Eye continually on her, whom he loved with all his heart. And tho' he minded it not, as being young, and not inflam'd with the like Discontent, yet was Manafes strangely uneasy, and at every turn gnaw'd his Nails, till the Tables were taken away, and the Knights and Ladies went into the Court, where they found their Horses ready to go a see, who could ride best that Afternoon. Now Acayus stirr'd not from Esclariana, but took the Reins of her Horse, and led her, discoursing her, as those are wont to do, who desire the Affection of their Favorites. At which Manafes grew more enraged, but not being able at that



time to remedy it, he considered, to prejudice them both to put himself by their side, and hear them, or keep them from speaking privately to one another. And nevertheless Acayus, who doubted nothing, trusted not to prosecute his War, so that he said to the Infanta.

Madam, if you be pleased so far to favor me, as to give me some Sleeve, and command me to wear it to-morrow at the Turney, methinks, no ill could befall me, and my Forces would on your occasion be redoubled.

Sir, said she, You are so good a Knight, that your Devout would not cease to be done without any Sleeve, or other Token; that you can have from me.

Manasses, who heard him, could no longer hold, but spake thus to Acayus: Prince, you might well have forbore making this Discourse to my Lady: Since if she would so far extend her Liberality, she might do it to another, who can better serve her than you: And to vaunt your self thus, you should not have left the King your Fathers Countrey, and come hither, where is the flower of all Chivalry.

Truly Knight, answer'd Acayus, it may well be, that another should serve her; but not better than I, or with more occasion of Right, or Merit. And therefore methinks, you would have done much for your self, to have spoken more courteously, and not with such Audaciousness: For if I am come from my Countrey, I hold my Journey well employed, were it only in having seen my Ladies great Beauty, which has so far embolden'd me, as to beseech her, that she will permit me to serve her, as I will do all my Life. I say not, but they are much better Knights, than I am, both here, and else-where; but 'tis not you, seeing Valor and Prowess are not commonly accompany'd with Pride and Arrogance.

Fair and softly, fair and softly, said Manasses, have a care of injuring me any more, otherwise I shall shew you, that you are a Fool.

Acayus, whose Head and Anger had heated, was so displeased, that he thus answer'd Manasses. Sir Knight, if the Emperor does not command you to be chastised, I will make you repent this word. I would have you know, that Acayus has an heart good enough, and Means sufficient to punish you, as you deserve.

Manasses, trusting to a Crowd of Kindred, he had about him, could dissemble no more, but suddenly put his hand to his Sword, charging the Prince of Thessaly, said to him: Rascal, does it belong to you thus basely to threaten a better than your self?

Then he gave him such a Blow on the Head, as kill'd him; so that he fell dead from his Horse to the Ground, at which there was a great Commotion: For the Princess Attendants, seeing such an Outrage ran upon Manasses; but he was defended by his, so that many on both sides there ended their Days: And yet worse had it been, had not the Emperor taken order, who putting himself between the two Parties, commanded both on their Lives to retire. And seeing Manasses, caused him to be shut

up

up in a strong Tower, swearing he should pay for it. In the mean time every one departed to his Lodgings; as also all the Infanta Esclariana, exceedingly discontented for having been the Detraction (as it seemed to her) of such a Quarter. And on the other side the many Princes People made such great Complaints, that the Emperor, who was exactly just, sent the next day to have him hang'd on the Walls of the Place, where he was imprisoned.

But his Friends, being exceedingly discontented, took the Body, and carry'd it into the Countrey of Baillon, leading the Count in sorrow, and very much troubled. For the Justice of the Action was approved by all good People, yet was it publicly said, that the Gods might revenge it, he could be was a great Lord, and sup'd to more great Feasters, than any other of the Empire.

## CHAP. XLIII.

How the Duke of Buffon knew of his Sons Death: And of the great Craft, he used to kill the Emperor and his Son Dinerpius, and seize on the Empire.

Manasses being dead, as you have heard, and his Body carry'd by his Kindred into his Fathers Dutchy, never did man make such Lamentation for the space of fifteen days: But as all things are forgotten or lessn'd by Time, the old Manas forgot was a little undervalued, but not the desire he had of Vengeance. For when things were brought to be the most quiet, he assembled those of his Lineage, and having taken their advice, said to them.

Gentlemen, my good Friends and Allies, you have seen and understood the Dishonor, which the Emperor our Prince has not only done me, but you all, as well in particular, as in general: so that having no Regard to us, who are so great and powerful, as every one knows, he has despitefully caused him to be Hang'd, who might otherwise be nam'd the head of your Arms, and Duke of Bulloign: for which I am so griev'd, that I dye an hundred times a day. And as to you, his good Kindred, I believe for certain, that Nature so stimulates you, that your heart weeps, and this wound will bleed, as long as you and yours shall have the Names of Gentlemen. Nevertheless, if you will follow my advice, we will not so long delay the Vengeance of it: but I will give you such means to recover your Honour, which is so much defaced, as shall turn to your Glory, and great Profit.

Then they all cried out, that they would spend their Lives and fortunes in it.

My Friends, said he, are you resolv'd to follow my Counsel?

Sir, answer'd the chiefest of them, we swear to you on the Faith we owe to GOD, that we will in this point obey you.

The Duke very affectionately thanked them: and, saying their GOD will, began to lay open his design, as you shall understand.

p 2

Gentlemen,

Gentlemen, and Knights, said he, I am of Opinion, that, to attain to my purpose, one of you shall go to the Emperor, and present him with my most humble duty, assuring him, that the Justice he has Executed on my son, is well pleasing to me, seeing the Injury he had done his Majesty by killing the Prince of Thessaly so inconsiderately, and that in his Majesties presence. And that, although Paternal Love causes in me some Regret, yet, when I think on the Equity, which, as a good Prince, and as a just Emperor, he has used, I find my self so comforted, that I not only approve his Justice, as being exemplary to all, but moreover humbly thank him for having ealed me from being severe to my own Flesh. Which 'twas expedient I should have been, desiring to preserve my Integrity, and the Honour of my house: These, my Friends, are the Artifices, we must make use of, to attain to our desires, to which he giving Credit, will properly resemble the Raven, that held the Cheese, whom the Fox allured to sing, that he might make him let go his Prey. For by this means he will have assurance of us, and we may go and take him even in his Nest, and at our pleasure seize on him and his, letting not any one escape, that can contradict my coming to the Empire, to which I shall attain in spite of them, you remaining rich with the Spoils of your Enemies, and I revenged at the price of their blood.

Certainly this damnable Counsel and Advice had so much force, that none of the Associates contradicted it, but approved it, and commended it, choosing immediately for the Bearer of that Message Madaran, a Cousin of the Duke, and as honest a Man as himself: who parted from them, and being come to the Emperor, knew so fully to passate his Message and Creation, that the good Prince believed more, than he should have done, saying before all, that the Duke of Buillon was indeed one of the discreetest Knights in the World, and who best deserved the Government of a Monarchy. He gave therefore great Presents to the Messenger, commanding him to tell his Master, that he desired him to come to his Court, where he would honour him as he deserved.

Madaran, glad of such Assurance, returned to the Duke, who expected him with a great part of his Allies, that kept themselves in a readiness according to the Pledges, they should take of their Challenger, who entirely related to them the Emperors discourse. And for this cause they removed the Night following, going straight towards Meantz. And they assembled the most secretly they could, above a thousand, who lay conceal'd all the day in a forest, near the City, into which about Evening, they entered without being discovered. The Emperor, who doubted not in the least of any Treason, seeing the honest Message, the Lord of Buillon had sent him by Madaran, was in his Palace, discoursing with the Emperors, and several Knights that accompanied him, when the Duke came in completely Armed, and with him twenty or thirty more, who, putting their hands to their Swords, ran on those they met. At which the Emperor, much affrighted, endeavoured to get away, but Madaran kept beside him, and striking him on the head, said: Stay Emperor, stay: and remember the Injury thou hast done the house of Buillon.

The

The blow was mortal, and the good Prince fell dead in the place. At which Dinerpius seeing, he entered into such Fury, that, disarmed as he was, he flew at the Emperors, striking him so cruelly, that he cleaved him to the very brains. Then the dust grew hot: For many Gallant Men, who were there present, wapt their Cloaks about their Arms, and with their naked Swords a long time resisted the Traytors. But Dinerpius knew that he could not avoid present death: wherefore he resolved to sell his Life dear, so that he met not any Man but he fell without speaking a word more, notwithstanding by misfortune one of the Traytors got behind him, and wounded him through the body.

Ah! said Dinerpius, Villain thou hast slain me: And turning about separated his shoulder from the rest of his body. Then they both fell at the feet of the Duke, who, fearing lest Dinerpius should get up again, cut off his head.

Thus the one Assaulting, and the others defending, Brisenna and Esclariassa, who were in their Chambers, heard the noise, and sent suddenly a Daniel to know what the matter might be: but as soon as he came into the Hall, he perceived the Emperors dead, and the Emperors in a wound on the body. At which being greatly affrighted, he returned to the Ladies, to whom he said, sighing and weeping: Alas, alas, Ladies! Would you know the matter? The wicked Duke of Buillon has murdered the Emperor, and all those that accompanied him.

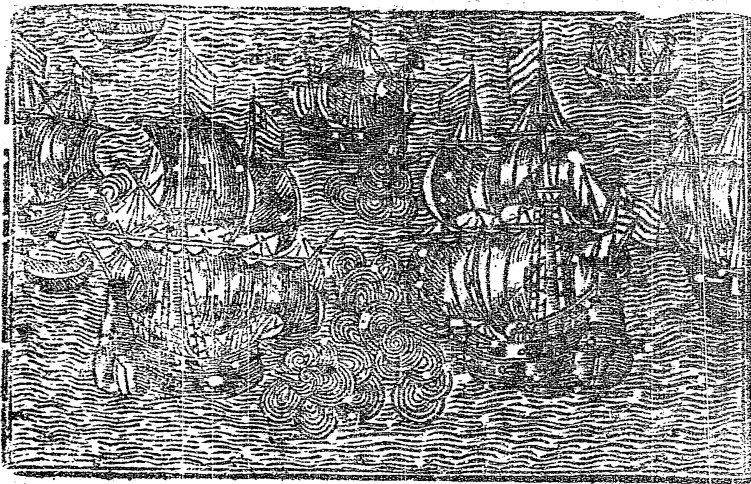
At this cry the Princess Brisenna found no better remedy than to take her Daughters, and flying under the Walls of the Palace, came to a Sally-port on the side of the River, where they perceived a Fisher-boat, into which they entered: and setting it a drift, the Stream began to carry it down with so much swiftness, that they came to the Sea before it was day. In the mean time those who lay concealed in the Dukes House, and who only waited for the Slaughter, ran forth straight into the Marketplace, killing and wounding all they met. There was a pitiful and horrid Spectacle: for these wicked Men often spared not the poor Widows, who with their Hair about their Faces lamented, one for her Husband, another her Father or her Brother. And notwithstanding the fury of the Traytors did not decrease till it was day, and the Duke commanded every one should endeavour to find out the Prince's Brisenna, and her daughter Esclariassa: for he had the Emperors and all her damself in safe custody. Then was search made in every place: and nevertheless they could have no News of them. At which the Duke being exceedingly vexed, caused it to be published by sound of Trumpet, that they should be brought forth on pain of death: and that if they should be found after the Proclamation, those that should have recovered them, should be hanged. But 'twas in vain, the Good Ladies were out of his power, and at the Mercy of GOD and the devils. By means whereof the Traytors light on the Empire: and sent to raise Soldiers on all sides, to destroy who ever should contradict him and for this cause there were assembled in a little time above twenty thousand men, with whom he did innumerable Evils, commanding, before he went forth of Meantz, that the Emperor and his Son should be hanged in the same place where Ma-

nass;

walks had been before. And there they stayed many days, as you shall hear about the end of this Book.

## CHAP. XLIX.

How the Princess Elisbena and her daughter Esclariana were lost at Sea, and taken by Pirates.



Very lamentable it is to describe the Fortune of Brisenna and her Daughter: who being car. led down the River of the latter in the little Vessel, weeping and lamenting, came into the deep Sea, just as the beginning of the day began to appear: and in less than a moment they were dyben in such sort, that they lost sight of Land. But little did the two good Ladies care: for they (more dead than living, and without thinking on the new Danger into which they were fallen) held each other embrace, seeking for their better Comfort their approaching death. And thus being dyben too and fro, as it plea to the Wind and the Waves, they remained two days and two nights

highly distressed, eating or drinking, or any way minding themselves: till they were met by a Ship, in which were two Hungarian Pirates, who accompanied by fifteen or twenty Persons as themselves, and whom they had in their pay, Robbed and Slaved whomever fell into their hands. They then wondring to see in this little Boat, these two Ladies in so good Equipage, and shedding so many tears, immediately thought, that they should get a good Ransom for them: and went therefore to seize them, before they perceived it, but being amaz'd at Esclariana's great Beauty, they were moved to so much Compassion, that they courteously saluted them.

Now the Princess Brisenna was still so disturbed, that she certainly thought they were some of the Duke of Bullions Men: wherefore exasperating her self against them, she began to cry out, saying: Traytors, Murderers, disloyal to your Natural Lord, what will you have with me, or this poor Maiden, who is Fatherless, and depriv'd of all things? Make an end, Wretches, of killing us, and let your Rage be glutted with our blood: for to live any longer is troublesome to us.

Then she held her peace, and soon after began again her Lamentation more bitterly than before. and with so many Complaints, that the very Tyrants could not forbear weeping: wondring nevertheless, what caus'd in her such a Passion. Wherefore they graciously answer'd her: Lady, there is none in this Company, that will do you any displeasure; not have we ever, as I believe, seen you before: and yet we should be glad to avenge you on those, of whom you complain, if we had an Opportunity: wherefore tell us, if you please, who they are, and the Occasion of your Discontent.

At this word Brisenna recover'd a little her Spirits, and knowing for certain, that she was mistaken, having taken them for the Duke's Soldiers, earnestly besir'd them to excuse her, thanking them heartily for the Liberty they made her.

And think it not strange, said she, if my Sorrow is extream: For I see my self at this day without help, without wealth, and wholly ruin'd: nevertheless, I hope that at length the Pleasure we shall receive from you, may in time be well recompens'd, which makes me humbly beseech you, since Fortune has thrown us into your hands, that our Honour may be preserv'd, as we have Confidence in your Goodness and Courtesy: for nothing else is left us.

Be assur'd, answer'd the Pirates, that we will in nothing injure you, and that we will serve, and honour you to our power.

GOD give you the grace so to do, said Brisenna: and on this Faith we yield ourselves to you.

Then the Pirates took them under the Arms, and led them into their Vessel, where with great Earnestness they requested them to eat, which at length they refused not, so much were they press'd by their courteous Entreaties. But this Courtesy lasted but little, so soon did they return to their Nature. So they led them into the Cabin of the Ship, and there was brought them a Bed to rest on: then leaving them alone, they went forth upon the Deck, pressing to one another Esclariana's excellent Beauty,

Beauty: the two Pirates pretending, this great Sorrow being appear'd, to and means to make her their Mistress, tho' they dissembled it the best they could. Thus the good Ladies remain'd wonderfully discontented, yet comforting themselves by the Words of the Pirates, and the Promises they made them, till Supper-time, when they sent for them by one of their Soldiers, who, speaking to Eclariana, found himself surpris'd with her Love, that he knew not what Countenance to keep. And he never took his eye from her, till they were again retir'd into their Cabin, where being wearied and tired with their past Toil, they lay down in their Cloaths, and fell asleep, the three Vobers remaining every one of them in Pain, to find the Means of attaining to the Enjoyment of the Fair One.

## CHAP. L.

How one of the Soldiers, belonging to the two Pirates, stole away the Infanta Eclariana, and, being about to force her, she was succour'd by Don Florestan, and of a strange Adventure that befel them afterwards.

After the Ladies were fast asleep, he, who had last beheld Eclariana with an Unchast Eye, as we have told you, was so inflam'd with her Love, that he did nothing all Night but sigh, musing how he might attain to his desires. And in this thought, leaving his Companion's Port, he arose softly up, and came to the Door of the Cabin, where the Ladies were, which he opened: And because they slept soundly, he came very near them, and the more he beheld the Infanta, the more in the Fire, already kindled in his Chastels, increase, so that he said within himself: Alas! if I do not soon enjoy this Woman, 'tis impossible that I can live! in an ill hour did I see that great Beauty, with which she is endow'd.

Then he began to think with himself, that he might easily carry her away without noise: wherefore he went, and arm'd himself, and returning speedily into the Ladies Cabin, he took the Fair One gently in his Arms, and without ever waking her, so soundly did he sleep, carry'd her into a Skiff, lasked to the Ship, which he suddenly untied: and covering his Face with his Cloak, began to Sail away without being perceived by any one. Thus they pass'd on all the Night, the never awaking: but about an hour before day, this Knight, no longer able to endure the Torment that tormented him, being to near the Scuntain he abode all things desist'd. let loose the Reins of his Passion, and approaching Eclariana, went about to uncover her, when she awaking, started up, and finding her self thus alone, began to cry out: Blessed Lord, help me! What is this! Do I dream, or is it Truth, that I see? And you, said she to the Knight, who are you, that have awak'd me?

Dear Madam, answer'd he, what you see, is no Dream, but I have brought you away in this Boat, as well for the Love, I bear you, as to deliver you out of the hands

hands of those, who would undoubtedly have dishonour'd you, and enjoy'd, what none but I deserve, having resolv'd to make you Lady of my self, as her, whom I love and esteem above all things in this World. And therefore, dearest Madam, I beseech you, have pity on me, and grant me freely your Love, without which I can not live.

When Eclariana heard him speak thus, she was so enraged, that without fearing any thing, she thus answer'd him: Sir Knight, carry me speedily back to the Place, from whence you have taken me, without making me any more of these Discourses: for I am not so inconsiderable, that you should be admitted to such a Familiarity with me. And GOD forbid I should ever so much stain my Family: certainly I would first kill my self before you with mine own hands.

Here much angry, and very together, was the Knight, who, hurried on by the Violence of his Passion, was about to use Force, nevertheless he would first endeavour to gain her by words, saying to her: How? do you think your self better than me? No, no, I am a Knight, who deserve you, and more: And therefore enter not into these Contestations, but yield to me, if you will have me pardon the injurious Words, you have too indiscreetly given me: Otherwise I will shew you, that your feeble Resistance shall not preserve you; but that, whether you will or no, you shall satisfy my Desire.

Eclariana, who heard these Threats, saw well, that 'twas in earnest, nevertheless without appearing any way daunted, she speedily answer'd him: Do you threaten me? have a care what you do: for you would be made to pay dear for such force, were it only by him who is in Heaven, and who will not, if he pleases suffer it.

Ha, ha, said the Knight, smiling, I will now see whether HE concerns himself with such matters.

Then he went about to throw her down, and prosecute his deadly Intent: But she caught hold of his Hair, and crying out with a loud voice, begged the Assistance of Almighty GOD, who graciously and mercifully heard her: So that at that very Instant there pass'd by a Boat, and one Mariner, carrying a Knight, who, hearing this Noise, immediately commanded his Guide to make towards it with his Boat, that he might see, what the Matter was. Which he obeyed with great diligence. And though the Sea was covered with Whirls, yet he got to near the Skiff, that they saw the Gallian holding the Damsel under him, who endeavoured with all her might to get out of his hands, with a loud voice lamenting her Misfortune.

At which the Knight of the Boat being displeased, he cried out to the other: Ah! Traytor, leave the Damsel: now cursed of GOD be such Wretches as you, who will use force.

When she, who was in a manner out of Breath, heard him speak, you may imagine how much she was rejoiced, and imploring his Aid, she said to him: Alas, my Lord, help me against this Traytor, who will dishonour me.

That will I not fail to do, answer'd he.

And he was about to leap into the Ship, but the other let go his Prize, and ran to take his Arms, saying: By my Head, Sir Knight, the Joy, you have made me lose, shall turn to your Displeasure.

This said, they charged one another, and their Combat was at the beginning very fierce: for the Pirat was nimble and dextrous; yet could he not long resist the Knight; but was forced, whether he would or no, to give back, and the other entered into the Ship. Then began the break of Day to appear, and the Infanta perceived, that he, who fought for her Defence, was Tall, Well-proportioned, and Armed in black Armour, without any Device, except in his Shield, where he bare Or, an Heart divided by Gules. And because the Infanta began to appear visibly on his side, he devoutly pray'd, to our Lord, that he would preserve him to the end, which happened soon after: for the Knight of the Boat gave the other two such blows together with his Sword, that he was fain to put his knee to the ground: which being rebouled, he ached followed, and he fell into the Sea.

Which Esclariana seeing, said aloud: Henceforth, Villain, shall Damselfs be delivered from thy hands, and out of thy Power.

Now the Sun began then to display his Beams, the Knight of the Boat not having yet mended Esclarianas Beauty: but when he beheld her, he fell so strongly transported, that forgetting the Anguish and Discontents he hath long suffered for Love of her, who had not been able to bid him of his liberty, and for whom he had put himself into an Infinity of Dangers, Travelling so many strange Countreys, where he put an end to several fair Adventures; he fell to in love with this, that he began to change Colour, and to become thoughtful and pensive.

At which she being grieved, as thinking him wounded, she said to him: Alas, good Knight, I beseech you bear your self up: for to see your Looks, I can have no Joy in my heart: seeing the Obligation I have to you, and what you have done for me. Alas, if you are wounded, shew me where; that I may remedy it in the best manner I can.

At this gracious word the black Knight found himself unspeakably eased, and putting both his knees to the ground, answered her: Pardon me, Madam, if I have not at first shew'd you the Respect I ought: for your excellent Beauty so alienated the soundest Parts both of my Heart and Spirit, that I found my self in an instant free, and immediately a Captive wounded with so mortal a Wound, that no other Remedy can do me good, but your gracious Favour, which I beseech you to grant me, telling me your Name, and what Adventure brought you hither, that I may free you as you shall command me.

She, who had seen him fight so well, hearing him speak with such a Grace, and perceiving him to be one of the fairest Knights in the World, with indramly within her self, that he were of a Family worthy to be her Husband; nevertheless she at that time dissimled this Thought, and feigning not to understand him, made him this Answer: Indeed, good Knight, I cannot sufficiently thank you for the obli-

oblis

obliging Offers, you have made me to help me in my Affairs, which within these eight days have been my distress: what I myself, in whom they are paid, cannot comprehend; nor understand them: I say, that I can swear to you, there never was a more poor and desolate Damself, than I am: I am hoping nevertheless in GOD's mercy, that the good Spécours you have given me, and my great Necessity, shall not remain long unknowned; but shall in time be recompensed, in such a manner, as I am not able to describe. I therefore beseech you, that you will be so good, as to continue long so merciful to me, as she has been at the beginning. Wherefore I entreat you to conduct me into great Britain: For you cannot easily have me back to the Place whence this Villain stole me, as I was sleeping near a Lady, who will be greatly discontent at my Absence. And being come before King, and his, you shall entirely know my Descent, and who I am. In the mean time your self will do me the Favour to tell me who you are, to the end I may not fail to give you the Honour and Respect that is due to you.

When the black Knight heard he would go into Great Britain, he had a more desire to know her than before; nevertheless fearing to displease her, he would not importune her any farther, but answered her thus: Madam, I am so much yours, that I will not disobey you in any thing, but will conduct you into Great Britain, whithersoever, as you shall think good. My Name, since you desire to know it, is, the Knight of the Divided Heart, and this Shield well signifies the sorrow, in which I have to this day lived, till it was almost stifled by length of Time: But I have now found it in such manner renewed in me, that this Name is more suitable to me than ever.

And have you no other Name, said Esclariana.

Yes indeed, Madam, answered he, Lady of my Heart: For it is yours, and it would not be reasonable it should conceal any thing from you, that you desire to understand; and therefore I acquaint you, that I am Florentian, Son to the King of Serbinia, who has not this long time heard any News of me, because I have Traversed many strange Countreys, enduring so many Passions for the Love of a Lady, to whom I had given my heart, and who has so severely treated it, that never any Knight suffered so much, even to this day, that I am fain from one Disease to a greater. And may Heaven be pleased to give you knowledge of the Good I wish you, and the Evil I suffer for your Love, which indeed burns fiercer in my Soul, than ever did the Heat, that heretofore tormented me for being Loyal to her, who left me sorrowful and without any Joy.

And this indeed was the Truth: for the Emperor of Trebford, having married Griliana to the Duke of Breigne, he grew so discontented, that he went incognito, wandering through the World, and had a Combat with Calais, as you may find in the Sixth Book of Amadis of Gaul, after which he fell into many Trances, finishing several Adventures, by which he gained great Honour.

Wounded under that disguised Name. And he was yet following his Fortune at Sea, without desiring any Company, but the Mariners that conducted him, when he came seasonably to the Rescue of Esclariana. But so far as our History is principally designed for another. We have not amised our selves with Relating his Gallant Acts, as what would have been too tedious, and little to our purpose. You may be pleased to be informed, that as soon as Esclariana understood he was Son to the King of Sardinia, whom she knew, as having often seen him in the Court of the Emperor her Father, and to whom she was Related, her Purpose of never having any other Husband, was fully confirmed.

Wherefore lifting him up from his knees, on which he had long been, she said to him: My Lord Florestan, if I have not been so respectful to you, as I should, excuse, if you please, my Ignorance, and the little knowledge I had of you; but so it is, that I now well see GOD has not wholly forgotten me; since he has made me fall into the hands of such a Knight as you. Now I again pray you to conduct me into great Britain. For till then you shall know no further what I am: Thus much indeed it will tell you, that if you love me, I shall bear you such Affection, that none but you shall ever be my Lord; if you will honour me so much as to receive me for your Wife. Which may be accorded with King Amadis, for I have at present no other Father but him. Wherefore it is necessary he consent to it, else both you and I should be to blame. Which makes me humbly request you to defer it till then.

Madam, answered he, the Assurance you give me, brings me so much Joy, that I know not well what Thanks to return you. And as to the rest, I swear to you never to transgress what it shall please you to command me, but I will conduct you into great Britain, where we shall be welcome, because the King is my Fathers Brother.

I am very glad of it, said the Princess.

Whilst they were thus discoursing, a Storm began to arise, which hourly increasing, so tossed their little Vessel, which their Mariner was fain to leave to the Mercy of the Winds, that they were often in hazard of Drowning; for during the Space of eight days, they knew not which way they went, and yet Florestan was so contented with having his Mistress near him, that he minded not the Danger he was in. Being thus Driven by the Tempest, they were carry'd at last to a very fair Island, well planted with Trees, where they went ashore. Then Florestan took Esclariana by the Hand, and as he was walking with her to refresh her under the Shade, listening to the Notes of many little Birds there flew over their Heads two great Griffins, who so frightened the Princess, that without the Assurance given her by Florestan, she had dy'd. Yet did they not therefore stop, but went on to a Clear Fountain, which, issuing from the Rock, made a little Lake, in the midst of which was placed a high Pillar of Marble, having on it the Effigies of a Lady, carved

was in Porphy, with a very fair Crown on her Head, and in the Marble were engraven certain Caldean Letters, which Florestan, though skilled in many Languages, could not read.

The Water of this Fountain appearing very fair and Clear, Esclariana had a desire to drink; but she had scarce swallowed the first Draught, when she was changed into an horrible Serpent, which, beating its Wings, and shaking its Tail, leaped into the Depth of the Lake, leaving Florestan the most amazed Man in the World. But presently ascending up again, she came upon the Water, where she layed not long, before she runned into the hollow of the adjoining Rock. Wherefore Florestan, in a manner Desperate, followed her, saying in himself: GOD never help me if I thus forsake my Lady.

Then running after her, he had no sooner set his Foot within the Rock, but met the most terrible Monster imaginable: for he resembled a Wild Man, save that he was without an Head, and had his eyes in his Stomach, being bigger than the tallest Giant that ever were seen. In his Hand he had a great Club with which he struck Florestan such a blow on the Head, that, being ready to fall, he was forced to put his knee to the ground: Nevertheless he got easily up again, and approaching of the Monster, gave him such a blow with his Sword, that he separated one of his Legs from his Body, so that he fell down to the Ground, giving a great Cry. Then Florestan fell upon him, and made an end of killing him, when he perceived near him a Lady, having on long white Galls, and leaning on a Staff, who said to him in great Distress: In an ill hour, Sir Knight, had you ever so much Power, as so lightly to kill the Guard of my Cave.

This said, she stretched out her Arm, and with all her strength struck him on the Helmet, saying, Well, you shall serve me then, and shall be put in his place.

Scarce had Florestan received the blow of the Staff, that he stood upright, and like a Man deprived of his Senses, thought on nothing but keeping the Entrance of the Cave. Then the Lady returned whence she came. And in the mean Time the Mariner, who stayed in the Boat, seeing that Florestan and Esclariana did not return, brought his Vessel to an Anchor, and went to look for them. Then he sought every where, till he came to the Fountain, where he drank, and was amazingly without any knowledge of himself, only perceiving that two Damisels carried him away, he knew not whither, till at length he found himself in an obscure Dungeon, imprisoned with several others, whom he could not see for the Darkness of the Place. Now let us leave them all Three in this Condition, and return to the Princess Brilliana, who had lost her Daughter as she was asleep.



How the Princess Brisenna, when she awaked, not finding her Daughter, was exceedingly discontented, and of what happened, and the manner how she was at last delivered.

You have heard in what manner the Infant Esclariana fell into the hands of the Witches, who would have forced her, and how she was carried away, as she was sleeping near her Mother, without her, or any others perceiving it. Now the good Lady awaked soon after, the Trouble of her mind not permitting her any long Rest. Then she stretched forth her Arms, to perceive the fate her Daughter did, but not finding her, rose up, and with a Cry that was heard in the Chamber, took all about to see whether she had not hid her self, that she might keep some security. Then she well knew she was stoln away: wherefore going forth on the Deck, she began to cry and roar like a mad Woman to loud, that Maragnon (so was the principal Pirate named) heard this Noise, and wondering at it, asks the Princess, what she did.

Alas! Sir, answered she, what have you done with my Daughter! She has been lately taken from me.

Maragnon was exceedingly surprised to hear of this Loss, and doubting, his Companion Brutus had played him some Trick: And for that he speedily armed himself, and without any answering Brisenna, took a Torch, and went to Brutus's Cabin, who seeing him come in that manner, asked him who disturbed him.

Who? answered Maragnon: You your self, who have taken away the fair Damsel, we took Yesterday.

Faith, said the other, it is not so, but you your self have stoln her: And immediately would have her sought for even in the retiring place, hoping to defeat Maragnon's Design, and recover Esclariana. But if the one was disturbed, the other was not at rest: Wherefore they laboured in vain, as you have understood.

In the mean time the Wicked old Mother made pitiful Moan, of which Brutus taking Compassion, and more discontented to see himself frustrated of his Intent, put his hand to his Sword, saying to Maragnon: By my Faith you have taken away the Damsel, and I will have this for my self, whether you will or no.

Indeed? said the other: and what shall I have?

Then they dyed near each other, and were about to fight. Which their People would not permit, but interposing between them, desired them to have a little patience, till a more diligent search was made for the lost Damsel, and if she were not found, that they would call for who should have the Lady. This Advice seemed reasonable unto them, and there was no Cabin, great or little, nor any hole or corner in the Ship, left unsearcht: till at last they perceived that one of their Companions

was missing, and had certainly sterted her away in the Skiff. This augmented the Mourns and Lamentations of the poor Mother, who having before her eyes the damnable Intention of the Pirates, that were about to call Lots for her, the loss of her Daughter, whom she certainly thought to have been forc'd both in Body and Honor, and the Remembrance of her Husband, so lately Murdered, was ready to fall into Despair, and at the point of throwing her self into the water, rather than suffering any more. Which she had undoubtedly done, had not the fear of losing her soul withheld her: as also the coming on of a great Adventure put a stop to their Designs.

Some of the Ship discovered a Vessel, which the Storm had driven into those parts: which they no sooner perceived, but there began an Alarm amongst them, crying out to go pursue it, and take those that were in it Prisoners. When the Pirates put themselves in a readiness to fight, and dyed near the Vessel, which they join'd with Hoops and Gasping Arrows. But they entered not into it so easily as they thought for: For a Knight, cover'd with very Rich Arms, who was in it accompanied with fifteen others, presented themselves well Armed, and with a very good Will, not only to resist them, but also to defeat them, if they passed any farther. And what gave them yet more occasion to do, was, that he, who was so well Armed, presented himself to the Princess Brisenna making her Lamentation, and calling to God for succour: at which he had such compassion and displeasure, that without demurring any longer, he ran upon the Pirates, and supported by his Companions, entered into their Ship: then with his head bow'd down, what hindrance soever they gave him, he took the Princess by the arm, and led her into his Vessel, whilst his Companions made him way. So he delivered her to the guard of his Esquires, and returned freely to the Battle, where all beheld themselves so valiantly, that there was never seen a more cruel Sea-fight, for the few people they were. For he in the Rich Arms and Maragnon, joining each other, sufficiently shew'd the little Amity there was between them: So that by their well fighting, each of the two Pirates took Courage, and grew bold, they being indeed all four Knights, especially Brutus. Wherefore the Esquires began at last to stagger, and retreat into their Vessel: for Maragnon, being beaten down, was carry'd in by two Servants, thinking to save his life. So could the others any longer resist him in the rich Arms, when it fortune'd, that there came by a Boat with two Mares, in which there sail'd a Knight, arm'd with noble Arms, the fairest and most curiously wrought, that ever was seen. He, of whom I speak, went to the place where Maragnon lay, and seeing to different a Combat, enquired secretly the occasion.

Sir Knight, answered Maragnon, a Rascal whom you see there in rich Armor, has Wickedly call'd me to take from me a Lady, whom I love more than my self, and has her at this present actually in his Vessel.

Is it so? said the white Knight: If I can, I will make him repent it.

Then he commandeth his Boat to go near, and taking his Sword in his hand, be-

put himself among the Combatants; on the Pirates side, and striking every way, met with one of the others, whom he slew upon the place. Then Braccus, and his Companions, took heart again; and the others began to give back, till they came near the place where the Princess was: At which he, in the Rich Array, being tart, and knowing, that this Misfortune befell them by the Effort of the white Knight, made up to him; and gave him such a blow on his Helmet, that he was very sensible of the weight of it, and would willingly have revenged himself; but they were so near to one another, that the white Knight had not room to lift up his Arm: Wherefore he stretched forth his left hand, and caught hold of the brags of his Adversary's Shield, which he pulled to himself with such force, that he, in the Rich Array, was brought, whither he would not go, with his nose to the ground.

Now indeed, said the other, will I make you restore the Ladies which you take away by force.

And taking hold of his Helmet, pluckt it from his head, and was lifting up his Sword to strike him, when he presently knew him: For 'twas Gandalin, who, as you have been told, was to look for King Amadis, in the great Sicades, and finding him to be removed, would not return into great Britain without him. Therefore he still went about seeking him, till he fell into the hands of him in the white Array, which was Amadis; whom the Storm had driven into that Sea.

That the King was both amazed, and glad at this meeting, you may easily believe: Wherefore he suddenly held his hand, saying to him he had known him: Ah! Gandalin, is it possible, that you are grown a Taker of Ladies by force! What will the Countess your wife say, when she knows of it?

At this word Gandalin understood his Master's Voice, and being more joyful, than he had been sorrowful, answered him: How, Sir, do you call it forcing of Ladies, when I fought to deliver my Lady Biffenna, your daughter, from these Corsairs, who were carrying her away against her will? By my Head, you have been exceedingly deceived: for you have almost vanquish't us all.

The King, seized with Amazement and Fury, could not answer him: But left Gandalin, and turned against the Pirates, of whom he made such a slaughter, that the most part of them were put to the Sword, and the rest fell in to the Sea. Then the King commanded that all their Spoil should be carried into Gandalin's Ship, and the other set on fire, which was immediately done. Then Amadis went to his Daughter, who, finding her self delivered from the Danger he had been in, and seeing the King in good health; the Lamentations, he was before making, were converted into praises of our Lord, and he threw her self at his feet, having her heart so seized, that she

could

could not speak one word to him. But he took her up, asking her, what Fortune had separated her from the Emperor.

Alas! alas! Sir, answered she, You may well name it Fortune, the strangest and most wretched, that ever befell poor desolate woman! For he has thrown me from the high Estate, in which you had placed me, to the lowest he could, leaving me without Husband, Children, or any VVealth whatever. Alas! the Traitorous Duke of Buillon has cruelly slain Arquisil and his Son, and my daughter and I, flying the Fury, found means to steal away, and get a little Boat, into which we entred, without any other guide but GOD's Mercy, whom it pleased to try (as I believe) my Patience, to let us fall into the Hands of these Thievish Pirates, who cunningly, and without my perceiving it, (with so sound a sleep was I oppress'd) have stoll away Celsatana, and carried her I know not whither. Alas! was this alone left for my Comfort? And it is indeed a Wonder, I have been able to live till this time: For the Villains were casting Lots to dishonour me, when Count Gandalin arriv'd, with his Company, who vigorously assaulted them: Nevertheless, I doubt they would have had enough to do, without your happy Arrival. And this, Sir, is the Condition, in which you find your daughter, full of all Sorrow and Discontent.

Then he began to shed Tears, and sigh so bitterly, that he would have nicked the hardest heart in the World to pity.

But the Discreet and Magnanimous King, knowing 'twas not then time to declare what he thought, said to her: Daughter, You have Reason to grieve, tho' you cannot by your Tears recall what is done. One only Point is now left you, that is, the Punishment of the Traitor, which cannot be so grievous, but his Treason has been greater. Nevertheless I will in such manner set my self about it, that it shall be remembered; whilst the World shall last. And as for your Daughter, I hope in our Lord, that he will not forsake her, no more than he has done you, and that you shall one day see her in good Health, without having suffered Shame or Outrage. Comfort your self therefore, and take to you a Man's Heart, tho' you are but a Woman, shewing the House of which you are descended, being Daughter to a King of Gaul, which is indeed the most constant and generous Nation at this day on the Earth.

So many other Reasons did Amadis alledge, that she was, in some measure comforted: And the King disarming himself, turned to Gandalin, to whom, that he might change the Discourse, complaining of the great Blow with the Sword, he had receiv'd, he said in sport:

As a

How

How, Count? Do you thus Careless your Friends? in good faith I could never have thought, that you would in such earnest have tried the Goodness of my Armor, nevertheless I heartily pardon you.

On my Soul, Sir, answered he, shaking his head, if all your Servants received the Marks of your Favour in such Money, as you lately chang'd with me, you would find but a few that would long keep you Company: and you have Reason to pardon me: for 'tis thus, that the Beaten makes the satisfaction.

Now it was already late, and they had not eaten all day: Wherefore the Cloth was laid, and as they were Dining and Discoursing, the King askt, in what Sea they then were.

Sir, answered the Sparrinccs, We are not far from Sicily.

So much the better, said he.

Then he commanded to go ashore at Naples, and send from thence into Spain to King Brian, and his other Friends, and Allies, to ask Assistance for the rebenging his Daughters Injury: For he was resolved not to return into Great Britain, till he had performed it. And for this cause having taken Port at Salern, where King Adaric honourably received him, he dispatched Messengers into all Parts. And he tarrit at length to Queen Oriana, acquainting her with the State of his Health, and Cause of his Stay. Whilst he was thus preparing for War against the Duke of Buillon, he one day enquired of Gandalin, what had passed in his Countrey, during his Absence, who told him the occasion for which the Queen had sent him, withall, that he knew of the Knight of the Burning Sword, who had sent to London Gandalfes head, of which the King was very Glad for the sake of Galeotes and Madalina.

And I am sorry, said he, that I was not there to entertain the Emperor of Trebifond, and the King of Sicily, but it shall be for another time. So it is, that I esteem my Journey well employed, for I have restored a poor Damsel to her Countrey that was taken from her; and saved the Queen of Saba's Honour, who was Accused of Adultery.

Then he related particularly to him all the Travels he had made, and the Fruit that was come of them.

CHAP.

## CHAP. LII.

How the Emperor of Trebifond, the King of Sicily, and others, who expected the Return of King Amadis to London, seeing his Stay, took leave of the Queen, and departed.



You have been told in the foregoing Chapters, that the Emperor of Trebifond, and the King of Sicily promised Queen Oriana to stay two whole months for King Amadis: But at the end of that time, seeing that he did not return, they resolved to depart, to wit the Emperor into Trebifond, and King Alparacy into Gaul, hoping to recover his Kingdom of Metz: Wherefore the Queen knowing, that she should do them wrong to stay them any longer, would no farther importune them, save that she desired the King of Sicily to leave with her, whilst his War lasted, the Queen and her Daughter, which he liked very well, as did the Ladies also: For this Request came in part from them. And of this Lucella had been the spoker,

Aa 2

that

that he might stay for the Knight of the Burning Sword, as he had sent him word by Macetta.

These Princes then being upon their Embarkment, Lifvart and Perion, who thought long till they saw their Princesses, would not leave the Emperor, and Olorius would willingly have join'd them Company, but he had promised the King of Sicily to help him, during his Affairs. As likewise had Florelus, putting off his Marriage with the Dutchess of Savoy till his Return. Now Gradaflea had long desired to know the Princesses Onoloria for the sake of Lifvart: And for this cause he so importun'd him, that he yielded to take her with him into Trebisond: of which nevertheless he would willingly have excused himself if he could. And thus they entered into Alquisa's Ship, who with her Damself, which she had brought into the Isle of Argences, undertook to Conduat them into Asia. So after many thanks on all sides and leave taken, they set Sail. And the King of Sicily did the same on the other side.

They were no sooner removed, but two young Princesses arrived at London, to be bred up with the Queen: The one Daughter to King Galaor, named Galercia, and the other to Dom Bruno, called Altimonea, both fair in person, and who took so great Love to the Infanta Lucella, that they could not be one without the other. At which Queen Oriana was well pleased, passing with them part of the melancholy she was in, for not having News of the King: In expectation of whom she determined to go to Mireheur and take them with her. Now she had not been long there, before the Gentleman, sent from Naples by Amadis, arriv'd, furnish'd with Letters and Words of Credence, which when he had declared to her, it rendred her exceedingly sad, understanding the Misfortune befall the Emperor Arquil, and his. And for this Cause she sent immediately for King Arban, and Angriote d' Estravaux, who being come to her, she communicated to them the Kings Message, desiring them to give order with all Diligence for the raising an Army, to the end their Masters Intention might have its effect. For which they provided so well, that in a few days there were found above Ten Thousand good Knights, ready to embark. And there were given them for Leaders and Captains, Glontes Duke of Cornwall, Guillan Duke of Bristow, Angriote d' Estravaux, and Ambor of Gandal, his Son. But as for King Arban, he staid behind, as being he, who (in the Kings Absence, and under the Queens Authority) wholly governed the Realm. Now all the others set to Sea, taking their Course for Naples. Of whom nevertheless we shall at present say no more, but return to the Knight of the Burning Sword and Gradamart.

## CHAP. LIII.

Now, after the Knight of the Burning Sword was cured of the Wounds, he had received in fighting against Gandalist, he embarkt with Gradamart, and of a Wonderful Adventure, they met at Sea.

Alan, setting Sail for the Island of the Vermilion Tower to his Father Galeotes, had the Wind so little commodious, that he arriv'd not there till eight days after the Knight of the burning Sword had taken his leave of those, whom he had restored to their Estate: Now Alan was much troubled at his not finding them: For he determined to make but little stay there, but to go with them into Gaul, to the King of Sicily, and help him in his Affairs. The Knight of the burning Sword and Gradamart, Sailing in full Sea, sometimes with fair Weather, and very often with Storms, there came upon the Knight of the burning Sword a Remembrance of the fair Lucella, which disgusted him Night and Day: so that he became wholly solitary, taking pleasure in nothing, but being alone, and musing, saying sometimes to himself.

Ah! ah! poor Wretch, had it not been better, thou hadst remained for ever Enchanted, and pierced with the Sword, which Gradaflea thrust into thy Stomach near the Chamber of Treasure? Alas! She wounded thee, but that Wound was not mortal, as this is, which I now suffer thro' Excess of Love! Ah! Lucella, how is it possible, that you being a simple Damself, simple I say, not for the Rank you hold, but for the Courteous Simplicity that is in you, have been able to reduce to so extream Submissiveness, such a Knight as him of the Burning Sword, who, having his Shield in his hand, never feared any Danger, that offered it self before his eyes? And nevertheless your charming look has so intimidated him, that he is become your Slave and Prisoner, not being able to endeavour the doing, or desiring any thing, but what it pleases you to ask him, which is the Complement of his Unhappiness. Ah! ah, poor Wretch! knowing thy little merit, and her Highness, the greatest Benefit that can befall thee, is to dye speedily! for 'twere not reasonable that so great a Lady as she is, should abase herself to regard the Good or Evil, that is Destined to thee. And moreover, if she should endeavour to cure thee, 'tis certain, that her Reputation would be lessened: Thus instead of receiving Service by thee or from thee, she

would have Damage. And since thou callest thy self Servant, the good Servant ought rather to seek the Honour of his Lord, than his own Life, since in case of necessity he ought to sacrifice himself for him, whose he is, nay to dye more than once, if it were possible.

Then he fell into a Fit of Despair and Mischance, that he was almost giving up the Ghost: and the more he thought to extinguish, or lessen his flame, the more did he resemble him, that throws a little Water on a burning Furnace. Which Gradamart perceiving, used all possible Endeavours to divert his Thoughts. Whence it happened one night, that as they were discoursing together, instead of sleeping, they heard the sound of an Harp, join'd with the Voice of a Gentleman, which together made a wonderful sweet Harmony. They both rose up, and perceived a Fleet of Ships, in one of which were two noble Flambeaus lighted under a Canopy of Cloth of Gold, where lay a young and handsome Knight, who sung and play'd on that Instrument. He, of whom I speak, had his Armour on his back, but his head and hands bare, and at his Bed-head was set a Verron of Alabastrer, very well wrought, and on it the Statue of a Lady, divinely fair, and so exquisitely carv'd, that it wanted nothing but Speech. In her right hand she had a Chain of Gold, which in the form of a Collar went about the Knights Neck, and on her Head a Crown with a setting, containing these words: *Onoria of Apollonia, Princess of Beauty*. In her left hand she had three other little Chains, with which were fastned by the Neck three Statues of Maids, crown'd with Royal Crowns, sitting at her feet, and having each of them her setting, of which the first was *Luciana*; the second *Imperia* Princess of Bohemia; and the third *Alegria* Infanta of Macedonia. And a little aside behind the Verron, hung a great Shield, of the brightest Steel, without any painting, with the Knights Helmet and Sword. At his feet were also two other Knights, lying on a Carpet, completely armed, except Helmets and Gauntlets. Gradamart and the Knight of the burning Sword, wondering at that Adventure, caused their Vessel to approach that, in which the Ladies were.

At that very time the Knight, who had been singing, break forth into these Words: Ah, *Lucella*, Princess of Sicily, how great Misfortune is befallen me, by having heard so great Commendations of you and your Beauty: For, from the day that my heart and mind have had a Testimony of your perfections, I have neither Rest nor Ease. When he held his Peace, without ceasing to sigh.

The Knight of the burning Sword, who felt himself stung by these Assertions, became so melancholly and pensive, that he was even ready to dye, when he heard him name her, whose passionate Servant he was; and said to Gradamart: Brother do you perceive the Arrogance of this Fool, who aspires to that, which he is not able so much as to look at?

Before

Before he gets from me, I will make him change his Opinion. If I can, or it shall cost one of us his Life.

In good faith, answered Gradamart, you will not do wisely: For neither he nor any other can do you any injury, by loving where he shall think good: Since if he places his Affection on an Object, not deserved nor attainable by him, he prepares for himself a greater Torment than any one can give him.

'Tis true, said the Knight of the burning Sword, and I certainly know it my self: And nevertheless 'twould be impossible for him to suffer so much pain, as he, of whom he speaks, deserves praise. But besides, what greater Glory can he pretend to, than the placing his Thoughts so high? If then such a Thought turn to his Honour and Content, should I not be a very Novice to suffer in my presence the Grasp to be thus cut under my feet, Ah! I should think my self unworthy ever to bear the name of Knight: Since also I visibly know, that he carries this Statue, thus set up, expressly for Love of her. Therefore I beseech you trouble my Head no farther: for in matters of Love, Counsel is no way approv'd.

As he speak this, the very Fire appeared in his Eyes, and from the side of his Vessel, he called to the Knight, that held the Harp, saying to him: You Sir Knight, who can sing otherwife of Love than you deserve: Come near, good Sir, or I shall go to you, to let you know how disordered your Head is, since it belongs not to you, nor any that resembles you, to speak of her whom you praise, and for whom you thus suffer.

When the other, who was in such a Ruse upon his Love, that he had not till then perceived him, heard this Speech, he suddenly threw off the Chain, he had about his Neck, and lacing on his Helmet, took his shield, and went boldly towards the other Vessel, where he saw Gradamart and his Companion, whom he calmly answered: Certainly, Knight, I will not deny either to you, or any other, but that I am guilty of folly, for loving in the place that my heart hath chosen: for all the merits in the World are in my Lady. And nevertheless my Loyalty being so great, that it exceeds my folly, I have presumed to venture on so high an Attempt: Yet I am of Opinion that neither of them have a greater Share in me, than Pride and presumption have in you, who make me so uncourteous a Discourse, full of Threats and Injuries. And to the end you may another time forbear giving of Counsel to those, that ask it not of you, the edge of my Sword shall teach you, that you should have held your peace, when you began for to speak.

Scarce had he uttered this Words, but he went up on the side of his Ship, and there began between him and the Knight of the burning Sword the cruellest Fight, that ever was seen. At which Gradamart was very much distressed.

pleas'd.

mis'd the most; and Gradamart would have repaired again, cause he had found a means to do it. But at last, seeing that they were not weary, and that their Combat had continued for the space of three long hours, he bethought himself, that he might keep them from worse, to gain them by Prayers, saying to them: Hold, my Lords, hold, for my sake spare your selves: for 'twould be a great Simplicity for you to kill one another on so small an Occasion.

This Speech so displeas'd the Knight of the burning Sword, that looking on Gradamart with a discontented eye, he thus answered him: Ah! Brother do you not wrong me, to esteem that little, which I value more than any thing, that ever befell me? Inasmuch, that, if this Knight does not acknowledge his Folly, and swear to me never to love her of whom he vaunts, I know not any man, nay not any god, whose Commands can make me put an End to this Battle.

By my Head, Sir Knight, said the other, you are then very far from what you imagin: since for this very Reason, which you alledge, I should fight, altho' I were dead.

Come on then, answered he of the burning Sword.

Then they began afresh, and with such Obstinacy, that they minded more to strike, than to ward one anothers blows, so that their blood ran down on all sides, without any Advantage being discern'd to either of them: But they thought indeed to continue so long, till their strength failing, their life should end also.

At which, Gradamart, much troubled, and knowing no Remedy for it, call'd the two Knights, who were on the other side, and said to them: My Lords, for GOD's sake, cause the Torches to be put out, they will at least have some Relaxation.



part of this fury pass'd off by little and little, and they sailed all night, so that by break of day they came to a certain Island, where they went ashore, to cure the Knight of the burning Sword, who was so wounded, that his life was much doubted. And nevertheless, he had such a spite against Gradamart, that he vouchsafed not so much as to speak to him, or look on him with a good eye, swearing and protesting, that as soon as he was well enough to bear arms, he would not stay an hour till he had fought the Rascal, who had so much offended him, that he would have his life. Wherefore, we will leave him, to tell you in the mean time, what the other did, and who he was.

---

#### C H A P. LIV.

Who the Knight was which had that fierce Combat with the Knight of the Burning Sword, and the Occasion why he sailed in such an Equipage.

**D**On Brian de Maniafte, King of Spain, had two Sons, of which the Eldest was named Olorius, a very valiant Knight, of whom our History has heretofore made mention. The second, called Birmartes, is he, of whom we now intend to speak, who was so accomplished both in Beauty of Countenance, Perfection of Members, and all other things, requisite to render a Man excellent, that there could hardly be found any one, that exceeded

only, without having ever seen her: So that he resolved to go to Alpatracy's Court, and do him as much Service, that he should willingly give her to him for Wife. And in this Intention, finding one day a fit opportunity, he humbly besought his Father to give him the Order of Knighthood. Which he refused him not, but Armed him, and the Solemnity of it was very great through all Spain. But the same day, as they arose from Table, he put himself on his knees before the King, and, with a very Good Grace asked him a Gift. Don Brian, who loved him as himself, was Liberal in promising.

Sir, said he, you will permit me then to make a Journey into Sicily, to see the Infanta Lucella, who is at this day esteemed the most perfectly fair and best behaved Lady in Europe: And if it is so, I will endeavour so to serve the King her Father, that he shall give her to me afterwards for Wife, as I ask her of him.

Don Brian, glad to see his Son in this Resolution, commended him, and was content, he should take such Knights of his Court as he would choose, with Money, and Equipage, necessary for so high an Enterprise. For which the Young Prince most humbly thanked him. And then having caused a great Frigate to be made ready, chose to accompany him amongst other Knights, the Duke of Biscay's two Sons, of which the Eldest was named Esquinel, and the other Meander of Spain. And these were the two who separated him, at the persuasion of Gradamart, as he was fighting against the Knight of the burning Sword. They then being Embarked in very good Order, Sailed along the Coast of Africk, and leaving Sardinia on the right hand, Arrived at Messina, where they had News of the Raps, not long before committed by Frandalon Cyclops, and his Son, on the Queen of Sicily and Lucella. And for this cause Birmartes commanded his Partinners to take their Course to Silanchy, thoroughly resolved to fight them, whatever should come of it. But his Labour was in vain, because he found there no body but the Governour, whom Alpatracy had left, by whom he was acquainted with what was passed. Which wonderfully displeased him, and he cursed his Fortune for having deprived him of so fair an Occasion, by which he might have gained what he much doubted to lose. Then he returned again into his Ship, and taking leave of the Governour, went back towards Sicily, where he thought to find what he lookt for.

And some days after he met a Giant, that was carrying away several Christians Prisoners, with whom Birmartes had a fight, and finally vanquish him: The Duke of Biscay's two Sons defeated also six of his Knights, freeing all the Slaves, who were then in the Pirates Ship, and giving them Liberty to go, whither they pleased. And thus following their way, to take Harbor

Harbor in Sicily, the Sea grew so tempestuous, that they were, by Fortune, even against their wills, driven to the Kingdom of Apollonia, where they went ashore. And to refresh themselves, being weary of the Sea, they design'd to spend a Month in Visiting the Country. And for this cause commanding their Partinners not to depart from the Port, all the Knights mounted their Horses, taking their Way straight to the great City of Apollonia. And, as they travell'd, they learnt, how Branzahar Duke of Clarence, guarded in a Tower Onoria, Princess of Apollonia, who was reputed to be one of the fairest Ladies on the Earth. And that you may understand the manner and Reason of this Guarding, you will know, that this Duke of Clarence was a very powerful Knight, but hard laboured, deform'd, ill-behav'd, and besides belicend of a Giantly Lineage. Now the great Beauty of Onoria had been to advantageously related to him, that his Heart was smitten with the Report: And to see her, he came to the King her Father's Court, accompany'd by two Giants his Cousins: But the Ladies Presence to depress'd him of his Liberty, that he thought, he should dye, if he had her not for Wife. Wherefore with great Earnestness and Importunity he requested her of the King, who knowing him to be such an one, that his Daughter would never consent to it, excus'd himself, by pretending, that he had no Inclination to marry. The Duke, much astonish'd at this News, was ready then to despair: Nevertheless for the last Remedy he said to the King, that since Fortune had been so unkind to him in desiring him the thing, he most lov'd in this world, he should never have any Joy in his Heart; yet in recompence of the Pains, he had taken to come to his Court, he desired him that he would be pleas'd to grant him a Gift. Which the King would not deny him, provided his Daughters Honour were not offended by it.

That certainly Sir, said he, it shall not be: For I would sooner consent to my own Ruin. But since he will spend her Life without an Husband, and that her Beauty puts these who see her in an unparallel'd Torment, 'tis reasonable for the avoiding so much Mischief, that she be henceforth shut up in a Tower, where she shall be seen by none but you, the Queen, and those that shall be ordained to serve her. And I and these two Giants will keep the three first Entrances, so that none shall pass them, unless it be by force of Arms. And moreover he must, for her Service, accomplish the Conditions, which I shall cause to be written, and hung upon certain stones, that shall be erected in this Tower: by which, said he, shall be known the greatness of your Daughters Beauty, and how much I suffer, and will suffer for her sake.

Then was the King displeased at his having so lightly promised, what he could not with his Honour revoke, and would gladly have found an Excuse,

that might have contented the Prince of Clarence, but the stone being thron, and out of his hand, could not be recalled: wherefore he resolved to bow down his head, and permit his Daughter to be shut up, as he had been desired. And to do this Branzahar sent for Turkish-men from all parts, who in a few days built in the Tower a square Chamber, to serve as a Prison for the Princess: I may call it a Prison, because it was situated in the midst of a great hall, and inclosed round about with great Bars of Gold, through which, and no other ways, might be given her such things as she should have need of. True it is, that, for the little Room that this Square contained, 'twas not possible to see any thing fairer or Richer: For the Ceiling and Floor were covered with great Plates of Gold and Silver, curiously Damaskt, and the Walls were covered with hangings of Gold and Silk, divinely wrought for the excellence of the Manufacture. In the midst there was a Bed, of which the Canopy, Curtains, Coverings, and Sides, were of Crimson Satin, Richly Embroidered, and set with Pearls, Rubies, Diamonds, and Emeralds: And beside it, hung all sorts of Musical Instruments, on which Onoria could play. This Prison then being finisht as you have understood, Branzahar appointed to be set before it a Pillar of Alabaster, and on the top of it the Crowns of the Princess cut to the Life, with a writing round about her Head in the form of a Ducal Cap, which contained these words: *Onoria, Lady of beauty.*

This done, he took the Infanta, and shut her up under a strong padlock, of which himself kept the key, and leaving her Damselfs without, he said: Here shall you be inclosed, to Recompence the Cruel Prison of Love, in which you keep me Captive, and shall not come forth till such time as he comes, who, easing me of this pain, shall himself receive a greater, in seeing you over great and dangerous Beauty.

Then he fastned a Writing to the pillar, the contents of which were these: Thou Knight, who by thy Prowess art come to this place, where thou mayst see the Fairest Princess of the world, be not so hardy as to take her forth, before thou hast carryed this Image, which represents her Person, through the whole Earth, and maintained by Force of Arms, that she, for whom it was made, is the first in great Beauty. And if thy Fortune is so prosperous that Victory always accompanys thee, yet art thou bound to bring thither the Images of the Ladies, Mistresses of the Knights, vanquish't by thee, with their Names written underneath. Then, and no sooner, shalt thou be permitted to take the Fair One out of Prison. But in case thou shalt find a better than thy self, by whom thou shalt be conquered, if thou shalt bring the Permission of such thy Conqueror, signed and sealed, with his Mistresses Name and Seal, then may she go forth in Liberty at her Pleasure:

sure: For such is the Covenant between the King of this Countrey and me.

Having fastned this Writing, he caus'd another Pillar to be set up before the first and principal Gate of the Tower, with a Roll containing what follows. Let none henceforward adventure to pass any farther, unless it be by force of Arms: Because the Countenance of Onoria, Lady of Beauty, shall no more be marred, till he shall come, who shall wholly deliver her. For Branzahar, Prince of Clarence, will defend this Passage even to Death.

And presently he appointed one of his Giants for the Guard of this gate, and another for the second, and himself for the third: And they three, Arm'd with very rich Armour, undertook to fight all Comers. At which the King exceedingly wonder'd, that such and so great a Lord as Branzahar, would put himself in such subjection, and danger of his Person. Now he was a good Knight, and they whom he had chosen, strong and hardy, which made the speedy Deliverance of Oriana little expected: But the King and Queen might see her when they thought good, and this little she took as a great comfort in her Fortune. Of which Birmartes advertiz'd, immediately thought, according to the Remoteness of Branzahar, that she, for whom he undertook so great a Charge, must needs be very fair: Wherefore he askt some of the Countrey, whether this Adventure had not yet been try'd by any one. He was answer'd, that above an hundred Knights, as well of the Court, as Strangers, had done their Endeavours, but they had all been vanquish't by the Giant of the first Gate: So that 'twas now six Months since any one had dar'd to present himself before him. Now the more that was said of it to Birmartes the more 'd his Desire of going to see this Fair One encrease: so that he resolv'd, what ever might happen, to try his Fortune for the setting her at Liberty. But he knew not what was contain'd in the writing, fastned to the Pillar of the Image, as you have been told: For it was indeed unknown to all. By occasion of which many good Knights put their Lives in hazard, hoping to gain Honour, and the love of Onoria. So Birmartes, and his two Companions Elquinel and Meander, travell'd till they came to the City of Apolonia, where he desired they would shew him Onoria's Tower. Which a Knight of the Countrey willingly did.

Then a great Number following him, some ran to acquaint the King, that a Stranger would fight the Giant of the first Gate: And believe it, Sir, said they, 'twould be impossible to find a more Fair, Young, and Dextrous Knight than he is.

The King, very glad of this News, suddenly took Horse, and went to see Birmartes, who had just made an end of reading the writing on the first Pillar. Then they saluted one another, and the King, bowing himself, said:

to him: Good, Knight, if Fortune will so favour you, that you can pull down the Pride of the Duke, and deliver my Daughter, assure your self, I will greatly recompence you.

Birmartes, seeing the good Reception the King gave him, thus answered him: Sir, he, in whose hands all things are, knows the desire I have to serve you, and such as you: especially in such Acts, in which, besides the Honor that may be gain'd, consists the liberty of such a Prince as my Lady your Daughter: Not that I will presume to promise my self the putting an end to that, to which so many good Knights could not attain: but at least I will do my Endeavour, being assured, that, so doing, Death or Life cannot but be honourable to me, imitating the Gallant Men, who have tryed it before me, and in comparison of whom I am nothing.

Then he prepared himself to begin the fight, because the first Giant stood ready to receive him. They delay'd not therefore long to run one against the other, neither of them missing his Blow: For the Giant struck him with such force on the Shield, that he pierc'd it, and his Spear, passing under his Arm, appeared above a yard on the other side. But Birmartes, who ran in a more even line, aiming lower, struck him between the Saddle-bow and the Stomach, so that the Plates of the Giant's Armour, not being strong enough to resist the fierceness of the blow, the Lance entered into his Guts, and he fell dead to the Ground, without stirring either foot or hand. Of which all the Spectators were very glad, doubting nevertheless, that Birmartes was cruelly wounded. But this Opinion lasted not long: for he, withdrawing his Lance, march'd towards the second Gate, where he found the other Guard, exceedingly troubled for his Colours dash'd, to revenge whom, he couch'd his Spear, and setting spurs to his Horse, mist his blow. But so did not Birmartes, who met him so roughly, that his Lance flew into his Sides, and with the shock, their Horses gave each other, they both fell, and their Riders under them. Nevertheless Birmartes got speedily up again on his feet, and taking his Sword in his hand, perceived the other, who lamented exceedingly for the extreme pain he felt, having his left Leg bruis'd in three or four places, and his Sides lying on him, that he was not able to sit.

Wherefore Birmartes coming to him, said: Giant, thou art dead, if thou dost not yield thy self vanquish'd, and permit me, without any further hindrance, the Entrance of this Gate, as I shall think good.

Ah, answered he, that you may well do, and I yield my self wholly to your Discretion.

Then Birmartes pass'd on, and perceiv'd Branzahar, mounted on a great black Horse, who came to meet him. Now he was hard-set, and ill-

shap'd,

shap'd, and had nevertheless in himself many good Conditions and Courtesies, as he then shew'd, saying to Birmartes:

Knight, thou hast already gain'd so much Honour, that the Glory of it will remain with thee for ever: and tho' it has been against my Will, and my Heart cannot be contented with the Loss of my Friends, whom I so much lov'd, and whom thou hast slain, but I am call'd to revenge them: Nevertheless considering, that this Misfortune is befall'n them through thy only Prowess, as thou wast doing what thou oughtest to do for the obtaining Renown amongst valiant men, I cannot forbear using to thee the Courtesies, that Reason commands me, seeing thee weary, without Spear, and without Horse: so that if I should have the better of thee, equip'd and mounted as I am, such a Victory would rather turn to my Disgrace than Glory: wherefore I choose rather to alight, and being equal in Arms, to let Fortune play her part, stretching forth her hand to which of us two she pleases.

Saying this, he set foot to ground, and embracing his great and strong Shield, with his naked sword in his hand, march'd towards Birmartes, who having heard him speak so graciously, answer'd him in this manner: My Lord Prince, your Courtesy has more amaz'd me, than the greatness of your Body, and the strength and largeness of your Limbs: for the Magnanimity of Hearts consists not in the Mass of Flesh, but in Generosity and Vertue of the Person, who loves Honour, and desires to perpetuate his Memory, not by boasting and Arrogance, but by doing his Duty with few and gentle Words, and Vigorous Execution: so that having already found in you one of these two points, which is Courtesy, I make no doubt but the second is not far from it: seeing they are seldom, or never asunder, no more than Fire is from Heat, and Heat from Fire. Wherefore, if it were honourable and reasonable for me, I should rather and more willingly make Friendship with you, than pass any farther to the trial of our persons one against the other. But there being no Remedy, neither you nor I can refuse the course that is offered: Forasmuch as it would be an Injury to you to leave the Enterprize you have begun, and I should be greatly blam'd not to pursue the Fortune, which has given me such a beginning, as every one may have seen. Let the Victory therefore be to him, on whom it shall please Fortune to bestow it.

At this word they would no longer spend the time in Discourses, but they gave each other with such fierceness, that all the Beholders stood amaz'd. One great Advantage Birmartes had over the other: he was so nimble, dextrous, and active, that of ten blows, which Branzahar struck, not one

did

did any Damage to his Enemy, so well could he shield himself, or slip from them. But it was not so to th' his Adversary, who was so big, that his Legs were scarce able to bear the weight of his Body: Inomuch that Birmartes began to treat him so roughly, as made him doubt the Issue of the Fight, and with good reason, for the loss of his Head, that streamed forth from the many wounds he had received, and which by little and little so weakened him, that after several great blows, given on both sides, he fell down in a swoond. Wherefore Birmartes, setting his foot on his Breast, pulled the Helmet from his head.

But as soon as he had Air, his Spirits returned, and Birmartes said: At this blow shall thy days be ended, and the Love thou hast born the fair one, unless thou grantst me the Entrance into her Chamber at my pleasure. And to the end I may be as gracious to thee in effect, as thou hast been to me in words, granting me what I ask thee, I will give thee thy life, without taking to my self the Honour of the Victory, which indeed I could not have over so good a Knight as thou art.

Branzahar, seeing himself in this Extremity, had his heart much oppressed; but not knowing how to remedy it, he thus answered Birmartes: I now well know, that 'tis a great Folly to attempt the breaking and forcing what Fortune has ordained, who has hitherto been so contrary to me, that by making me love her, who is fairer than beauty it self, I am reduced to the shame, in which every one may see me: therefore, Knight, do with me what thou pleasest, since 'tis in thy power, if thou thinkest good, to give me my death, which considering the Misfortune of my life, I desire more than thou imaginest. Go then at thy ease to see her, whose look alone has such Power, that the force, thou hast had against me and mine, will not perhaps be able to preserve thee from dying at the sight of her. Then mayst thou know, how much greater a benefit thou wilt do me in taking away of my life by a sudden death, than in leaving me to dye so many times a day, as I shall if I live any longer.

When Birmartes heard him speak thus, he had so great Compassion of him, that he humbly besought the King to cause him to be lookt after by his Chyrurgeons. But Branzahar refusing it, commanded his Serbants to provide a Litter for him, and the other wounded Giant: and without any farther stay took his way to Clarence, where he led afterwards the most melancholly life in the world, having always before the eyes of his mind Onorias Beauty, and the Shame he had received by loving her too much.

## CHAP. LV.

How Birmartes went to see the Fair Onoria in her Prison: and the Discourse they had together.



Branzahar, Prince of Clarence, being carry'd out of the field, and Birmartes remaining gloriously victorious, the King came to embrace him, saying to him: Ah! fortunate Knight, and more courageous than can be express'd, let us go, if you please, to my Daughter, whom I hope, thro' your Prowess, shortly to see at liberty, and my self quit of the promise I made the Prince, who kept her so closely imprison'd to my great Regret.

Let us go, Sir, answered Birmartes.

Then, accompany'd by many gallant Knights, they went into the Hall, where Onorias Prison was, as you have heard. Now the heat of the day was so excessive, that Birmartes took off his Helmet, and delivered it to one

of his Attendants, having an unusual colour in his face, when the King presented him to his fair Daughter: who, having already understood by her Damself the Issue of his fight with Branzahar, whom the morally just, was the Joyfullst Woman in the world. And this pleasure render'd her Countenance so gay, that join'd with the Excellence of her Beauty, it made her come very near Lucellas Perfection, this her Cheerfulness having given her a Grace more Divine than Humane.

Then the King said to his Daughter: Child, look on this Knight, who has for your sake done this day incredible Feats of Arms, and will, I believe, soon give you the opportunity of going forth from this Place: wherefore 'tis my Opinion, and Request that you treat him with Respect.

In good Faith, Sir, answered she, I should be very ungrateful, should I fail to do it, seeing the Obligation I have to him, who has already done so much for me.

Saying this, she stretcht forth her Arm thro' the Gate, to lift him up: for he was on his Knees, as surpris'd with her Love, and that with such reverence that, forgetting the Attention he had to that time born to her, for whom he had travers'd so many Seas, the word Branzahar had said to him, was found true in him, which he remembered very well: and therefore took her gently by the hand, and kissing it, said: Madam, the Prince did as he ought, in keeping you from being seen, since your gracious look is capable to kill men without Remedy.

Onoria blush'd a little at this praise, but not for any Dislike, she had at it: for Birmartes seem'd to her to accomplish a Knight, that she was exceedingly taken with him. And as he was going to answer him, the King interrupted their Discourse, and shewing Birmartes the Image and Writing fastned to the Pillar, said to him: My dear Friend, you have already done so much, that you may be said the best Knight in the world; yet there is more to be done, if you will finish this Adventure. See here the condition establish'd by the Prince of Clarence, which I believe will give you more trouble, than the combat of the three Giants.

Then Birmartes drew near and read the Writing, at which he was no way amaz'd, but thought that if he could perform it, besides the Honour he should get by it, he might also gain the Heart and Love of the fair one: Wherefore he answer'd the King: Sir, I know not why you think this Enterprize so difficult, since no Knight, how little Valiant soever, need fear going, thro' the World to maintain my Lady your Daughters beauty: for she is such, that if the Victory in Fight follows Reason, 'tis certain he cannot be vanquish'd, but shall be Victorious in all places. And to shew you that this is true, I accept from this time this office, trusting, that where Prowess shall

be

be wanting, Reason and Justice shall supply it.

In good faith, said the King, I am more secure of your Courage, than of my Daughters Beauty: And affectionately thank you for the Honour and Good you desire me. But let us go to my Palace, where you shall bewell lookt to: for I am sure you are Wounded in several places.

Robertel's Birmartes would first take leave of Onoria, who had heard all he said of her, & the Promise he made to defend her Beauty throughout the World. Which caus'd in her such a Regard for him, that beholding him with her gracious Eyes, he humbly entreated him, that he would, after he was Cur'd, come again to her before his Departure. This request he willingly granted, and bowing very low, went his way, leaving her no less desirous of him, than he was ready to lose her all his life. For Love at that instant seiz'd of their Hearts, mutually transferring them by his Divine Powder into each others body, without their having any Perception, or Sentiment of it, but by the heat of the lasting fire, which he then kindled in them. Thus Birmartes followed the King, who, as they went along, ask'd him his Name and Qualities, but he brought him to excuse him for the present, telling him that he should at another time understand it all: Wherefore the King, seeing him desirous to conceal himself, would no farther importune him. Discourting then of other matters, they came to the Palace, where Birmartes was very kindly welcomed by the Queen and the Ladies, who conducted him into a richly furnish'd Chamber, and to do him the greater Honour, disarm'd him with their own Hands, and put him to Bed. Then came Chyrurgion, to visit his wounds, of which they promis'd him a speedy Cure, desiring every one to retire and let him sleep. But when he was alone, he began instead of resting to meditate on the Beauty of his new Mistress, no longer complaining of Lucella, who had been the cause of his coming into these Parts, where he had seen what gave him so much Torment, Onoria, for whom he was torment'd suffering no less. But Birmartes, not able to keep this fire any long time smothering within his breast, discover'd some few days after his thoughts to his two Companions, Esquinel and Meander, who comforted him in the best manner they could, giving him hopes, that he being return'd, and having finish'd what he promis'd, the King of Appollonia would think himself happy to give him his Daughter to Wife.



## CHAP. LVI.

How Birmartes, being cur'd, departed from the King of Apollonia, and Onoria, to begin his Enterprife, and the fuccels of it.

**T**HE Degree Birmartes had to accomplifh his Promise, made to maintain Onorias Beauty in all places, very much forwarded the Cure of his wounds, which being perfected, he caus'd his Ships to be put in fuch Equipage, as the Knight of the burning fword found them in, when they fought.

Then the day of his Embarking being come, he addrefs'd himfelf to the King, and faid to him: Sir, foasmuch as I refolve to fet forth prefently to Sea, I humbly defire of you, that I may fee my Lady your Daughter before my Departure, to the end ſhe may in your prefence, and with your leave grant me a gift, that I will ask of her.

Well then, answered the King, let us go thither.

So the King brought him to the Tower, whither being come, after Salutations on both ſides, Birmartes fet knee to the ground, and addrefling himfelf to Onoria, faid to her: Madam, I am, according to your command, come to take leave of you, for to accomplifh what I have willingly oblig'd my felf to, hoping (with juſt Reason) not to fall into any danger, that can hurt me, being accompany'd by your good wiſhes, with which I beſeech you to favour me, as alſo with the Honour of filling my ſelf henceforth your Knight in all Places.

Onoria, very glad to ſee that preſented to her, which ſhe with all her heart deſir'd, made him this Answer: In good deed I find my ſelf very happy, that ſuch a Knight, as you are, vouchſafes to name himſelf mine, and I ſhould be too indifferently nice ſhould I reſuſe this Offer, which I accept, and requeſt it of you, as much as poſſibly I can, truſting ſo far in your Valour, that my Beauty (which is little in reſpect of ſo many other excellent Ladies) will gain repute thro' the world, your Courage ſupplying in it, what Nature has omitted: But one thing more I will deſire of you, which is, that you tell me your Name, to the end I may henceforth better know him, who is mine.

Madam, answer'd he, I will never diſobey you, be pleas'd then to underſtand, that I am nam'd Birmartes the Amorous, and that with good Reason: For only Love, and ſhe, whoſe I am, have Power over me.

This ſurname did Birmartes give himſelf, which he never afterwards loſt. Onoria very well underſtood the End, at which he aim'd, as did alſo the King, who did not at all diſlike it, but immediately reſolv'd, that at his return, if he were found worthy of her, he would give him his Daughter in Marriage, who (had it not been for the Kings Prefence) would not have ſtuck in ſo ſhort a way, having matter enough for a longer Entertainment with her Friend: But he durſt not ſay any more, nor he neither, who had her Advice, leaving her in ſtrange Pain, thro' the fire kindled in her heart by Love, who before Birmartes's Arrival had not the leaſt Power over her. But he then ſhow'd himſelf victorious, ſo that to manifeſt the Beginning of his Trophy, he ſhew'd her Eyes with Tears, and her heart with Aggs and torments. Thus it is, that this Beautiful Boy treats thoſe, that obey him, who are very often reduc'd to ſuch Blindneſs, that nothing pleases them; but what is moſt hurtful for them. Birmartes then, being gone forth from the Prefence, came to the Pillar, and took her Image, ſaying ſo loud, that every one might hear him. Certainly, Portraiture, tis my Intention to bring you back to this Place, ſo well accompany'd, that every one ſhall know your Glory.

Then he went out of the Hall, and with the Kings good Leave, having arm'd himſelf, went aboard his Ship, and placing the Effigies, he brought with him upon a rich Pillar, he ſet ſail ſtraight for Conſtantinople, where he went aboard, and there in the Prefence of the Princes and Lords related the Creation of his Orage. Wherefore a Son of the King of Hungaries, being above all others Luciana the Emperors Daughter, undertook to maintain, that his Affairs was fairer than Onoria: Whereupon they came to a fight, in which Birmartes was victorious; and carry'd the Portraiture of Luciana into his Veſſel, where he ſtood it to the Pillar with a little Chain underneath the other. After this he had ſeveral Combats with many other good Knights: But he car'd not for having the Effigies of theſe, they ſeem'd not thinking them worthy to accompany his Portraiture, unleſs they were the Daughters of Emperors or Kings: For to that, and no more, he was oblig'd.

After this he made no long ſtay in Conſtantinople, but taking leave of the Emperor and the Knights of his Court, went to Macedonia, where he took the Image of the Infanta Alegria, the Kings Daughter, gaining the Victory over a Duke, who was greatly in love with her, as alſo over many others, which would be tedious to name.

Thence he took his way to Bohemia, where he enter'd the field againſt another Duke, from whom he gain'd the Statue of Imperia, Daughter to King Graſandor, and Queen Mabita, who was a beautiful and gallant

Winters; but yet she remain'd there for a Pledge, accompany'd with many other Ladies and Gentlewomen: Whence his flame spread so far, that he was from that time in all those parts nam'd the Knight us'd to overcome.

Then seeing, that there was none left in Bohemia to oppose him, he took a Resolution of going to Naples, having been advertiz'd that the King had a Daughter nam'd Juliana, a Lady of extraordinary Beauty. And indeed he was falling thither, when he met, the Knight of the burning Sword. So they fought, and were at last parted, as you have heard, at which he was so displeas'd, that he said at every turn, he never should have any Satisfaction, till he found him again. Wherefore we shall say no more of him till a fitter Opportunity: For you well know, that this History is not so much for him, as for the Knight of the burning Sword, whose Promises and Valour we intend chiefly here to describe.

## CHAP. LVII.

How the Knight of the Burning Sword Stole away from Gradamart, to go and seek Birmarties, and what befel him.

**Y**OU have heard, how much displeas'd the Knight of the burning Sword was for having been parted from Birmarties by Gradamart, with whom he shew'd himself so offended, that during the stay, he made for the Cure of his wounds, he would not so much as speak to him, or have any Discourse with him. Nevertheless the other cras'd not to perform the Office of a true Friend, in treating him in the best manner, he could; being however very much troubled at the ill Countenance, he shew'd him.

Now it happen'd one night that the Knight of the burning Sword being almost recovered, and quelling on the sight, he had with Birmarties, grew so discontented, that he quite lost his Rest: And turning first on the one side, then on the other, he said within himself: What dost thou, poor Wretch, so long in thy bed, dishonor'd as thou art? VWho hinders thee from going to take Revenge of him, that loves her, whom none merits to serve? I know not, why thou wert ever born into the world: nor what Reason mov'd thee to take Arms, making such ill use of them, that thou hast been fain to endure in thy Presence a Stranger bragging, and singing the Love

of thy Mistress, and (which is worse) to depart from thee with so much Glory. Ah! Madam, perhaps you also love him, who thus (to my great Regret) publishes the Perfection of your Praises! How unfortunate to me was the Day, I first saw you so beautiful; that being near you I dy, and absent from you, I cannot live! For GOD's sake let me understand, if you have left me, to love this other, that obeying your VWill, I may find him where ever he is, not to do him any hurt, but to serve him all my Life, if it is pleasing to you. And nevertheless it cannot sink into my mind, that you have in so short a time forgotten your Loyal Slave; since my heart (where ever you have been) has always spoken to you plainly, and without Dissimulation: VWhich makes me believe, that you are not angry with me. VWherefore I will stay no longer in this place, but will go and avenge you of him, who has rashly (without your Command) presumed to serve and love you, which he shall pay dear for, if I find him, or it shall cost me my Life.

Having said this, his Fure in such manner increas'd, that he rose hastily out of the Bed, and finding, that Gradamart was asleep, he put on his Armor, and having himself hidled and clad in one of the Hoopes, which Galeotes had given him, he rode to wards the Shore, where his Hattiniers were waiting, who all wondered to see him at such an hour. Then entering into his Chessel, he commanded them to weigh Anchor, and follow Fortune, which could not (he said) be so contrary to him, but that 'twould guide him to the Place, where he should meet the Knight, that had parted so well from him. Then those of the Ship askt him, whether he would please to stay for Gradamart.

No, answered he: He shall no more hinder me from executing my Will, so to disgrace me, as he has done.

This Command they durst not any further dispute, but letting loose their Chessel, without either Rudder, or Oar, went away with the Current of the stream, being driven along by the Wind and Waves, it days together, at the End whereof they met a Ship, on the Deck of which sat a very ancient Man, whom the Knight of the burning Sword saluted, saying to him: Honorable Father, GOD preserve you: I desire you of Courtesy to tell me, if you have seen me, or know any News of a Knight, that sails along this Sea in an unusual manner: for I must find him dead or living.

Then he gave him the best Description, he could, of Birmarties: which the Oldman having heard, made him this Answer: Your finding of him, Sir Knight, will perhaps be much more to your Dammage than Profit, he being such an one, that there are few better, or indeed so good to be found

In the world. Nevertheless, since you so affectionately request it, I will tell you what I know. He has taken his Course towards Naples, in the way to which I met him: and that is all you can at this time learn of him.

GOD give you a good Voyage, said the Knight of the burning Sword: You have greatly satisfied me.

Then commanding his Secretman to make Strait for Naples, they took lost sight of each other.

In the mean time Gradamart, who had fetcht a long sleep, awoke, and finding neither his Companion, nor his Arms, was exceedingly discontented. Then he went Strait to the Shore, thinking to meet the Gessel, in which they came: but there was not the least Sign of it. Wherefore he began to curse and ban his Fortune, which was so contrary to him, that having on to Good an Occasion prefer'd two of the Best Knights in the World from Death, he should Receive for it so much Displeasure.

And in this discontent he cry'd out: Ah, ah! Knight of the Burning Sword! how ill do You know the great Amity your Friend Gradamart bears You! You had surely little reason thus to forsake me. Little Reason did I say? No, no, You had great Reason, since I bear such Affection to him, who so little esteems me, having so strangely absented himself from me. But, let what may befall me, I will never cease Travelling, till I have found you, that I may complain of you to your self.

As he was thus venting his Discontents, he perceived on the Shore a Fisher-Boat, into which having put some Provision, he entered, and having unfistned it from a Post, to which it was ty'd, abandon'd it to the Waves, that in a little time carry'd him out of sight of the Land, so discontented, that he every moment wish'd his own Death, when he met the same Old man that had spoken to the Knight of the Burning Sword, whom he ask'd, whether he could tell him any News of a Knight, great of Stature, and Armed in white Harness, who Sailed in a Boat, accompany'd only by two Harninners.

In truth, answer'd the Old Man, you enquire after him, in finding whom you shall have greater Joy than you imagin: and you your self shall be more sought after by him, than he is by you: and more I will not tell you at this time.

Gradamart greatly wond'ring at this Discourse, and would have desired him to tell him what he meant: but the Old Man had scarce finish'd his Speech, when a brisk Gale of Wind carry'd away the Gessel he was in, so that Gradamart could no more get near him. Wherefore he resolv'd to follow his Adventure,

Adventure, and not to leade seeking his Companion, who steering, as you have been told, Strait towards Naples, berought himself to change his Name, commanding his Harninners to call him thenceforward only the Knight without Fortune.

Now it happened that the second day after he had spoken to the Old man, the Sea grew so Tempestuous, that he was forc'd to take Port in Civita Vecchia near Rome, where he went ashore, bidding his Harninners to go and stay for him near Naples, whither himself would go by Land. Wherefore he mounted his Steed, and took the great road: along which he perceived a Damisel coming, accompany'd by one only Squire, carrying a Pacquet, wipt up in red Camblet.

The Knight of the Burning Sword courteously saluted them, and they returned his salutation, the Damisel saying to him: Perhaps, Sir Knight, you are one of those who have slain the Emperor of the Countrey.

Why do you say this to me? answer'd the Knight.

Because, repli'd she, that, if you are of that Faction, I advise you to take another way, than this of Rome: for the Marquess of Mantua is entered into it, with a good Number of Soldiers, and keeps it for the Emperess Leonora, and her Grand daughter, to whom the Empire comes by right of succession. And whatever Knight, or other Person he finds, holding the part of the Duke, he certainly puts them to death.

I pray you, Damisel, said the Knight of the Burning Sword, to give me an Account of this Emperor's Death: For I never heard of it, but from you.

Then she began to relate to him the Duke's Treason, as you have heard it. And, said she, the Marquess has, within these few days, had News, that King Amadis is arriv'd at Naples; to revenge the Death of the Emperor, his Son-in-law: at which several of this Countrey are very joyful, and expect great Forces from all parts, as is reported.

As the Gods may help me, Damisel, answer'd the Knight of the burning Sword, I am very glad that I am arriv'd in time to do service to the King you speak of: for I greatly love and esteem him.

Ah! said she: You have Reason, and as far as I see, my way is shorten'd, because I was charg'd to address my self to the first Knight, I should meet on this way, making me such Discourses as you do, and present him what is in this Pacquet. And nevertheless I will cause it to be carried for you to the City of Naples, whither I will accompany you, as I am charg'd: and there I will tell you who it is that sends it to you and other things, for which you will not be sorry. In the mean time consider if you please to command me in any thing, for I will obey you in all.

In good Faith, Damsel, answer'd the Knight of the Burning Sword, you make me wonder at the News. As for me, I have nothing to do at Rome, and I think it best, that we should go straight to King Amadis; for it seems already long to me, till I see the Present display'd, and know, who does me this Favour.

Let us go, said she, I pray you.

Then they both went on together; but they had not been two days in Company, when they entered into a long Forrest, where they met five Knights completely Arm'd, who, addressing themselves to him of the Burning Sword, cry'd to him: Stay, Knight, stay: You must tell us, whom you will Assist, whether the Emperor of Rome, or his Adversary.

I will help, answer'd he, those, in whom Treason has no Part, and will be against the Duke, who has so basely Murder'd his Lord.

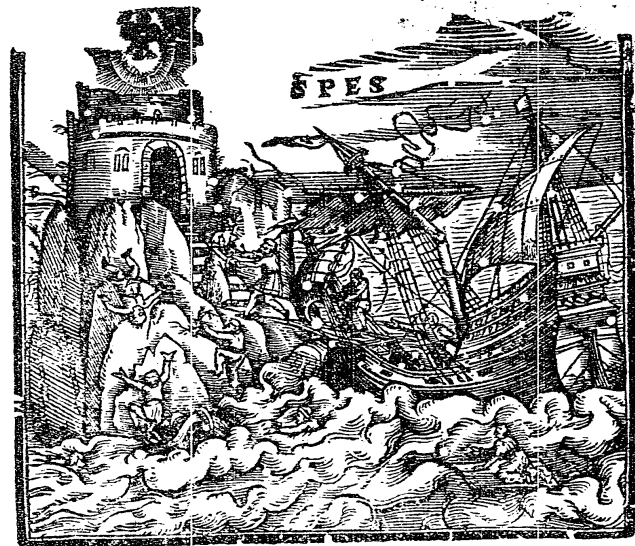
This, reply'd they, is the Way, you should take to a speedy Death.

Having said this, they all couch'd their Lances, and ran upon him with such violence, that they wanted but little of throwing him out of his Saddle; yet he kept firm, and gave one of them such a Blow, that he never spake more: Then he drew his Spear out of the Dead-Man's Body, and Charging the four others, Kill'd the Second on the Field, his Staff breaking to Shivers. Then he suddenly put hand to his Sword, and there began between them a wonderful Fight, which yet soon came to an End; for the Three that remain'd, could not bear the fury of him, who, in such manner Assaulted them, that the Third had his Head Cleft asunder; which the Two last seeing, turn'd their Backs, and fled away full Speed. But the Knight of the Burning Sword let them go, and without pursuing them any farther, follow'd his way with the Damsel, who, much wonder'd at his great Powers, and high Chivalry. Now these Rascals were Allies of the Duke, who, lying in Ambush in the Forrest, watcht such Knights as were ill Accompany'd, and fell upon them, when they understood them to be of the Deceas'd Emperor's Party; so that many worthy Men had already, in this manner lost their Lives, when they met with the Knight of the Burning Sword, who, Chastis'd them, as you have heard. And for this cause, we will leave him to Travel with the Damsel, and change our Discourse.

C H A P.

C H A P. LVIII.

How the King of Sicily, and his Fleet, had News of the Emperor Arquisis, and his Sons Death, and of their Arrival at Naples.



OUR History has before acquainted you, how the King of Sicily, Olorius, and Don Florelus, Embarkt in Great Britain with a good Number of other Knights, and set Sail for France. Now they had not Sail'd Eight whole Days, when they met some Vessels Commanded by the Count of Armignac, a Kinman to the King of Metz, for whose sake they were Cruising along the Coasts to hinder the Sicilians, or any other of their Party from taking Port in Sicily. Now the Count immediately knew

D D 2

by

by the Banners and Colours, that the King of Sicily was in the Fleet; wherefore he commanded his People to assault it on all sides, hoping to take him Prisoner. Then the two Fleets join'd, and with Hooks and Grapling Irons, coupled their Vessels, so that the fight was fierce and bloody; but at length the Armignacians had the worst, being all either slain, or taken prisoner, and the others remain'd victorious, by means whereof they understood from the Prisoners, how the Emperor Arquisil, and his Son Dienerpius were slain, and that King Amadis was arriv'd at Naples, where he was gathering People from all Parts, to Revenge their Deaths; as also that the King of Metz was Raising a great Army to Succor the new Empire. This being heard by the King of Sicily, a thought came suddenly into his Mind, that since his Enemy was taking that way, he should never find a better Opportunity to Recover his Kingdom, than whilst his Adversary was absent; and for this cause, he order'd his Pilots and Mariners to make all the Speed they could; but as it often happens, that Man proposes otherwise than GOD has dispos'd, the Night following there arose such a Tempest, that being carry'd along by the Violence of it, they found themselves the Sixth Day after in the Spanish Sea, and were, whether they would or no, forc'd to pass Hercules's Pillars, and enter into the Mediterranean: Wherefore they wholly chang'd their Design, and the King of Sicily was of Opinion to go and find King Amadis, that they might together fight the Usurper of the Empire, and his Son, Once they were join'd.

Thus they took their way to Naples, where they arriv'd almost at the same time as did Don Florestan, King of Sardinia, who was come thither with a great Fleet, and the Duke of Calabria, who, being in Love with the fair Jusufiana, Daughter to the King of Naples, had brought a great Army by Land. They were all very honourably Receiv'd, principally by King Amadis, who, was but a little before, also, by Adariel, Prince Elinius, Sycius of Ireland, Abies, and several other Renowned Knights, who were all come to this War. Now they being all Assembled in Council, it was resolv'd, they should expect the Army of Don Brian, King of Spain, and that, which King Amadis had sent for out of Great Britain; and that in the mean time, word should be sent to the Princes of the Empire, who were of their Party, to keep themselves in a Readiness to move, when Notice should be given them. Thus they all staying in the great City of Naples, visited every Day the Queen and the Ladies, the King keeping so Noble and Magnificent a Court, that they all wonder'd at it.

## C H A P. LIX.

How Diemartes arriv'd at the Court of Naples, where he defy'd all the Knights who were there, concerning their Mistresses Beauties, and the Wonders he did.

These Kings and great Lords being one Day sat at Dinner, there entered into the Hall, a Tall and Comely Knight, completely Arm'd in a Rich White Armour. In his Hands he bore the Effigies of a Lady, at whose side were certain Little Chains of Gold, to which were fastned three Images, that were supported by two Knights. He, who March'd first, was Diemartes a Burgundian, of whom our History has formerly spoken at large, who (without doing any Act of Reverence) as if a loud, if the King of Naples was there, and was answer'd, that he was, and was then him.

Then did he address himself first to the King, and afterwards to all the other Knights, saying, Most Mighty Kings and Lords, think it not strange, that presenting my self before you, I have not shewn that Submission, which your Excellencies deserve; the Reason of which is, that I bear in my Arms this Image, which is the Representation of a Princess, whose Greatness is such, that She owes no Respect to any King or Emperor, how powerful soever. And this I say farther, that my Arrival in this Court is only to maintain against all Knights, that Thoria, Lady of Beauty, Infanta of Apollonia, is Fairer than any other Lady or Damsel in the World. And this I intend to prove by Arms against any one, that will contradict it, on such Condition, that, if the Opponent is Servant or Friend to the Daughter of any King or Emperor, for whose Love he enters into Fight against me, he shall be Bound to bring her Image Crown'd, and her Name Writ underneath, which he shall lose, and I will joy with these others, in case the Victory is mine; but if the Knight has a Mistress of Meaner Rank, he shall be excus'd from bringing her Image or Portraiture. Now then, Sir, said he to the King of Naples, since this Adventure is arriv'd in your Court, before it is in any other of these Princes, I beseech you to cause the occasion of my Coming, being such, as I have at present declar'd to you, to be Publish'd by Sound of Trumpet, to the end every Knight, who will Combat me, may know, that I will expect him in this

D D 3

Meadow

Meadow in a Tent, which I will cause to be set up, and will Fight him with such Arms, as he will Choose.

Having said this, he went out of the Hall, and return'd the way he came, leaving all these Lords Amaz'd at his Presumption, so that several design'd to abate it, especially the Duke of Calabria, and Clorius of Spain, who so fervently Lov'd Luciana, Daughter to Esplandian, that he could not rest for her. Then came Birmartes into the Meadow, and caus'd two Rich Pavilions to be set up on the Sea Shore, in which he Lodg'd. But he had Leisure enough to rest there, for none Presented himself that Day, nor the next till after Dinner, when several entered into the field; and Birmartes behav'd himself so Valiantly, that before Night he Conquer'd Twelve, and fifteen the Day following; so that many had said, they never saw so good a Knight. Now the Duke of Calabria was not yet come, but he Presented himself soon after, Arm'd in Green Armour, and bearing on his Helmet, instead of a Feather, his Mistress's Portraiture.

Then Birmartes, knowing that he had a Valiant Adversary, chose a great Lance, and Whirling leisurely, before he began his Career, the Duke call'd out to him from afar; saying, By my Head, Sir Knight, I will now make you know, that the Princess Jusaliana, whose Effigies I bear, surpasses in all Beauties her, whom you have so much prais'd.

I know not, answer'd Birmartes how you can verify it: As for me, every one knows, that I should extremely forget my self, if I should follow this Opinion; and since the Proof lies in the Combat, not in Words, let us see how it will go.

Then they couch'd their Lances, one against the other, and their Meeting was such, that the Duke broke his Spear, even to the Carrier: Nevertheless, Birmartes Struck him so to the purpose, that he Threw him out of his Saddle to the Ground. And so almost as the Duke was alone, stirring neither Foot nor Hand, the other alighted from his Horse at the End of the Carrier, and resigning, that he would Cut off his Head, said to him aloud: Knight, confess the Beauty of your Mistress to be nothing in Comparison of Onegias, else you shall Dye presently.

But to these Threats the Duke, tho' he was come to himself, Answer'd him not a Word, but was so Discontented, that he wish'd himself already dead; which some Lords knowing, Requested Birmartes to leave him in Peace, and content himself with his Widow, and the Portraiture of Jusaliana, which he took, and carry'd into his Pavilion, to Accompany the others. In the mean time the Duke got up again, and Return'd Asham'd to his House.

Then

Then there came into the Field a lusty Knight, sitting so gracefully on his Horse, that 'twas a wonder to see, who addressing himself to Birmartes, thus spake to him: If you do not willingly confess my Mistress to be fairer than yours, I will make you do it by force.

How? answer'd Birmartes: He, who is just now parted with disgrace, said as much to me not long since, and tho' he should have serv'd you for an Example, you speak as presumptuously, as he did: take heed, fair Sir, lest as much befall you.

At this word they ran so directly one against the other, that their Lances flew into shivers, and they met so violently with Shields and Bodies, that Birmartes lost a stirrup, and, if he had not caught hold of his Horse's Neck, had been thrown to the ground: Nevertheless the other had worse, he and his Horse falling one upon the other. However he got up again, and taking his Sword in his hand, said to Birmartes, who had already cur'd his Wound: Knight, alight, and GOD forbid, that I should twice, thro' my horse's fault, lose the Right of my Enterprise.

Then Birmartes sat fast to ground, and embracing his Shield, there began betwixt them so fierce a Fight, that for the space of an hour or more, it could hardly be judg'd, who would have the better of the worse. But at the end the Unknown Knight was so out of breath, that he was forc'd to retreat a little back. Which Birmartes seeing, said to him: Indeed, Sir Knight, you take an ill way to make me confess so great a Lye, as you ere-while bragg'd, you would: Are you already so tired?

The other, very much vex'd at this mockery, thus answer'd him: Sir Knight, you shall know presently. And lifting up his Arm, gave Birmartes such a blow with his Sword, that his eyes spark'd, and their fight began again so fierce, that sometimes Fortune was judg'd to be for the Unknown Knight, and sometimes for Birmartes. Nevertheless the end was such, that Birmartes gain'd the Widow, and the other fell upon the field, so tired, that he was quite spent.

Wherefore Birmartes call'd himself lightly upon him, and plucking off his Helmet, perceiv'd that 'twas his Brother Clorius: at which much discontented, as fearing him to be worse than he was, he said to him: Sir Knight, 'tis probable that the Fault of your Mistress's Beauty, and not your want of Prowess, is the cause, of what has befallen you: for otherwise (seeing what I have found in you) 'tis certain, that I should not so lightly have parted out of your hands, as I have done.

Olorius, hearing him speak with so much humility, altho' he was extremely discontented, thus answer'd him: As GOD help me, Knight, I can give you no very good Account of my Mistress's Beauty: for I never saw her:

But



But I should have considered, what is in you, before my undertaking any thing, at least to avoid the shame, I undergo.

Then he got up, and gave Birmartes his hand to help him : for he was very much wounded : nor was Birmartes much less. Wherefore retiring, the one into the Town, and the other into his Pavilion, they kept their beds sixteen days, before their Wounds were cur'd.

# CHAP. LX.

How a strange Knight came to fight with Birmartes ; and what befel them.

Birmartes then being cured, and resolving to begin again his Enterprize, there entered into his Pavilion a Damself, accompany'd by an Esquire, who carried a Casket, closely wrap'd up. This Damself saluted Birmartes with great Courtesy, and untying the Packet, presented him with a Suit of Armour, as red as blood, and a Shield, having an Elm in a field, Or, saying to him : Knight us'd to overcome, i.e. who loves you, and esteems you, for the Prowess that is in you, sends you this Present : And sends you word by me, that at this time you shall not know who he is : But so it is, that this Armour, which he has kept for you, will do you more Service than you think for.

Damself, my Friend, answer'd, i.e. I humbly thank the person, who has had so good a Remembrance of me, and esteem this Harness the more, because mine was quite broken. You will be pleas'd to tell him, that, wherever I am, he has in me a Knight very much at his Command.

Then without continuing this Discourse any longer, the Damself departed from him, leaving him in a deep study, from whence so great a Favour should proceed. And that very day he acquainted the Kings, and the other Lords, that he should be in a readiness, if any one will defend the Honour of his Mistress Beauty. Wherefore going forth of the Town, they went to the Place appointed, with a great Number of People, whither they were no sooner come, but they perceived a Knight of great Stature, riding towards them, mounted on a Roan Horse, his Armour being Azure, covered with many

ny Stars, and his Shield of the same. In his hand he held a great Lance, which he rested on his Thigh with such a Grace, that nothing could exceed it. And to the top of his Helmet was fastned the Portraiture of a Damself, fair in all Perfection.

In this Equipage did he pass before the Scaffold, on which the Kings were sitting, whom he saluted without discovering himself ; and approaching Birmartes, said to him loud enough : Knight, you must grant me, that she, whom you love, no way equals the Lady, whose Figure I bear ; else your Head shall do me reason, as a Punishment of your audacious folly in comparing her to a Lady, to whom she deserves not to be so much as a servant.

Birmartes, much displeas'd to hear himself threaten'd, and his Lady injured, thus answer'd : Truly, good Sir, you speak very gloriously, and my stay in this place would have been too much in vain, if I should, for your Threats, confess so great a lye : But I hope, before you get from me, to chastise you in such a manner, that you shall be an Example to those, that may come hereafter. And as to my head, I shall keep it better, than you will do yours, as will be seen by the Event.

Then they parted to fetch their Carreer, and ran against each other with such Fury, that they both fell to the Ground, where they lay some time without stirring either hand or foot. And every one began to think them dead, when they got up again, embracing their Shields, and taking their Swords in their hands. Then they began so fierce a fight, that the sound of their Blows would have made one think, there had been above twenty Knights in Battle, and the Sparks of fire flew in such quantity from their Armour, that the Iron, taken out of the Furnace, and beaten on the Anvil, yields no greater Lustre. But what need is there to number their Blows for the Establishment of our History ? They charg'd each other with so much violence, that had it not been for the Goodness of their Armour, they had soon made an End of the Combat, with the loss of both their Lives. But seeing that their Swords could not enter, they clos'd body to body, doing their utmost to bring each other to the Ground. In which they profited as little as before : they contend'd in this State above two long hours, so that every one thought them faint and out of breath. Nevertheless they soon after knew the contrary : For the two Combatants return'd again to take their Swords, and as if they had done nothing all the day, began again their fight more sharp and violent than before. And nevertheless, either for the temper of their Armour, or the civilities and goodness of them, neither of them could draw the least drop of blood from his Adversary.

At which they both wonder'd, and principally the Knight of the Stars.

who said to the other : As far as I see, Knight, we toil all day without gaining any Advantage, one over the other, since our Swords cut no better : therefore, pray, let us disarm our selves, and to put a more speedy end to this beginning, let us take only Sword and Cloak : for had I thought of what is fallen out, I should have entered otherwise into Fight against you.

When Birmartes heard this Discourse, he very much wonder'd at his Enemies great Courage, and immediately doubted, that 'twas he, with whom he had to do upon the Sea, when they were parted. And notwithstanding the Arms, he wore, were others, so that he knew him not, and therefore made him this Answer : Knight, since we have began our Fight, we must be fain to end it, and therefore do the best you may : for it cannot be, but that one of us must faint at last.

Well then, said the Knight of the Stars, I thought to have done you a Pleasure.

If then they had before been very careful to do their Duties, they returned to show themselves yet more earnest, altho' they apparently grew heavier, having already continu'd above five hours without any rest : And moreover the Heat of the day was to extreme, that he, who was lightest cloath'd, did perpetually sweat. Which mov'd King Amadis to such compassion, seeing them suffer and endure so much, that he could not forbear saying to the others : On my conscience 'tis great Pity to let two of the best Knights in the world dye, who are so animated one against the other, that the Conqueror will never pardon the Weaker.

Nevertheless he of the Stars gain'd ground by little and little ; whence with gape of heart, shaking his Sword, he cry'd out : Ha ! Knight, now I have thee in such a place, that neither by putting out the Torches, nor by force, we can be separated : and thou shalt pay for the foolish words, thou wouldst have maintain'd.

Having said this, he press'd him closer, than he had yet done. Then Birmartes knew by his threats, that he had indeed suspected aright, it being the Knight of the Burning Sword, to whom the Damsel, that he met near Rome, presented the Harness, he now wore when he was within a days journey of Naples, without declaring from whom ; and left him to go to Birmartes with the Vermillion Arms, as you have been told. Now the Sage Alquif foretold, that these good Knights were to fight the one against the other, and for the Preservation of them both, sent them, what secur'd them : for tis certain, that had it not been for the goodness of their Harness, they had been both slain. But they could not draw any blood, but only bruise one another by the Blows, they mutually interchang'd. To

To return then to our Knights, Birmartes hearing, with whom he had to do, his heart to swell'd, that he thus answer'd the Knight of the Burning Sword : by my head 'tis a great Pleasure to me to know, who thou art, that I may have more occasion to abate thy Arrogance, nor do thou think, that thou hast any Advantage over me : For before the Game is ended, thou shalt find, that I am better able to revenge my self, than thou to threaten.

Having said this word, he rush'd upon the other, and struck him so fiercely on the top of his Helmet, that he constrain'd him to put his knee to the ground : but he soon got up again, and in revenge gave his Adversary such a blow in the same place, that his two hands serv'd him for a support on the Earth, tho' he made there no long stay, but retreating his helmet, they began again better than before : not but there was always discern'd some little Advantage on the side of the Knight of the burning sword. And indeed he was descended of the most illustrious and glorious blood at that day on the Earth, having to his great Grand father King Amadis, who considering that, if he let them fight any longer, the Death of the other was near, said to the three Kings, which were sitting by him, that 'twas better to go and pray them to part, seeing the great Loss, there would be in losing them.

Which they approv'd, and going down from their Scaffolds, went to the two Knights, who at their coming drew back, and King Amadis, and the King of Sicily address'd themselves to the Knight of the burning sword, to whom they said : Knight, be pleas'd to do so much for our sakes, as to proceed no farther in this Combat : for 'tis not reasonable, that two such gallant men, as you are, should dye on so small an occasion.

He, who presently thought, that by refusing so courteous a Request, made him by such Persons, as they were, particularly by the Father of her, whom he lov'd better than his own soul, he might be blam'd, thus answer'd them : For certain, my Lords, 'tis grievous for me to retire thus, nevertheless desiring to obey you in all things, let us know, what mine Enemy thinks of it, against whom I am the most unfortunate Knight, that ever was : for this is now the second time, that he has escap'd from me, with more honour, than I desire.

I assure you, said King Amadis, that he will do, what he shall be requested to by the Kings of Naples and Sardinia : Altho in the mean time was persuading Birmartes to consent to the same.

To which he willingly gave ear, knowing he had the worst, altho' he bravely conceal'd, what he thought of it. And for this Cause he said to them : My Lords, the Quarrel between this Knight and me is such, that I should rather choose to lose my Life, than leave this Combat : but for

your sake, whom I desire to please, I will obey your Command.

So they led him into his *Babilon*, leaving the King of great Britain, and *Alpatracy* with the other, whom *Amadis* indeed thought to be the Knight of the Burning Sword, and had already acquainted the King of Sicily with his Suspicion, of which, that he might know the Truth, he made *Alpatracy* a sign with his Eye to ask him, who therefore thus spake to the Knight: I desire you Sir of Courtesy to tell me your Name: For I suspect you to be a Gentleman, whom I greatly love and esteem: And if you are the same, you would be to blame to conceal your self, especially from King *Amadis*, who has done that in *Saba* for him, whom I take you to be, that he will be for ever oblig'd to him.

This he said, to draw the Loner from the Knight of the burning Sword, what he desir'd: who was at first so astonish'd at this *Petwo*, that he was a long time without answering, and would willingly have discover'd himself, had it not been for the desire, he had to be reveng'd of *Birmartes*, whereever he could find him, thinking that he lov'd *Lucella*.

Wherefore he thus answered the King: Sir I know not, what Love you bear me, nor whom you think me to be; but if you wish me any Good, 'tis not altogether without Reason; since I have all my Life desired to do Service to You, and such as You are. You will therefore be pleas'd to name to me him, for whom you take me, that I may better know who he is.

In good faith, said the King, he is nam'd the Knight of the burning Sword, and I well believe, that you are none of he: For he would never conceal himself from me.

Certainly, Sir answer'd he, 'tis not long, since I left him, and I am so much his Friend, that I desire you for his sake to tell me, what it is, that King *Amadis* has done for him in *Saba*, to the end, that, if I find him again, he may have News of it.

Then *Alpatracy* related to him at large, how *Queen Buruca* had been accus'd, and what became of it.

Ah! said the Knight of the burning Sword, in the mean time within himself; Traytor *Mauban*! the Gods have had too much pity of you! for without toiling such a Prince, you deserv'd an Halter.

Nevertheless he gave no knowledge of this fault, and less of his Person, but thus answer'd King *Alpatracy*: Sir I am very glad, for the sake of the Knight of the burning Sword, of such good News, with which I will assuredly acquaint him, and that, before it is long: Wherefore your Majesty will be pleas'd to give me leave, assuring you, if I can meet him, that we will bear you Company in the VVar, you undertake, whe-

ther

ther against the Emperor, or the King of *Metz*. In the mean time be pleas'd to pardon me, if I conceal from you at present, who I am: For I resolve not to discover my self, before I have put an End to an Affair, which highly concerns my Honor.

In this manner did he stop the Mouths of these two Princes, who afterward importun'd him no farther, tho' they had still a fancy, that 'twas he himself. Nevertheless not willing to constrain him any farther, they thank'd him however for the Succor, he promis'd them. And sozalmuch as it began apace to grow dark, and Night was dawning away the Day, they seeing the Kings of *Sardinia* and *Naples* return from *Birmartes's* *Pavilion*, gave him the good night, to go and join themselves with the two others. And they four together took their way to the Town, and the Knight of the burning Sword went to the Place, whence he parted in the Morn-ing.

#### CHAP. LXI.

How the Knight of the Burning Sword arriv'd in his Tent, where he had left *Alquif's* *Damsel*, by whom he sent a Letter to *Magadan*, King of *Saba*, excusing himself from what he had been charg'd with.

SOON was the Issue of this perillous Combat, as you have heard, at the Return from which the Knight of the Burning Sword, thinking sometimes on his Misfortune in not having been able to *Quench* his Enemy, sometimes on the *Petwo* of the King of *Saba*, and the Obligation, in which he found himself indebted to King *Amadis*, being now sad, then all of a sudden joyful, Rode on to the Place, where he had left *Alquif's* *Damsel*. And they two together, that they might not be follow'd, went to the Place, where he expected to find his Partners, who waited for him. But when the *Damsel* saw him to penitence, he could not forbear asking him, whence that Melancholly proceeded.

Ah! my great Friend, answer'd he: I was thinking to leave this Country, for to go into *Saba* to find the King, for some News, I have this day heard, which touches me very near. And on the other side, I am forc'd to break this Enterprise, being call'd this way to an Affair, on

which my Honor depends: Thus I see my self between two Extremities and know not which I should choose for the best.

If you think good, says she, that I should carry any Message for you to the East, be pleas'd to give me your Bark, and I will go, where you shall command me, and will carry any Letter for you to King Magadan, whom I very well know.

I request it of you, answer'd he, assuring you Damsel, that I will never forget this Courtesy: I will Write then to the King, and to morrow you shall set sail, if we find our People at the Port.

Discouraging in this manner, they came, where the Bark was, and that very night, the Knight in the Starry Armour Wrote a Letter to King Magadan, the Tenno, whereof follows.

Most High, most Mighty, and most Excellent Prince, if future things were as present to men, as they are unknown to them; there would be few Persons deceiv'd, and fewer Wicked, that could deceive them by giving them false Intelligence: But such a secret being out of our Power, we should (certainly) more fear this malice of men, than Death it self, which can deceive us but once. For that, to which these Traitors and Villains lead us, takes not only away the Life, but the immortal Honour, whic every Person of Virtue may acquire, blacking his Reputation and Honour by shameful and lying Stories, with which they feed the ears of those, who hear them. And of this (victorious King) your Majesty can better judge, than any other, having been upon the Point of being reputed an unjust King, by your intending to put the Queen to Death, for the false Accusation, made of her and your loyal subject and servant, the Knight of the Burning Sword. Not, Sir, that I will excuse my self of the Fault, I committed, in absenting my self from your Court according to the Counsel given me by Magadan: for where my Innocence was, Punishment could have no place. And moreover, instead of leaving my honour doubtful by my Flight, I should rather (knowing your Vertue and my Justice) submit my self to your Chastisement, than fearing your Fury, and shunning death, which I deserv'd not, render my self thus suspected of Guilt. Now the Gods, as far, as I understand, have permitted, that the Truth has since been discover'd by the same Person, who had conceal'd it, and the Queens honour and mine restor'd by the invincible Prowess of Amadis, King of Great Britain, who, sustaining my Right, has in your Majesty's Presence slain the Traitor in the plain Field of Battle. And nevertheless, Sir, if there remains in you any spark of Displeasure against your humble servant, I beseech you to forget it, and give me part in your good grace, till such time as I have opportunity to return to your Majesty, which I should have already

already done, had it not been for the Promise, I have made these Kings, here assembled, not to leave them, till the War, they have undertaken against two other Traitors, is at an end. Wherefore you will be pleas'd to excuse me, who in all humility kiss your Majesties hands.

This Letter being thus written, made up, and well seal'd, he deliver'd it to the Damsel, upon whom he took leave, and said to her: Damsel my friend, since you will do me the favour, to go for me to King Magadan, I beseech you, in presenting to him this Letter, to tell him the occasion of my stay in these Parts: and that, as soon as I shall have an Opportunity, I will not fail to repair to him, and present him with my service, as I am bound. You will see also the Queen and Prince Sulustin, to whom also I desire you to give my most humble Respects.

Sir, answer'd she, I will not fail to do, what you command me; but before my Departure I will acquaint you, that the arms I presented you, was sent you by the Sage Alquif, who loves you, and honours you more, than any Knight he knows. He has charged me to tell you, that your father is a Greek by Nation, and that you are the Issue of a most Illustrious Blood, and herewith content your self: for I can tell you no more, except it be that he sends you word, that before your Departure from Italy, you shall recover one of the things, you held most for lost.

The Knight of the burning Sword was much amaz'd, and more rejoic'd when he understood, that he was a Gentleman of Great Parentage, and embracing her, who brought him this good News, said to her: Alas! my great Friend, for Gods sake tell me then my Fathers Name, if you know it. For 'tis the greatest Desire, I have in this world.

Assure your self, answer'd she, if I knew it, it should not be conceal'd from you.

This said, he took leave of him, and embark'd; the Knight entreating her, that she would find Means to bring him back an Answer with all possible Speed. And immediately the Wind blowing the Sails, the Damsel launch'd forth into the Deep. And at the same time the Knight of the burning Sword took his way towards Salerno, intending as soon as he had recovered his strength, to find out Birmates, and fight him to the utmost, whatever should become of it. Whilst he said there, musing from time to time on what the Damsel had said to him, that his father was a Native of Greece, he resolv'd to take this surname from that Country, and also his name from King Amadis, to whom he thought himself more oblig'd, than to all other Men in the World, as having made him recover his Honor. Therefore he will henceforward be in several places call'd Amadis of Greece.

## C H A P. LXII.

How News came to the Kings, being at Naples, of the great Preparation, made by the Usurper of the Empire, to come and give them Battle at Friuli: And of the Rancounter, they had with the King of Metz.

**T**HE King of Sicily, pretending, as you have heard, to the Kingdom of Metz, had ordinarily spies in the Parts of Gaul, by whom (eight or ten dayes after the fight, betwene the two good Knights Birmartes and Amadis of Greece, surnamed formerly the Knight of the burning Sword) he was advertiz'd that the Usurper of the Empire, with his Forces, was, to come and joyn the King of Metz in the plain of Verona, and there to expect King Amadis and his Army. Now the Duke of Lorrain was ally'd to King Amadis, and with all his might supported the Party of the Emperors his Daughter, so that with six thousand fighting Men he hinder'd, as much as possibly he could, the King of Metz, who intended to pass thro' the Swatches of Switzerland, from executing his Designs: For he always coasted him, often constraining him to stay longer in a place, than he desired. This was in part the Cause, that the Army of these Kings, assembled at Naples, went to look for them in Germany, and there to give them Battle: For which purpose 'twas proclaim'd in their Camp, that every one should make himself ready to remove the eighth day following.

During this Time there arriv'd from Spain seven thousand good Soldiers and Knights, which King Brian sent by the Duke of Merida to their Assistance, of whom Olorius had the Command. They then being assembled, Amadis, seeing he had no News of the Army, he had sent to raise in Great Britain, resolv'd notwithstanding to march with his Forces trait to Aquileja, and thence to Marcadi Ancona, coasting always the Venetian Sea, for the greater Convenience in having Provisions, till he came to Verona, where he had Advice, that the King of Metz was marching, into Germany for to get into Lombardy, and would there entrench himself, expecting the Emperors Forces. Then these Lords assembled in Counsel, and resolv'd to go and meet him, before the Emperors was got to him: Wherefore they remov'd on themselves by march of day, and made such haste, that they got into the Mountains, before the King of Metz was aware of it, and surpris'd him so short, that they presented him the Battle, as it were on the sudden.

Now

Now he had with him a good Body of Horse, and a great Number of Foot, which the Count of Armignac, and the Dukes of Normandy and Brabant had brought thither, with some Germans out of Ober. The skirmish was on both sides very fair, and the fight at last so fierce, that by the help of Birmartes, Florelus, and Amadis of Greece, who came thither unknown, the King of Metz was discomfited, himself and the Earl Armignac slain, together with the Duke of Savona, and his Son: So that had it not been for the favour of the Night, which separated them, the Duke of Normandy, and the rest flying into the thickest part of a great Forest, there had not a Man of them escap'd. Then were Amadis's People constrain'd to retire for the Darkness, and lodg'd in their Enemies Camp, keeping a good Watch; for they were told that the Duke of Normandy was rallying to come and find them again the next day.

Herbertels it hapned otherwise: For the Duke, who was a discreet and prudent Prince, considering the Wrong, which the deceased King had done the King of Sicily in Usurping the Countrey, that belong'd to Queen Miramynia his Wife, call'd the other Princes and Captains, who were retir'd with him, and remonstrated to them, that 'twould be best for them to send to Alpatrac, and beseech him, that forgetting the Injury, they had done him, he would be pleas'd to receive them into his favour: And doing this, those of the Kingdom of Metz would take an Oath of Fidelity to him, remaining for ever his humble and obedient Subjects and Vassals: And I, said he, and my Companions will be Friends, Allies, and Confederates, serving, and favoring him against all, especially against the Emperor, who seeing the Treason, he has committed against his rightful Prince and Lord, cannot continue long without falling to ruine.

There was not any one in the Company, who did not willingly give Ear to this Counsel, and the Duke himself was chosen by all to go to the King of Sicilies Camp, and carry him this Message. By Means whereof, as soon as the Dawning of the Day began to appear, he took Horse, and accompanied by the Principal Persons of the Kingdom of Metz, came to the Kings Tent, whither they were conducted by those of the March, who found him, as he was arming himself. And already were the Souldiers putting themselves in Battalia to go and prosecute their foregoing Victory: But all was stay'd by the coming of this new Ambassy, which being head by Alpatrac, and the other Princes and Lords of the Army, the Officers, they presented, were accepted, the Accord concluded, and Peace secur'd: And before Dinner Alpatrac was thro' all the Army proclaim'd King of Metz and Sicily.

The Emperors, who was that day come to the City of Constance with his Army, was soon advertiz'd of this, wherefore he made haste to hinder the same.

F f

henny from passing any farther. But they met the eighth day after in the Evening, and the Skirmish began in a Village, where each of the two Armies design'd to take up their Quarters. There many good Knights on both sides ended their days, and had not the Night at that time sav'd the King of Sicillies Party, the Germans had gotten the Victory. But fortune turn'd the next day: For Bismarckes, Amadis of Greece, Olorious, Don Floridas, Orizones and Bravatus, went to the Queens Calafia, and Pincuarquistra, drew up, and being accompany'd with many good Knights and Soldiers, attack as they could be, upon to strike, fiercely set upon their Enemies. Now whilst they were in the heat of the fight, there came an Express to the Emperour, which brought him News, that the City of Montz was taken by assault, the Garrison put to the Sword, and the Widow of the decess'd Emperour taken out of the Prison, to which she had been confin'd.

And believe it, Sir said the Messenger, that all this has been done by the Earl of Flanders: For I saw him there, accompany'd by above two thousand Knights.

These News indeed did not much please the Emperour, nor those, that heard it: and the Rumor of it ran so thro' all the Camp, that many (even the most part) lost their hearts, and without being pursu'd, fled hie to the City of Constance. Nevertheless the Emperour could not so make head against King Amadis, and the fight on both sides was so fierce, that the Emperour himself was slain on the Place, together with the Duke of Saxony, the Earl of Merida, his Son, and several Nobles and Princes. Which to many other People of all sorts, that they lay were in blood about the Palace. But the Emperours Death struck such a Terror into his Army, that they were immediately discomfited, and mowing their backs, fled with all speed towards Constance, where they inclos'd themselves, leaving behind them above ten thousand dead in the Field. And that very night was the City besieg'd, which, being highly assaulted the next day, and as well defended, could not be taken till the fourth Assault, when it was seald, and Amadis's Troops got into it by force, putting all they found in it to the Sword, without sparing any living soul. These Germans being thus vanquish'd and defeated, King Amadis return'd to the Field, where the Battle had been the day before, and there caus'd the Bodies of the Emperour and his Kindred to be sought for, and being found, to be hang'd by the necks, and then burnt by a gentle Fire in punishment of the Treason he had committed on the Person of the Emperour, his Mother-in-law, and his Son in law Dierpius. Which he intended only to do to Queen Oriana, assuring her, that he would return to her, as soon as he had redem'd the Emperour to her Liberty, and seald her in the full Possessions of her State.

## CHAP. LXIII.

How the City of Montz was taken by Assault, and by whom.

**Y**OU have been told, if you remember, how Guilan, Duke of Bristow, and Angriote d' Estravaux, great Master of the Realm of Great Britain, accompany'd by the Duke of Cornwall, and a great Number of Marriers, Knights, Esquires, and Soldiers, embark'd near London, and following the Command of the King their Master, made head towards Naples, where he was getting together a great Army, to recover the State of the Empire, and revenge the Death of the murder'd Emperour, and his Son-in-law Dierpius. They had a very fair wind for four days together: but on the fifth there arose such a Tempest, that there was left them neither Spail, Sail, nor Rope, they could make use of: So that, whether they would or no, they were driven on the Coast of Flanders, where they took Port, as well for the repairing of their Vessels, as to rest themselves a little after the Toil they had suffer'd.

Of which the Earl of Flanders taking notice, and having a Desire to shew himself the Friend and good Ally of King Amadis, came to receive them, and so perswaded them to enter into Germany, that they resolv'd to go first to the City of Montz, and take it by Assault, whilst the Emperour was busied in getting ready his Army to go against the Palace, assembled at Naples. So well did they execute their Resolution, and kept themselves so secret and conceal'd, that they were as soon as the Gates of the Town, as they were in the Heart of their Design. Nevertheless the Alarm given, bet, and those within could means to let down their Port culices, so that the Resistance was strong, and dangerous. But if the Defence was vigorous, the Assault was no less so: for the second time the Knights of great Britain, having broken their Heads, break into their Enemies, of whom they made such a furious slaughter, that few or none escap'd. Then they went to the Tower, where the Bodies of the Emperour and Dierpius were hanging, which they carry'd ceremoniously into the principal Church, and there bury'd them with great Magnificence. Then they set the Emperours at Liberty, and brought her very honourably to the Palace, where she was acquainted with the Execution and slaughter, made of the Traitors, at which she was a little comforted. Incidentally regarding the Death of her Husband and Children, and the loss of her other friends. But they assur'd her, that



the Princess, her Sons Wife, and her Daughter, were with her Brother-in-law King Amadis: besides that GOD would not forsake her, seeing the good beginning of Victory, they had obtain'd. And because they were advertis'd, that the Emperor was marching in great hast to meet King Amadis, and his Forces, they would not stay above two days at Mentz, where they left a good Garrison. And going strait towards Constance, they had News of the Emperors Defeat the night before their coming, which gave them such a Desire to visit their Friends, that they got to them early the next day. Now the most part of the Princes kept their Beds for some Wounds, they had receiv'd: but the coming of these Lords from Great Britain gave them such Joy, that they were in a short time cur'd. The Empress also came thither, and was receiv'd by them all, as the Greatness of her Majesty requir'd, not without many tears shed, and several Regrets of the Loss, she had suffer'd, which increas'd much more, when she saw her Daughter in-law Brisenna, whom Amadis and Gandalin had recover'd out of the Pirates Hands, as you have been told. Thus some days pass'd, during which the Kings provided for the most necessary Affairs of the Empire, and Birmartes took leave of them, to finish his Enterprize, according to the Promise, he had sworn to Onoria, Daughter to the King of Apolonia. Wherefore we will in this place put an End to our Discourse, leaving the Remainder to a Second Part, which we shall soon bring to light, if we receive Encouragement by your favourable Acceptance of this.

---

THE END.

---